AN

INTRODUCTION

TO

LATIN SYNTAX,

OR

AN EXEMPLIFICATION OF THE RULES OF CONSTRUCTION, AS DELIVERED IN MR. RUDDIMAN'S RUDIMENTS, WITHOUT ANTICIPATING POSTERIOR RULES:

CONTAINING,

I. The Rules of Syntax, with a brief illustration.
II. Explanatory Notes.
III. Examples, taken for the most part from the Classic Authors.
IV. English Exercises.

TO WHICH IS SUBJOINED,

AN EPITOME OF ANCIENT HISTORY,

FROM THE CREATION TO THE BIRTH OF CHRIST.

Intended as a proper mean to initiate Boys in the useful study of History, while at the same time it serves to improve them in the knowledge of the Latin Tongue.

TO WHICH IS ADDED,

A PROPER COLLECTION OF HISTORICAL AND CHRONOLOGICAL QUESTIONS, WITH A COPIOUS INDEX.

BY JOHN MAIR, A. M.

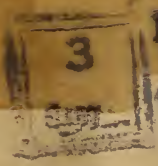
A NEW EDITION, REVISED AND CORRECTED,
BY T. S. JOY, TEACHER OF LANGUAGES.

NEW-YORK:

PUBLISHED BY EVERT DUYCKINCK,
NO. 68 WATER-STREET.
J. & J. Harper, Printers.

1817.

PA 2087
.M28
1817



PREFACE.

THE general approbation the following Essay met with on its first publication, having encouraged the author to turn his thoughts on that subject a second time: the whole has been revised with great care, several alterations made, considerable additions interspersed, and no pains spared to rectify every mistake, supply every defect, and retrench every superfluity, in order to render the performance still more useful, by its being made, in all respects, as complete as possible. What seems further necessary, by way of preface, is to give the reader, in a few words, a more particular account of this introduction as it now stands; which is as follows:

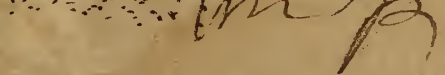
The rules of syntax here exemplified are taken from the rudiments composed and published by Mr. Thomas Ruddiman, being generally allowed to be the most accurate and best system of that kind, and used not only in most of the schools in this kingdom, but translated into a foreign language, and taught in several places abroad. And as the rules are of two kinds, *viz.* primary or fundamental, to which all the rest are reducible; and secondary or elliptical, which are by far the most numerous; these latter rules are distinguished from the former by an asterisk on the margin.

To make the young scholar comprehend the meaning and extent of the rules with greater ease, each of them is illustrated with one or more examples of constructed Latin: and, where it is necessary, grammatical terms are explained, and lists or catalogues of the words belonging to the rules, given. To which is subjoined, a pretty large collection of explanatory notes, exhibiting the exceptions, the varieties, the elegant phrases and modes of expression that occur in authors, and pointing out the method of supplying the elliptical constructions, and reducing them to the primary or fundamental rules.—Some few of the notes are exemplified; the proper time of teaching the rest is left to the discretion of the master.

After the notes, follow the examples; which are of two sorts. The first go only the length of this mark ¶; and are generally short, being intended purely for the exemplification of the rule to which they are subjoined. The second sort, which begin at the aforesaid mark, are longer; wherein not only the rule to which they are annexed is exemplified, but the preceding rules are again brought upon the field, in order to render them more familiar to the mind, and fix them more effectually in the memory.

Most of the examples, whether of the first or second sort, are excerpted from the Latin authors; being such sentences as would admit of a literal translation, and are adapted to our purpose with little or no variation. Some of them indeed, for the sake of enriching the exemplification, are patched or made up of sentences coupled together; but the expressions, separately taken, are generally classical; and, it is hoped, no great impropriety will be found in the manner of their junction.

To the examples are subjoined on each rule a few English exercises, intended as another piece of recreation to the young student, as well as a further trial of his skill. In the examples, the Latin words being laid to his hand, he needs only, in order to make good Latin; attend to the



declensions, conjugations, and rules of syntax; whereas, by these exercises, he will be obliged to go in search of vocables, and so by degrees learn to distinguish the words that are proper for his purpose, from such as are not so. And here I may add, that could boys be persuaded, by a careful use of their dictionary, to acquaint themselves thoroughly with the signification, derivation, composition, and proper use of the Latin words that occur in the several parts of their studies, they would soon find the benefit of it: their proficiency would, in this case, do more than reward their pains. To a neglect on this head, is frequently owing the small progress boys make, and the difficulty they find in speaking and writing Latin; being equally puzzled for want of words, and at a loss how to apply them.

The rules in the Rudiments being ranged according to the order of the parts of speech, it was impossible to exemplify them in that order, without a medley of antecedent and subsequent rules which by all means was to be avoided. The reader therefore is desired to begin with No. 2; then proceed to No. 28; from that to No. 45. He next turns over to No. 68, 69, 70, 71, 72; then to No. 75, 76; and on each of these rules he is to read till he comes to this mark ¶, except No. 28; in which he is to read only the first four paragraphs. After this, he is to return to the

beginning of the book and go straight on to the end, omitting only what was read on the above mentioned rules; and, by proceeding in this manner, he will find no posterior rule anticipated. The English exercises, too, are so chosen, that they may be turned into good Latin, without recourse to any subsequent rule.

As the governed words in the exemplification of several rules, *viz.* No. 12, 21, 29, 62, 64, and 73, may be put in different cases, and though, generally speaking, the Latin will be grammatical and good in either of them; yet, to prevent any doubt that may arise in the learner's mind on this head, and to enable him to use with certainty the case used by the author the example is brought from, I have given the following mark of distinction, *viz.* in No. 12, 21, 62, and 64, when the governed word is put in the ablative, it has the figure 6 before it; and in No. 29, when the governed word is to be put in the accusative, it has the figure 4 before it. In like manner in No. 73, the governed word has the figure 1. or 4 before it, according as it is to be put in the nominative or accusative. But in the exemplification of each of these six rules, when the governed word has no figure prefixed, it is then to be put in the other case mentioned in the rule. Nor are these distinctive figures applied thus in the exemplification of the above rules only, but also, in all the subsequent places, where these ambiguous constructions recur.

The examples and English exercises contained in this Introduction; being of a select kind, consisting generally of moral, historical, or mythological sentences, the perusal of them will accordingly be attended with peculiar advantages. The first sort, have a natural tendency to form and dispose the mind to virtue, and to produce such impressions as will influence the temper and behaviour of youth, not while at school only, but through the whole course of their life. By the use of the second and third sort, boys will acquire a stock of ancient history and mythology, and so get acquainted in some measure with the Roman writers before they begin to read them.

To the Introduction is subjoined an Epitome of Ancient History, containing a succinct account of the most memorable transactions and events that occur from the creation to the birth of Christ. And whereas several things suspected of fiction or romance, especially with respect to the Assyrian and Babylonian monarchies, were in compliance with the commonly-received opinion, admitted into the first edition; these are now either thrown out, or taken notice of as fabulous, and the accounts that, by the best judges, are esteemed genuine, introduced. These alterations, it is hoped, will render this epitome more perfect, and consequently a fitter system for initiating youth in the youthful study of history; and to make it answer this purpose in the easiest manner,

a proper collection of Questions, adapted to the several parts of Ancient History, is annexed; as also an Index, more full and better digested than in the first edition. And as the Latin of this epitome is, for the most part taken from an historian much admired for conciseness, delicacy, and purity of language; it will serve to exercise and improve the learner, not barely in the knowledge of grammar, but even in the elegance and beauties of the Latin tongue. The chronology here used is the same with that adopted by the writers of the Universal History. Several chronological mistakes, which had escaped observation in the first edition, are here rectified.

I SHALL conclude with the following certification to interlopers. That though soon after this Introduction was first published, a spurious edition came abroad, which neither the author, nor the gentlemen concerned in the first impression, have hitherto taken much notice of; yet they are resolved to be on their guard for the future, against all such piratical practices, and will not fail to prosecute offenders of that kind. It is therefore hoped that no person in time coming will be so wicked as to attempt, by any fradulent method, to rob the author or editors of their just property, nor so foolish as to incur the penalties prescribed by law. J. M.

AN

INTRODUCTION

TO

LATIN SYNTAX.

SYNTAX is the right ordering of words in speech.

Its parts are two, *concord* and *government*.

Concord is when one word agrees with another in some accidents.

Government is when a word governs a certain case.

SYNTAXIS est recta vocum in oratione compositio.

Ejus partes sunt duæ concordantia *et* regimen.

Concordantia *est quando una dictio concordat cum altera in quibusdam accidentibus.*

Regimen *est quando dictio regit certum casum.*

I. OF CONCORD.

CONCORD is fourfold.

1. Of an adjective with a substantive.
2. Of a verb with a nominative.
3. Of a relative with an antecedent.
4. Of a substantive with a substantive.

I. DE CONCORDANTIA

CONCORDANTIA est quadruplex.

1. *Adjectivi cum substantivo.*
2. *Verbi cum nominativo.*
3. *Relativi cum antecedente.*
4. *Substantivi cum substantivo.*

RULE I.

AN ADJECTIVE agrees with a substantive, in gender, number and case.

Fleeting years slide away.
Sluggish old age approaches.
Time past never returns.

We all hasten to one end.

REGULA I.

ADJECTIVUM concordat cum substantivo, in genere, numero et casu.

Fugaces anni labuntur.
Tarda senecta subit.
Tempus præteritum nunquam revertitur.

Nos omnes metam properamus ad unam.

Note 1. The substantive is sometimes understood; and in this case the adjective takes the gender of the suppressed substantive, as *per immortales;* sc. *Deos. Laborare tertiana;* sup. *febri. Paucis te volo;* nempe *verbis. Triste lupus stabulis:* sup. *negotium. Omnia senescunt;* sup. *negotia.* This last substantive is seldom expressed; and its usual sign in English, is the word *thing* or *things.*

Note 2. Adjectives are often put substantively, or used in a substantive sense; and may then have other adjectives agreeing with them; as, Virg. *Fortunate senex.* Cic. *Amicus certus.* And sometimes substantives seem to be used in an adjective sense; as Virg. *Populum late regem* for *regnantem.* Cic. *Victor exercitus.* Ovid. *Dardanides matres.*

Note 3. An Adjective joined with two substantives of different genders, generally agrees with that chiefly or principally spoke of; as Plin. *Oppidum Pæstum, Græcis Possidonia appellatum.* The adjective, however, sometimes, neglecting the principal substantive, agrees with the nearest; as, Cic. *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda.* But if the principal substantive be the proper name of a man or woman, the adjective always agrees with it; as Vopisc, *Vinosus Imperator amphora dictus est;* not *dicta.* Just *Semiramis puer esse credita est;* not *creditus.*

The good boy learns, the naughty boys play: the swift horse conquers, the slow horses are overcome.

Proud men do fall, but humble men shall de exalted; high towers fall, whilst low cotages stand.

Bonus puer disco, malus puer ludo; celer equus vinco, tardus equus vinco.

Superbus homo cado, sed modestus homo proveho; altus turris cado, dum humilis casa sto.

Our master comes, let us read, the idle boys shall be beaten, my books were torn, thy brothers were commended.

Noster præceptor venio, lego ego, ignavus puer cædo, meus liber lacero, tuus frater laudo.

Note 1. We always rush upon a thing forbidden, and we covet things denied. Let us despise earthly things, when we contemplate heavenly things.

Nitor in vetitus semper, cupioque negatus. Contemno humanus, cum specto cælestis.

¶ A small spark neglected; often raises a great conflagration; so after Sylla had settled the commonwealth, new wars broke out.

Parvus scintilla contemptus, sæpe excito magnus incendium; sic cum Sylla compono respublica, novus bellum exardeo.

The general triumphed most splendidly in a golden chariot with his sons, two princes were led before his chariot; many kings came to this sight.

Imperator triumpho magnificenter in aureus currus cum filius suus, duo princeps duco ante currus; multus rex venio ad hic spectaculum.

Cæsar returning from Gaul, began to demand another consulship, but he was ordered to disband his army and return to town; for which injury he came from Ariminum, where he had his soldiers drawn together, against his country, with an army. Cæsar prevailed; he was afterwards murdered. Death devours all things.

Cæsar rediens e Gallia cæpi deposco alter consulatus, sed jubeo demitto exercitus et redeo ad urbs; propter qui injuria venio ab Ariminum, ubi habeo miles congregatus, adversus patria cum exercitus. Cæsar vinco; postea interficio Mors devoro omnis.

Diligence overcomes all difficulties. Delays often ruin the best designs. Shame attends unlawful pleasures. One bad sheep infects a whole flock.

Industry keeps the mind clear and the body healthful. Prosperity gains friends, and adversity tries them. Where no law is, there is no transgression. Vanity makes beauty contemptible. God sees all things.

When men neglect God, they neglect their own safety; they procure their own ruin; they fly from their own happiness; they pursue their own misery, and make haste to be undone.

RULE II.

A VERB agrees with the nominative before it in number and person.

REG. II.

VERBUM concordat cum nominativo ante se in numero et persona.

I read.	*Ego Lego.*
Thou writest.	*Tu scribis.*
He studies.	*Ille studet.*
The girl sings.	*Puella canit.*
We teach.	*Nos docemus.*
Ye hear.	*Vos auditis.*
They learn.	*Illi discunt.*
The boys are praised.	*Pueri laudantur.*

Note 1. *Ego* and *Nos* are the first person, *Tu* and *Vos* the second; and all other nouns are the third person. Here observe, that a nominative of the first and second person is seldom expressed, being always known by the verb.

Note 2. This rule respects only the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative. The infinitive has indeed sometimes a nominative before it; but then *cœpit* or *cœperunt* is understood; as, Virg. *Æneas humeris abscindere vestem;* sc. *cœpit.* Ter. *Omnes invidere mihi* sc. *cœpreunt.* Or we may suppose, as is usually done in this case, that the infinitive is put for the imperfect of the indicitive, viz. *abscindere* for *abscindebat*, and *invidere* for *invidebant.*

I call, thou dost answer, he taught, we did study, ye have given, they have received.	*Ego voco, tu respondeo ille doceo, ego studeo, tu do, ille accipio.*
I had gone, thou hadst come, he had sent, we will touch, ye shall taste, they shall drink.	*Ego eo, tu venio, ille mitto, ego tango, tu gusto, ille bibo.*
Do thou go on, let him make haste, let us prepare, proceed ye, let them return.	*Pergo tu, festino ille, paro ego, progredior tu, redeo ille.*
I am accused, thou art blamed, he was praised, we were condemned, ye will be dismissed, they shall be punished.	*Ego accuso, tu culpo, ille laudo, ego condemno, tu dimitto, ille punio.*
Be thou joined, let him be	*Jungo tu, separo ille,*

separated, let us be instructed, be ye exalted, let them be disgraced.

The cock crows, the goose did cackle, the parrot spoke, the magpies had chattered, ravens will croak, let hens cluck.

The dog barks, the sheep did bleat, the hog has grunted, the horses had neighed, asses will bray, let lions roar, oxen will bellow, wolves will howl.

Virtue is praised, vice was shunned, honour was sought, riches were acquired, the boys will learn, let books be bought, Peter affirms, who will deny?

The man did shout, the battle was joined, the arrows fly, the swords are drawn, the soldiers have fought, the horses are taken, the enemy will be routed, let victory come, peace will be sought.

¶ In the mean time all Greece being divided into two parties, turned their arms from foreign wars, as it were upon their own bowels: wherefore two bodies are made out of one people, and the soldiers are divided into two hostile armies.

After the battle no woman lamented, her lost husband; all lamented their own hap, because they had not fallen for their country, all received the wounded, dressed their wounds, refreshed the fatigued, and they all more lamented the public than their private fortune. For these things they deserve praise.

erudio ego, exalto tu, vitupero ille.

Gallus canto, anser glocito, psittachus loquor, pica garrio, corvus crocito, gallina pipio.

Canis latro, ovis balo, sus grunnio, equus hinnio, asinus rudo, leo rugio, bos mugio, lupus ululo.

Virtus laudo, vitium vito, honos quæro, divitiæ paro, puer disco, emo liber, Petrus affirmo, quis nego?

Homo clamo, prælium committo, sagitta volo, gladius distringo, miles pugno, equus capio, hostis fugo, venio victoria, pax peto.

Interea omnis Græcia, divisus in duo pars, converto arma, ab externus bellum, velut in viscus su us; igitur duo corpus fio de unus populus, et miles divido in duo hostilis exercitus.

Post prælium nullus mulier fieo amissus conjux; omnis doleo suus vicis, quod ipse non cado pro patria; omnis excipio saucius, curo vulnus, reficio lassus, omnis que magis lugeo publicus quam privatus fortuna Ob hic mereor laus.

God made the world, and all the things in it; he created the light, and formed darkness; in him we live and move: if he look on the earth it trembles; if he touch the hills they smoke; I will bless my God while I live; he alone doth wondrous works, praise ye the Lord.

ANNOTATIONS.

3. Substantive verbs, verbs of naming and gesture, have a nominative both before and after them, belonging to the same thing.

1. *Verba substantiva, vocandi et gestus, habent utrinque nominativum ad eandem rem pertinentem.*

I am a scholar.	*Ego sum decipulus.*
Thou wilt become a poet.	*Tu fies poeta.*
Diogenes was called a philosopher.	*Diogenes appellabatur philosophus.*
We are esteemed wise men.	*Nos existimamur sapientes.*
She walks as a queen.	*Illa incedit regina.*
The soldiers sleep secure.	*Milites dormiunt securi.*

1. Substantive verbs are, *sum*, *fio*, *forem*, and *existo*.

2. Verbs of naming are these passives, *appellor*, *dicor vocor*, *nominor*, *nuncupor;* to which add *videor*, *existimor*, *censeor*, *habeor*, *creor*, *constituor*, *salutor*, *designor*, *cognoscor*, *agnoscor*, *invenior*, *reperior*, *&c.*

3. Verbs of gesture are, *eo*, *incedo*, *venio*, *cubo*, *sto*, *jaceo*, *sedeo*, *evado*, *fugio*, *dormio*, *somnio maneo*, *&c.*

Note 1. The nominative after these verbs is frequently an adjective, which agrees with the nominative before them, as its substantive, in gender, number, and case or some other substantive is understood.

Note 2. Any verb may have a nominative after it, when it belongs to the same thing with the nominative before it: as, Cic. *Audivi hoc puer.* Id. *Sapiens nihil facit invitus.*

Note 3. When a verb comes betwixt two nominatives of different numbers, it usually takes the number of the first; as, Ter. *Dos est decem talenta.* Ovid. *Ossa lapis fiunt.* But sometimes it takes the number of the last; as, Ter. *Amantium iræ amoris integratio est.* Luc. *Sanguis erant lacrymæ.*

1. The lion is king among the wild beasts, the ash is the fairest tree in the woods, and the fir in the lofty mountains.

Patience often offended, becomes fury, and generals after victory are sometimes tyrants.

Leo sum rex inter fera, fraxinus sum pulcher arbos in sylva, et abies in altus mons.

Patientia sæpe læsus fio furor, et dux ex victoria interdum existo tyrannus.

2. Virtue is often called vice, vice too is often called virtue, and poverty is sometimes reckoned a disgrace.

Virtus sæpe voco vitium, vitium quoque sæpe appello virtus, et paupertas nonnunquam censeo opprobium.

Varro was esteemed a learned man, Cicero was accounted eloquent, Aristides was called just, Pompey was named great.

Varro existimo doctus vir, Cicero habeo disertus, Aristides dico justus, Pompeius nomino magnus.

3. The boy sits porter before the gate, the servants walk on foot, the master stays alone, the soldiers come up in arms.

Puer sedeo janitor ante fores, famulus incedo pedes, herus maneo solus, miles venio armatus

Beauty is a fair but fading flower. Virtue is its own reward, and envy is its own punishment. Religion is the greatest wisdom, honesty is the best policy, and temperance is the best physic.

Quarrelsome persons are mischievous companions. A false friend will be the most dangerous enemy. Fraud in childhood will become knavery in manhood.

The spring is a pleasant time; for nature then seems to be renewed, the trees begin to sprout, and the gardens bring forth herbs and flowers; these are all sweet things.

4. The infinitive mood has an accusative before it.

2. *Infinitivus modus accusativum ante se habet.*

I am glad that you are well. *Gaudeo te valere.*
I confess that I have sinned. *Fateor me peccasse.*

Note 1. The word *that* betwixt two English verbs is the usual sign of this construction.

Note 2. The accusative may be turned into the nominative with *quod* or *ut*. Thus, instead of *gaudeo te valere*, we may say, *gaudeo quod tu valeas;* and instead of *opus est te scire*, we may say, *opus est ut scias.*

Note 3. The accusatives *me, te, se, illum*, as also the infinitive *esse* or *fuisse*, are frequently suppressed; as, Virg. *Redere posse negabat*, sc. *se posse* Cic. *Exercitum cæsum cognovi*, sc. *fuisse cæsum.*

I wonder, that your brother does not write to me, I cannot believe that he is well.

Miror tuus frater non scribo ad ego, non possum credo is valeo.

Silius boasted, that his soldiers had persisted in obedience, when others had lapsed into sedition.

Silius jacto suus miles duro in obsequium, cum alius prolabor ad seditio.

When Cæsar heard, that the Helvetii were in arms, that they designed to make their way through his province, he made haste to be gone from Rome, and came very speedily to Geneva.

Cum Cæsar audio Helvetii sum in arma, et is statuo facio iter per provincia suus, maturo proficiscor a Roma, et venio celeriter ad Geneva.

The ambassadors complained that they were slighted, and took it ill, that they were ordered to depart from the city; but the king declared that he would reckon them for enemies unless they went off at the day appointed.

Legatus queror sui negligo, et ægre fero sui jubeo discedo ab urbs; at rex denuncio sui habeo is pro hostis, nisi proficiscor ad dies statutus.

Historians tell, that Philip was slain by a young man, as he was going to the public games, and many believe, that Alexander had encouraged him to so great a crime. The young man was called Pausanias.

Historicus narro, Philippus obtrunco ab adolescens, cum eo ad ludus publicus, et multus credo Alexander impello is ad tantus facinus. Adolescens voco Pausanias.

Young men hope that they shall live long; but they ought to remember that they were sent into this world as into a lodging, not as into a home, and that they will soon be called hence.

While Cæsar was in Hither Gaul, in winter-quarters, frequent reports were brought to him, that all the Belgæ had conspired against the Roman people.

5. ESSE hath the same case after it that it hath before it.

3. *ESSE habet eundem casum post se quem ante se.*

Or more generally thus:

The infinitive of a substantive verb, verbs of naming or gesture, takes the same case after it, that it hath before it.

Peter desires to be a learned man.	*Petrus cupit esse vir doctus.*
Thou lovest to be called father.	*Tu amas dici pater.*
He would have himself made general.	*Vult se creari ducem.*
We see that the old man walks straight.	*Videmus senem incedere rectum.*

Note 1. The noun after these infinitives is frequently an adjective, which either agrees with the substantive before them, or has some other substantive understood.

Note 2. When a verb that governs the dative, such as, *licet expedit, datur, concedo*, and the like, comes before these infinitives, the case after them is commonly the dative, but sometimes the accusative: as, *Non datur omnibus esse nobilibus et opulentis; sed licet omnibus esse bonis si velint.* Ter. *Expedit vobis esse bonos.* Cic. *Liceat esse miseros.* Which may be applied thus: *Expedit vobis, vos esse bonos. Liceat vobis, vos esse miseros.*

Note 3. When a verb, that governs the accusative, such as, *aio, refero, puto, nescio*, and the like, comes before the infinitive *esse* the case after it, in prose authors, is always the accusative; but the poets sometimes, in imitation of the Greeks, omitting the pronoun *me, te*, or *se*, use the nominative; as Ovid, *Quia retulit Ajax esse Jovis pronepos.* Hor. *Uxor invicti Jovis esse nescis.* Id. *Patiens vocari Cæsaris ultor.* And Virg. *Sensit medios delapsus in hostes;* i. e. *Sensit esse delapsus*, instead of *sensit se esse delapsum.*

Note 4. This rule respects only the nominative, dative, and accusative, and is not to be extended to the genitive or ablative, for we do not say, *Interest Ciceronis esse eloquentis;* but, *interest Ciceronis essse eloquentem.*

The old Persians believed, that the sun was God.	*Vetus Persa credo sol sum Deus.*
The nymph complained, that	*Nympha doleo suus bre-*

her arms were become long boughs.

chium fio longus ramus.

If thou desirest to be a good man, practice charity and other virtues.

Si tu volo sum bonus vir, colo charitas aliusque virtus.

Empedocles affected to be esteemed an immortal god.

Empedocles cupio habeo immortalis deus.

No man ought to be called happy before death.

Nemo debeo dico beatus ante obitus.

Thou art become an old wife, yet thou affectest to be thought a beauty.

Tu fio anus, tamen volo video formosus.

Antigonus orders himself to be called king by the people, Ptolemy also is styled king by the army.

Antigonus jubeo sui appello rex a populus, Ptolemæus quoque cognomino rex ab exercitus.

Such a stupidity seized Vitellius, that, if others had not remembered that he was emperor, he himself would have forget.

Tantus torpedo invado Vitellius, ut, si cæter non memini is sum princeps, ipse obliviscor.

If you would be happy, fear God and live according to nature.

A wise man may be thought to be a fool, if he talk too much: and a fool may be esteemed a wise man, if he holds his tongue. A man is known by his talk, and silence is often great prudence.

RULE III.

REG. III.

6. THE RELATIVE *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, agrees with the antecedent in gender and number.

RELATIVUM qui, quæ, quod *concordat cum antecedente in genere et numero.*

The man is wise, who speaks little.

Vir sapit, qui pauca loquitur.

ANNOTATIONS.

7. If no nominative comes between the relative and the verb, the relative shall be the nominative to the verb.

1. *Si nullus interveniat nominativus inter relativum et verbum, relativum erit verbo nominativus.*

The covetous man who always wants cannot be rich.

Avarus, qui semper eget, non potest esse dives.

8. But if a nominative comes between the relative and the verb, the relative shall be of that case, which the verb or noun following, or the preposition going before, use to govern.

2. *At si interveniat nominativus inter relativum et verbum, relativum erit ejus casus quem verbum aut nomen sequens, vel præpositio præcedens regere solent.*

God who governs the world, and by whom all things were created, is a spirit, whom no man hath seen, or can see.

Deus, qui gubernat mundum, et a quo omnia creabantur, est spiritus, quem nemo vidit, aut videre potest.

Note 1. The antecedent is commonly some substantive noun, either expressed or understood, that goes before the relative, and is again understood to, or sometimes repeated along with the relative as its substantive; as, *cave voluptatem, quæ est pestis:* i. e. *cave voluptatem quæ voluptas est prestis.* Cæs. *Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent.* And here observe, that the antecedent is sometimes omitted in its proper place, and only expressed along with the relative; as, Ter. *Populo ut placerent quas fecisset fabulas;* for *fabulæ quas fabulas.* Ovid. *Sub qua nunc recubas arbore, virga fuit;* for *arbor, sub qua arbore.* Virg. *Urbem quam statuo, vestra est;* for *urbs, quam urbem, &c.*

Note 2. An infinitive or a sentence sometimes supplies the place of a nominative to a verb, of a substantive to an adjective, of an

antecedent to a relative ; and in this case, the verb is the third person, the adjective and relative are put in the neuter gender ; as,

To excel in knowledge is reckoned a fine thing.	*In scientia excellere pulchrum putatur.*
Peter is a learned man which nobody denies.	*Petrus est vir doctus, quod nemo negat.*

Note 3. The person of the relative is always the same with that of its antecedent; as, *Ego qui doceo ; tu qui discis ; lectio quæ docetur.* The reason is plain, namely, the antecedent ; which is supposed to be repeated along with the relative, is the true nominative to the verb ; thus, *Ego qui doceo*, when supplied, is, *Ego qui ego doceo, &c.*

Note 4. When the relative comes betwixt two substantives of different genders, it sometimes, though more rarely, agrees with the last ; as, Cic. *Animal, quem vocamus hominem.*

Note 5. The antecedent is sometimes couched or included in the possessive pronoun ; as, Ter. *Omnes laudare fortunas* meas, qui *haberem gnatum tali ingenio præditum.*

Note 6. The relative sometimes, instead of taking the gender of the antecedent, takes the gender of some synonymous word suppressed ; as, Sall. *Earum rerum, quæ prima mortales dicunt ;* sc. *negotia.*

Note 7. The interrogatives or indefinites, *qualis, quantus, quotus, quotuplex, &c.* sometimes observe the construction of the relative *qui, quæ, quod :* as, Ovid. *Facies non omnibus una, nec diversa tamen ; qualem decet esse sororum.*

Annibal, who had made trial of the Roman courage, denied that the Romans could be conquered but in Italy.	*Annibal, qui tento Romanus virtus, nego Romanus possum opprimo nisi in Italia.*
Cæsar first conquered the Helvetii, who are now called the Sequani, after that, he subdued all Gaul, that is betwixt the Alps and the British ocean.	*Cæsar primo vinco Helvetii, qui nunc appello Sequani, deinde, domo omnis Gallia, qui sum inter Alpes et oceanus Britannicus.*
Many find fault with crimes which they will not forsake ; but let us pursue virtue, in which true glory consists ; for gold, which is so eagerly sought after by men, often hurts.	*Multus corripio crimen qui nolo linquo : sed ego colo virtus, in qui verus decus sum positus ; nam aurum, qui tam cupide peto ab homo, sæpe nocco.*
They are good boys, whom glory encourages, and commendation delights ; they will become excellent men.	*Ille sum bonus puer qui gloria excito, et laus delecto ; fio egregius vir.*

The city which Romulus built was called Rome, the inhabitants were named Romans, and were deservedly esteemed very brave men.

Urbs qui Romulus condo voco Roma, incola nomino Romanus, et merito habeo fortis vir.

Note 1. To read and not to understand is to neglect, to sow and not to reap is to lose your labour.

Lego et non intelligo sum negligo, sero et non meto sum perdo opera.

Not to know what happened before you were born, is to be always a child.

Nescio quid accido antequam nascor semper sum puer.

To see is pleasant, but to discover truth is more pleasant; philosophy, therefore, which searches for truth, is a most noble study.

Video sum jucundus, sed invenio veritas sum jucundus; philosophia, igitur, qui investigo veritas, sum honestus studium.

To fly when our country is invaded is base; let us therefore fight valiantly; to die for one's country is sweet and glorious.

Fugio cum patria noster oppugno sum torpis; pugno igitur strenue; morior pro patria sum dulcis et decorus.

Men often pursue pleasure, which is a pernicious thing; but do thou seek after true glory, which is a commendable thing.

Homo sæpe sector voluptas, qui sum perniciosus; sed tu quæro verus gloria, qui sum laudabilis.

To know one's self is the first step towards wisdom; which, as it is a very hard thing, so it is a very useful thing.

Nosco sui ipse sum primus gradus ad sapientia; qui, ut sum difficilis, ita sum utilis.

If thy soul thirsteth for honour, if thy ear loveth praise, raise thyself from the dust, of which thou art made, and aspire after something that is great and good. The oak which now spreadeth its branches towards heaven, was once but an acorn.

To go to school and not to learn is to trifle; and to go to church and not to hear is to profane that sacred place: but to make advances in knowledge and wisdom is an excellent thing.

9. Two or more substantives singular, coupled together with a conjunc-

3. *Duo vel plura substantiva singularia, conjunctione* [et,

tion, [*et*, *ac*, *atque*, &c.] have a verb, adjective, or relative plural.	ac, atque, &c.] *copulata, habent verbum, adjectivum, vel relativum plurale.*
Cyrus and Alexander, who subdued Asia, are renowned among all nations.	*Cyrus et Alexander, qui domuerunt Asiam, sunt inclyti apud omnes gentes.*

Note 1. If the singular substantives be nominatives, and of different persons, the plural verb will agree with the more worthy person; that is, with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third: as,

If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well.	*Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus.*

Note 2. If the singular substantives are of different genders, and signify persons, the adjective or relative plural will take the more worthy Gender; that is, the masculine rather than the feminine or neuter. But if all, or any of the singular substances, signify things without life, the adjective or relative plural is generally put in the neuter gender; as,

My father and Mother, who are now dead, were very pious.	*Pater et mater, qui nunc sunt mortui, erant valde pii.*
Riches, honour, and glory, are set before your eyes.	*Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt.*

It is uncertain whether the feminine of persons be more worthy than the neuter; for grammarians having no authority to determine them, are not agreed, whether we ought to say, *Lucretia et ejus mancipium fuerunt castæ* or *casta.*

Note 3. A singular nominative, with an ablative governed by *cum*, sometimes takes a plural verb or adjective; as, Virg. *Quirinus cum fratre jura dabunt.* Hirt. B. Afr. *Juba cum Labieno capti in potestatem Cæsaris venerunt.* Hygin. *Cadmus cum uxore in dracones sunt conversi.*

Note 4. The conjunction is sometimes suppressed; as, Ter. *Dum ætas, metus, magister prohibebant.*

Note 5. The verb or adjective, neglecting this rule, often agrees with the nearest nominative or substantive; as, Cic. *Et ego et Cicero meus flagitabat.* Plin. *Mare rubrum et totus orientis oceanus refertus est sylvis.* Virg. *Sociis et rege recepto.* Ibid. *Omnia tuta vides, classem sociosque receptos.*

Note 6. *Collectives*, which are substantives signifying many in the singular number, such as, *multitudo, pars, familia, civitas, gens, populus, &c.* take sometimes plural verbs or adjectives; and the ad-

jective frequently, instead of taking the gender of the *collective*, takes that which the sense directs to ; as, Cæs. *Multitudo convenerunt.* Sall. *Magna pars vulnerati aut occisi sunt.* Id. *Familia quorum,* &c.

Note 7. The reason of this rule is, because two or more singulars are equivalent to a plural: thus, *Ego et tu* is the same as *nos, tu et ille* the same as *vos ; Petrus et Johannes* the same as *illi, &c.*

In the first battle Brutus and Aruns killed one another, yet the Romans came off victorious.

In primus pugna Brutus et Aruns occido sui invicem, tamen Romanus recedo victor.

Cato and Cicero were wise and learned ; they loved their country, and all those that loved and defended it.

Cato et Cicero sum sapiens et doctus ; amo patria, et omnis is qui amo, et defendo is.

Hamilcar, Annibal, and Asdrubal, who carried on a war against the Romans, were very skilful generals.

Hamilcar, Annibal, ac Asdrubal, qui gero bellum adversus Romanus sum peritus dux.

Homer, Virgil, and Horace, whom the ancients admired, are justly esteemed most excellent poets.

Homerus, Virgilius, atque, Horatius, qui vetus admiror, merito exitsimo bonus poeta.

Note 1. I and you went into the garden, where you and my brother read Terence, whilst I and the servant were gathering flowers.

Ego et tu eo in hortus, ubi tu et meus frater lego Terentius, dum ego et famulus carpo flos.

Note 2. The man and the woman, whom I and you saw yesterday, are dead to-day, and will be buried to-morrow.

Vir et fœmina, qui ego et tu video heri, sum mortuus hodie, et sepelio cras.

Honour, praise, and glory, are valued and sought after by good men ; but laws, faith, and the gods and themselves, are trampled on by the wicked.

Honos, laus, et decus, sum æstimatus et quæsitus a bonus vir ; sed jus, fides et deus ipse, sum calcatus ab improbus.

After the greatest jollity and wantonness, which a long quiet had produced, all on a sudden, consternation and sorrow overspread the city ; but the night

Ex summus lætistia atque lascivia, qui diuturnus quies pario, repente metus atque mœror invado civitas ; sed nox et

and the plunder retarded the enemy. *præda remoratus sum hostis.*

A contented mind and a good conscience will make a man happy in all conditions; but destruction cometh upon the wicked man as a whirlwind; shame and repentance descend with him to the grave.

Augustus writing to Tiberius, hath these words; If we shall hear that you are sickly, I and your mother will die.

The man servant and maid, who do their duty carefully, are to be commended and rewarded.

RULE IV.

10. SUBSTANTIVES signifying the same thing agree in case.

REG IV.

SUBSTANTIVA eandem rem significantia casu concordant.

Julius Cæsar, the first Roman emperor, was an excellent orator. *Julius Cæsar, primus Romanus imperator, fuit eximius orator.*

Note 1. This concord is called *apposition*, and it is not necessary that the substantives agree in gender, number, or person. The construction, strictly speaking, is elliptical, and may be supplied by the obsolete particle *ens*, or by *qui est*, *qui vocatur*, or the like; as, *Anna soror*, i. e. *Anna ens soror*, or *quæ est soror*.

Note 2. When a plural appellative is put in apposition with two or more proper names of different genders, the appellative must be of the more worthy gender; as, Liv. *Ad Ptolemæum Cleopatramque reges legati missi*, not *reginas*. Here *reges* denotes both *regem* and *reginam*.

Note 3. The latter substantive is sometimes put in the genitive; as, Cic. *In oppido Antiochiæ*. Virg. *Amnis Eridani*.

Note 4. A clause or sentence sometimes supplies the place of one of the substantives; as, Quinct. *Cogitet oratorem instituti, rem arduam*.

The sheep, innocent creatures, are often torn and devoured by the furious ravenous wild beasts, the wolves. *Ovis, innoxius animal, sæpe dilacero et devoro a rabidus rapax fera, lupus.*

Whilst these things are doing at the Hellespont, Perdiccas is *Dum hic gero apud Hellespontus, Perdiccas in-*

slain at the river Nile by Seleucus and Antigonus.

They say that Marcus Tullius Cicero, the orator, was a very great Philosopher; he sent his son Marcus to the city Athens to attend Cratippus, a very famous teacher, and be educated by him.

In the mean time Asdrubal and his colleague, who had continued in Spain with a great army are conquered by the two Scipios, the Roman generals.

terficio apud flumen Nilus a Seleucus et Antigonus.

Aio Marcus Tullius Cicero, orator, sum magnus philosophus; mitto filius Marcus ad urbs Athenæ, ut audio Cratippus, celeber doctor, et instituo ab is.

Interea Asdrubal et collega, qui remaneo in Hispania cum magnus exercitus, vinco a duo Scipio, Romanus dux.

Our Lord Jesus Christ, the only Saviour, came into the world, that he might redeem sinners from sin, death, and destruction, and that they who should believe in his name, might not perish, but have eternal life.

Demosthenes the orator, that he might rouse his fellow-citizens, the Athenians, to war against Alexander, brought a man into the assembly, who affirmed that he had been wounded in a battle, in which Philip the king was slain.

APPENDIX.

To these four concords some add a fifth, viz. that of the *responsive* with the *interrogative* in case; as, *Quis gubernat mundum? Deus. Cujus es? Amphitruonis. Cui dedisti librum? Petro. Quid meritus es? Crucem. Quo cares? Libro.* But this, strictly speaking is no concord; for the responsive does not depend upon the interrogative, but upon the verb, or some word joined with it, which is generally suppressed in the answer, and may be supplied thus; *Quis gubernat mundum? Deus* gubernat mundum *Cujus es.* Sum servus *Amphitruonis. Cui dedisti librum?* Dedi librum *Petro, &c.* And if the word on which the whole answer depends, require a different construction, this concord does not take place: as, *Quanti emptæ? Octussibus. Cujus est liber? Meus. Cuja interest Deo parere? Omnium, &c.*

II. Of GOVERNMENT.

GOVERNMENT is threefold.

II. De REGIMINE.

REGIMEN est triplex.

1. Of nouns.
2. Of verbs.
3. Of words indeclinable.

1. *Nominum.*
2. *Verborum.*
3. *Vocum indeclinabilium.*

---

1. *The Government of Nouns.*

§ 1. Of Substantives.

RULE I.

11. ONE substantive governs another signifying a different thing in the genitive.

Virtue removes the fear of death.
Nature's laws cannot be changed.
The souls of men are immortal, but their bodies return to dust.

I. Regimen Nominum.

§ 1. *Substantivorum.*

REG. I.

UNUM substantivum regit aliud rem diversam significans in genitivo.

Virtus tollit terrorem mortis.
Naturæ leges non possunt mutari.
Animi hominum sunt immortales, sed corpora eorum in pulverem redeunt.

Note 1. The Latin noun put in the genitive, is that which answers to the English word following the particle *of*, or to the word ending in *'s*.

Note 2. The pronouns *hujus, ejus, illius, cujus, &c.* Englished *his, her, ils, their, thereof, whereof, whose*, have their substantive generally suppressed; as, *Liber, ejus,* [sc. *hominis, &c.*] his book, or her book; *Libri, eorum,* [sc *hominum &c.*] their book.

Note 3. These following adjectives, *primus, medius, ultimus, extremus, infimus, imus summus, supremus, reliquus, cætera,* generally denote, *pars, prima, media, ultima, &c.* of the substantive with which they are joined. Thus, *prima fabula* is the same as *prima pars fabulæ*, and does not signify the first fable, but the first part of the fable. And *summa arbor*, the same as *summa pars arboris*, does not signify the highest tree, but the top or highest part of the tree. In like manner are to be understood, *media nox, ultima platea, ima cera, supremus mons, reliqua Ægyptus, cætera turba, &c.*

ANNOTATIONS.

12 *If the last substantive have an adjective of praise or dispraise joined with it, it may be put in the genitive or ablative.

1. *Si posterius substantivum adjunctum habeat adjectivum laudis vel vituperii, in genitivo vel ablativo poni potest.*

Thy brother is a boy of a fine disposition, of the strictest virtue, of a graceful mien and handsome person.

Frater tuus est puer probæ indolis, summæ virtutis, honesta facie et figura venusta.

Note 1. The first substantive is often suppressed ; as, Hor. *Di me pusilli finxerunt animi ;* sup. *virum.* Sall. *Vulgus est ingenio nobili ;* sup. *populus.*

Note 2. The latter substantive must signify some part or property of the first, otherwise it does not belong to this rule. Hence, from this rule are excluded, Virg. *Pulchra prole parentem.* Hor. *Rex gelidæ oræ.* Juv. *Galinæ filius albæ. Pater optimorum liberorum.* And the like, where the latter substantive signifies neither any part, nor any property of the first.

Note 3. The adjective is sometimes joined with the first substantive, and then the latter substantive is put in the ablative ; as, Cic. *Hortensius excellens ingenio, nobilitate, existimatione.* lb. *Vir gravitate et prudentia præstans.* Sall. *Antonius pedibus æger.* And by the poets sometimes in the accusative : as, Virg. *Os humerosque Deo similis.* Hor. *Nec Maurus animum mitior anguibus* Stat. *Heros accurrit vultum dejectus.* Hor. *Miles fractus membra.* Luc. *In vultus effusa comas, Cornelia.* To which we may understand the proposition. *secundum* or *quod ad ;* thus, *Similis Deo* secundum vel quod ad *os humerosque. Mitior,* secundum vel quod ad *animum. Dejectus,* secundum vel quod ad *vultum. Fractus,* secundum vel quod ad *membra. Effusa,* secundum vel quod ad *comas.*

Note 4. In like manner, neuter and passive verbs are construed with the ablative ; as, Hor. *Et corde et genibus tremit.* Liv. *Lævo brachio vulneratur.* And by the poets with the accusative ; as, Hor. *Tremis ossa pavore.* Sil. *Truncatur membra bipenni.* Virg. *Expleri mentem nequit ;* i. e. *tremis* secundum vel quod ad *ossa pavore : truncatur,* secundum vel quod ad *membra bipenni, &c.*

Note 5. When the latter substantive is put in the ablative, some preposition, such as, *cum. de, ex, in, a, ab,* with *ens, existens, natus, præditus, affectus,* or the like, is understood : as, *Homo antiqua vir-*

tute; i. e. *ens cum antiqua virtute. Vir clarus natalibus,* i. e *Natus seu ortus de* vel *ex. Homo infirma valetudine;* i. e. *affectus, ab, &c.*

* 13. An Adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive, governs the genitive.

2. *Adjectivum in neutro genere absque substantivo, regit genitivum.*

The soldiers seem to move this way, a great deal of silver glitters on their arms, what is the meaning? what is the matter?

Milites huc tendere videntur, plurimum argenti fulget in armis, quid causæ? quid rei est?

Note 1. These adjectives are generally such as signify quantity; as, *multum, plus, plurimum, tantum; quantum, minus, minimum;* also, *id, quid, hoc, aliquid, quidquam;* to which may be added, *summum, extremum, ultimum, dimidium, medium;* as, *summum montis, extremo anni, ultimum periculi, dimidium animæ, medium noctis.* To these may likewise be added a great many plural neuters; such as, Virg. *Angusta viarum, opaca locorum, telluris operta.* Hor. *Amara curarum, cuncta terrarum, acuta belli.* Liv. *Incerta fortunæ, antiqua fœderum, extrema periculorum.* Tac. *Occulta saltuum, inania famæ, amœna Asiæ.* Just. *Profunda camporum, prærupta collium, ardua montium, &c.* And sometimes other singular neuters; *as,* Tac. *Lubricum juventæ.* Virg. *Sub obscurum noctis. Ex diverso cœli, &c.*

Note 2. The substantive understood to these neuter adjectives is, *negotium, tempus, locum, spatium,* or the like; as, *Tantum telluris:* sup. *spatium, Hoc noctis;* sup. *tempore,* or *ad tempus, &c.*

Note 3. *Plus* and *quid* always govern the genitive; and, on that account, are esteemed by many, real substantives.

Note 4. *Opus* and *usus* govern the ablative, and sometimes the genitive, of the thing wanted; together with the dative of the person who wants, expressed or understood; as, Cic *Auctoritate tua nobis opus est.* Virg. *Nunc viribus usus;* sup. *est vobis.* Quinct *Lectionis opus est.* Liv. *Si quo usus operæ sit. Opus* elegantly governs a participle in the ablative; And that either with a substantive; as, Plaut. *Celeriter mihi hoc homine convento est opus:* Or without a substantive; as, Liv. *Maturato opus est. Opus* is likewise sometimes joined by way of adjective, with a substantive; as, Cic. *Dux nobis et auctor opus est.* Id. *Dicem nummos mihi opus esse.* And in Plautus we find *usus* governing a participle in the ablative, in the same manner as *opus;* Bach. *Quid usus est conscriptus ad hunc modum tabulis?* Amph. *Citius quod non facto est usus, fit, quam quod facto est opus.* And there is at least one example of its being joined by way of adjective to a substantive; Plaut. Rud, *Hoc neque isti usus est; et illi miserœ suppetias jaccret.*

11. The power of honesty is so great, that we love it even in an enemy.

Marcellus engaged with a small body of horse, and slew Viridomarus king of the Gauls.

Lampedo, the Lacedemonian, is said to have been the only woman in any age, who was a king's daughter, a king's wife, and a king's mother.

God who knoweth man's heart, will punish the wicked who transgress his commands.

They are not rich, whose money is increased, or whose flocks are many; but he is rich whose mind is quiet and content.

A kindness does not consist in that which is done or given, but in the intention of the doer or giver.

My father and mother were very pious. I will implore the divine assistance, and will follow their good example,

12. Numerianus, Carus's son, a young man of an extraordinary genius, was taken off by a plot among the Persians.

Olympias confessed that she had conceived Alexander, not by her husband Philip, but by a serpent of a huge bigness.

Tiberius the Roman emperor, was a man of a large and strong body, of a fair complexion, and a graceful aspect.

Cataline was a man of great

Vis honestas sum tantus, ut diligo is etiam in hostis.

Marcellus dimico cum parvus manus equus, et occido Viridomarus rex Gallus.

Lampedo, Lacedemonius, dico sum unicus fœmina in omnis ævum, qui sum rex filia, rex uxor, et rex mater.

Deus, qui nosco homo cor, punio scelestus, qui violo is præceptum.

Ille non sum dives, qui pecunia, augeo, aut qui grex sum multus; sed ille sum dives, qui animus sum quietus et tranquillus.

Beneficium non consisto in is qui fio aut do, sed in animus faciens aut dans.

Meus pater et mater sum valde pius, Imploro divinus opis, et sequor is bonus exemplum.

Numerianus, Carus filius, adolescens egregius indoles, occido per insidiæ apud Persæ.

Olympias confiteor, sui concipio Alexander, non ex vir suus Philippus, sed ex serpens ingens magnitudo.

Tiberius, Romanus imperator, sum vir amplus et robustus 6 corpus, candidus 6 color, et honestus 6 facies.

Catalina sum vir mag-

vigor both of mind and body, but of a wicked and perverse disposition.

13. After the battle, much gold and other riches were found in the camp of the Persians.

As much money as any one has in his chest, so much credit has he; and he that has little money, has likewise little credit.

The victory is glorious, in which there is more of clemency than cruelty; for cruelty always occasions a great deal of mischief.

Cicero was a man of a mild disposition, and polite eloquence; he had less courage than Julius Cæsar, but he had more honesty.

What news is there in the city about Nero? a little before his death he leaned down upon a bed, and drank some warm water.

After I had gone away from you, I wrote this little epistle, and I took care to avoid the words that might occasion any obscurity.

Note 4. They have not so much need of precept as example; the boys are now arrived at that age, that they ought to behave wisely, what need is there of words?

Now there will be need of your assistance, for in a capital affair a judge ought to act cau-

nus 6 *vis et animus et corpus, sed malus pravusque* 6 *ingenium.*

Post prælium, multum aurum et alius opes invenio in castra Persæ.

Quantum nummus quisque servo in arca suus, tantum fides habeo; et qui habeo paululum pecunia habeo etiam paululum fides.

Victoria sum præclarus, in qui plus clementia sum quam crudelitas, nam crudelitas semper facio plurimum malum.

Cicero sum vir mitis 6 *ingenium, et comptus* 6 *facundia; habeo minus fortitudo quam Julius Cæsar, sed habeo plus probitas.*

Ecquid novum sum in civitas de Nero? sub mors decumbo super lectus, et bibo aliquantum tepidus aqua.

Postquam discedo a tu, exaro hic literula, et curo vito verbum qui possum affero aliquid obscuritas.

Non tam ille opus sum imperium quam exemplum; puer jam pervenio ad id ætas, ut debeo ago prudenter, quis opus sum verbum?

Nunc usus sum tuus opera, nam in res capitalis judex debeo ago caute,

tiously, and there is need of great evidence.

¶ The giants who assaulted heaven were buried under vast mountains; they endeavour to rise now and then, which causes the earthquake; as old poets affirm.

Pompey triumphed on account of the Mithridatic war: no pomp of a triumph was ever like it; the son of Mithridates, the son of Tigranes, and Aristobulus king of the Jews, were led before his chariot.

The Athenians, that they might not be reduced to their former condition of slavery, draw together an army, and order it to be led by Iphicrates. The conduct of this youth was wonderful, nor had the Athenians ever before him, among so many and so great generals, a commander either of greater hopes or of a riper genius.

After they had pitched their camp they receive an account of an old story, that Cyrene, a lady of excellent beauty, carried away by Apollo from Pelion, a mountain in Thessaly, had been got with child by the god, and had brought forth four boys; and that Aristæus, one of them had first taught the use of bees and honey, and of milk for curds.

Courage was the cause of the victory; wherefore such was the slaughter of the enemy,

et opus sum magnus documentum.

Gigas qui oppugno cælum sepelio sub ingens mons; conor surgo subinde, qui efficio terra motus, ut vetus poeta affirmo.

Pompeius triumpho de Mithridaticus bellum: nullus pompa triumphus unquam sum similis; filius Mithriddtes, filius Tigranes, et Aristobulus rex Judæus, ductus sum ante is currus.

Atheniensis, ne redigo in pristinus sors servitus, contrabo exercitus jubeoque is duco per Iphicrates Virtus hic adolescens sum admirabilis, nec Atheniensis habeo unquam ante is, inter tot tantusque dux, imperator aut magnus spes, aut maturus indoles.

Cum pono castra, accipio opinio vetus fabula, Cyrene, virgo eximius pulchritudo, raptus ab Apollo a Pelion, mons Thessalia, repleo a deus, et pario quatuor puer: et Aristæus, unus ex hic, primus trado usus apis et mel, et lac ad coagulum.

Virtus sum causa victoria; itaque is sum cædes hostis, ut victor Roma-

that the victorious Romans did not drink more water than blood of the barbarians out of the bloody river.

At last Corinth, the head of Achai, the glory of Greece, being deserted by the inhabitants was first plundered, and then destroyed; but what statues, what clothes, and what pictures were seized, burnt, and thrown about!

When the old men perceived the approach of the enemy, they met them in the very entrance of the gates, and a hundred men of an age quite worn out fought against fifteen thousand; so much courage and strength does the sight of one's country and home inspire.

The first inhabitants of Italy were the Aborigines, whose king Saturn is said to have been a man of so much justice, that neither was any one a slave under him, nor had any thing of private property, but all things were common and undivided.

Numantia the glory of Spain, a town without walls, without towers, held out against an army of forty thousand for fourteen years; nor did it hold out only, but often mauled them; and before it could be taken, there was occasion for him who had destroyed Carthage.

nus non bibo plus aquâ quam sanguis barbarus de cruentus flumen.

Tandem Corinthus, caput Achaia, decus Græcia desertus ab incola, primum sum direptus, deinde deletus; sed quid signum, quid vestis, quidque tabula raptus, incensus, atque projectus sum!

Cum senex præsentio adventus hostis, occurro in ipse angustiæ porta, et centum vir effætus ætas pugno adversus quindecim mille; tantum animus viresque conspectus patria penatesque subministro.

Primus cultor Italia sum Aborigines, qui rex Saturnus trado sum tantus justitia, ut neque quisquam servio sub ille, neque habeo quicquam privatus res, sed omnis sum communis et indivisus.

Numantia, decus Hispania, oppidum sine murus, sine turris, sustineo exercitus quadraginta mille, per quatuordecim annus; nec sustineo modo, sed sæpius percello; et priusquam capio possum, opus sum is qui everto Carthago.

There is but one God, the author, the creator, the governor of the world; almighty, eternal, and unchangeable. Wonderful he is

in all his ways: his counsels are unsearchable, his goodness is conspicuous in all his works; he is the fountain of excellence, the centre of perfection; the creatures of his hand declare his goodness, all their enjoyments speak his praise.

Thales was reckoned among the wise men, because he was believed to be the first that brought geometry into Greece. He first observed the motions of the sun and stars, the origin of the winds, and the nature of thunder. Being asked what he thought the most difficult thing in the world? he answered, To know one's self.

Sir William Wallace was a man of an ancient family, but of a small fortune. He performed many glorious exploits in the war against the English. Many, whom the love of their country had called together, flocked to Wallace from all parts. He quickly took the castles, which the English possessed beyond the Forth. The Forth is a river an arm of the sea, which divides Lothian from Fife. The mouth of the Forth is called the Scottish sea. He led his army into England, where he found much gold and silver among the spoils of his enemies. What need had he of more?

---

§ 2. Of Adjectives.

RULE I.

14. VERBAL adjectives, and such as signify an affection of the mind, require the genitive.

This man is capable of friendship, a lover of his country, fond of learning, skilled in war, not ignorant of religion, and privy to all my designs.

§ 2. *Adjectivorum.*

REG. I.

ADJECTIVA verbalia, vel affectionem animi signifiantia, genitivum postulant.

Hic vir est capax amicitiæ, amans patriæ, cupidus literarum, peritus belli, haud ignarus religionis, et conscius omnium meorum consiliorum.

To this rule belong,

I. VERBALS in AX, and PARTICIPIALS in NS: as, *capax, edax, fugax, pertinax, pervicax, rapax, sagax spernax, tenax, vorax, &c. amans, appetens, cupiens, experiens, intelligens, insolens, negligens, diligens, metuens, ob-*

servans, patiens, impatiens, retinens, reverentior, sciens, servantissimus, timens, tolerans, fugiens, sitiens, &c.

II. ADJECTIVES signifying an affection of the mind such as,

1. DESIRE and DISDAIN ; as, *cupidus, avarus, avidus, studiosus, curiosus, æmulus, fastidiosus, incuriosus, profusus, &c.*

2. KNOWLEDGE ; as, *peritus, gnarus, prudens, callidus, providus, doctus, docilis, præscius, præsagus, certus certior, memor, expertus, consultus, assuetus, &c.*

3. IGNORANCE ; as, *ignarus, rudis, imperitus, imprudens, improvidus, nescius, inscius, incertus, dubius, anxius, solicitus, immemor, ambiguus, suspensus, indoctus, inexpertus, formidolosus, pavidus, timidus, trepidus ;* also, *insuetus insolitus, securus, intrepidus, interritus, impavidus, &c.*

4. GUILT ; as, *conscius, convictus, manifestus, suspectus, reus, noxius, compertus ;* also, *innoxius, innocens, insons, &c.*

Note 1. Verbals or verbal adjectives, are adjective nouns derived from verbs ; as *capax* from *capio, edax* from *edo &c.* Participials are participles turned into adjective nouns ; such as, *patiens, impatiens ; doctus, indoctus ; expertus, inexpurtus, &c.* Here observe, that the participial and participle, though the word be often the same, differ in signification, as well as in point of construction : the participle signifies a single act at a certain time ; but the participial, without regard to any particular time, denotes a habit Thus, *patiens frigus,* signifies a person just now exposed to the cold, however unfit he may be to bear it ; but *patiens frigoris,* denotes one whom nature or custom has enabled or fitted to bear the cold with ease. Again, *doctus grammaticam,* signifies a person, who some time ago has been taught grammar, though perhaps he never understood it, or has now forgot it ; but *doctus grammaticæ,* denotes one, who by long study has attained a thorough knowledge in grammar, or is become a connoisseur in it. Again, participials admit the degrees of comparison,, which participles do not ; thus, *amans, amantior, amantissimus ; doctus, doctior, doctissimus.*

Note 2. To this rule may be referred a great variety of other adjectives, the more common of which occur in the following phrases : " Abjectior animi, abstemius vini, acer militiæ, illustrium domuum " adversa, æger animi æquales ævi, æquss absentium, illarum re- " rum affines, alienum dignitatis, alternus animæ, amens animi, ani- " helus laboris, ardens animi, atrox odii, audax ingenii, aversus ani- " mi, bibulus Falerni, blandus precum, cæcus animi, captus animi, " catus legum, commune omnium, confidens animi, confirmatus " animi, confusus animi, conterminus jugi, contraria virtutum, cre- " dulus adversi, degener virtutis, devius æqui, disertus leporum, " dispar sortis, dissimilis tui, diversus morum, divina avis imbrium, " durus oris, effusissimus munificentiæ, egregius animi, enunciativus " corporum, erectus animi, exactus morum, exiguus animi, eximius

animi, exosa vitæ, externatus animi, facilis frugum, fallax amicitiæ, falsus animi, felix cerebri, ferox animi, fervidus ingenii, fessus rerum, festinus voti, fidens animi, fidissima tui, finitimus fluvii, flavus comarum, floridior ævi, fluxi vestium, fortunatus laborum, frustratus decoris, fugitivus patriæ, furens animi, gaudens alti, illex animi, impiger militiæ, improba connubii, incautus futuri, inconsuetus mensæ, indecora formæ, indocilis pacis, infelix culpæ, ingens animi, inglorius militiæ, ingratus salutis, insanus animi, insolens infamiæ, integer animi, invictus laboris, lapsus animi, lassus maris, lentus cœpti, levis opum, madidus roris, maturus laudum, maximus ævi, medius cœli, miser animi, moderatus iræ, mutabile mentis, mutatus animi, nobilis fandi, notus fugarum, obnoxius timoris, occultus odii, optimus militiæ, oriundus cujus patriæ, ornatus fidei, otiosi studiorum, pares ætatis, perfida pacti, periclitabundus sui, perinfames maleficæ disciplinæ, piger pericli, præclarus fidei, præceps animi, præcipuus virtutis, præstans belli, pravus favoris, primus luendæ pœnæ, prosperus occasionis, propriæ Deorum voluptates, procax otii, profugus regni, promptus belli, pulcherrimus iræ, recreatus animi, rectus judicii, resides bellorum, sanus mentis, saucius famæ, scitus vadorum, secors rerum, secreta teporis, segnis occasionum, seri studiorum, sicci sanguinis ensis, significativus belli cometes, similis tui, sinister fidei, solers lyræ, spernendus morum, spreta vigoris, stabilis sui orbis, strenuus militiæ, stupens animi, summus severitatis, superior sui, superstes bellorum, surdus veritatis, tantus animi, tardus fugæ, tenella animi, territus animi, turbatus animi, turbidus animi, vafer juris, vagus animi, validus opum, vanus veri, vecors animi, veneraudus sceptri, versus animi, versutus ingenii, vetus regnandi, victus animi, vigil armenti, viridissimus iræ, unius rerum."

Note 3. Of the adjectives belonging to this rule, *æmulus, certus, incertus, dubius, ambiguus, conscius, manifestus, suspectus, noxius, compertus,* instead of the genitive, take frequently the dative, but generally in a different sense, as will be taught in No. 16. Several also of the adjectives in Note 2. such as, *adversus, æqualis, affinis, alienus, blandus, communis, conterminus, contrarius, credulus, dispar, dissimilis, fidus, finitimus, par, proprius, similis, superstes,* and some others, take often the dative than the genitive, as will likewise be taught in No. 16. And *superior, captus, oriundus, gaudens,* take commonly the ablative, as taught in No. 19. 20. 52.

Note 4. Many of the adjectives belonging to this rule admit of other constructions ; as, Cic. *De alieno negligens.* Id. *Avidus in pecuniis.* Id. *Certior factus de re.* Liv. *Securus de bello.* Cic. *Nulla in re rudis.* Id. *Doctus Latinis literis.* Plin. *Suspecta incestu.* Cic. *Reus de vi. Reus magnis criminibus.* Colum. *Innoxius ab injuria.* Many also of those enumerated in Note 2. either take the ablative, or admit of some other construction ; as, Ovid. *Felix morte sua.* Cic. *Ferox natura.* Id. *Præstans ingenio et doctrina.* Tac. *Derius consiliis.* Ovid. *Fugitivus a domino.* Cic. *Profugi ab Thebis.* Tac. *Degener ad pericula.* And *alienus* has very frequently the ablative, with *a,* or *ab ;* as, Ter. *Homo sum ; humani nihil a me alienum puto.*

Note 5. The genitive, according to grammarians, is not governed by these adjectives; but by *in re, in negotio, in causa,* or the like understood; except in cases where the adjective is used substantively.

I. Blasius was a man capable of profound thought, firm in his resolution, despising death, and avoiding ambition; he was a quick discerner of things, and a stickler for what was right; but he was obstinate in wrath, and a devourer of much meat.

Blasius sum vir capax altus mens, tenax propositum, spernax mors, et fugax ambitio; sum sagax res, et pertinax rectum; sed sum pervicax ira, et edax multus cibus.

The Emperor's freed man was a man able to endure cold, and capable of bearing want; but he was afraid of the lash, and unacquainted with war: he was skilled in music, fond of pleasure, and a lover of wine: nay, he was greedy of praise, covetous of applause; but equally neglectful of friends and enemies. He was, however, most observant of justice, and nobody was more revereful of the gods.

Imperator libertus sum homo patiens algor, et tolerans penuria: sed sum metuens flagellum, et insolens bellum: sum sciens musica, cupiens voluptas, et amans vinum: imo sum appetens laus, sitiens fama: sed æque negligens amicus inimicus que. Sum tamen servantissimus æquum, et nemo sum reverentior deus.

II. 1. The man, whom I mentioned above, was of a fickle temper: at first he was desirous of war, greedy of military glory, and weary of learning; but after Carthage, that vied with the city of Rome for so many years, was destroyed, he was fond of peace, addicted to eloquence, and much taken up with physic.

Vir, qui memoro supra, sum mobilis 6 ingenium: primo sum avidus bellum, avarus militaris gloria, et fastidiosus literæ; sed postquam Carthago, æmulus urbs Roma per tot annus, everto, sum cupidus pax, studiosus eloquentia, et curiosus medicina.

2. Our general is skilled in many things, being expert at arms, well seen in the art military, versed in war, foreseeing what is to come, aware of

Noster dux sum peritus multus res, gnarus arma, prudens res militaris, expertus bellum, præscius venturum, providus res-

things future, well assured of what will happen, but undaunted at danger, and not afraid of death; his son is well acquainted with learning, but apt to learn vice; he is skilled in the law, versed in country affairs, and mindful of a good turn.

3. This man is void of learning, ignorant of philosophy, unskilled in arms, unacquainted with the world, not afraid of the gods, unaccustomed to hardship, not used to slavery, fearless of death, unmindful of his condition, and regardless of reputation. His wife, ignorant of her extraction, is unstaid in her mind, wavering in her resolution, concerned, and in pain for her affairs, and perplexed about the theft.

4. The orator defended two men accused of parricide, and suspected of capital crimes; the one had been privy to murder, and concerned in a conspiracy, who being evidently guilty of the villany, and convicted of the crime, was condemned; the other being guiltless of the facts, not concerned in the plot entered into against the king's life, innocent of his brother's blood, and found guilty of no crime, was acquitted.

¶ Shame and modesty are weak restraints amongst men thirsting after power, and regardless of honour: accordingly Domitian proceeded to huge excesses of lust, rage,

futurus, certus futurum, verum intrepidus periculum, et interritus letum: is filius sum doctus literæ, sed docilis pravum; sum consultus jus, callidus res rusticus, et memor beneficum.

Hic homo sum rudis literæ, ignarus philosophia, inscius arma, imperitus, res, haud timidus deus, insuetus labor, insolitus servitium, impavidus mors, immemor sors et securus fama. Is uxor, nescius genus, sum incertus animus, dubius consilium, solicitus et trepidus res suus, et anxius furtum.

Orator defendo duo homo reus parricidium, et suspectus capitalis crimen: alter sum conscius cædes, et noxius conjuratio, qui, manifestus scelus, et convictus facinus, condemno: alter, innocens factum, innoxius consilium initus in rex caput, insons fraternus sanguis, et compertus nullus flagitium, absolvo.

Pudor et modestia sum infirmus vinculum apud homo avidus potentia et securus decus: itaque Domitianus progredior ad ingens vitium libido, ira-

cruelty, and avarice, and raised so great a hatred against himself, that he quite wiped off the merits of his father and brother.

Catiline, a man of a very noble extraction, but of a very wicked disposition, with some famous indeed, but daring men, conspired against his country; his accomplices being seized, were strangled in prison; and indeed, what could be hard or too severe against men convicted of such villany?

Vespasian, the emperor, was apt not to remember offences and quarrels: he took patiently the ill language uttered against him by the lawyers and philosophers: and Galba was a man not regardless of fame, not covetous of other men's money, but greedy of the public's money, and not lavish of his own; could bear with his friends and freed-men, was capable of empire, had he not governed.

Cineas, who was Demosthenes's scholar, and skilled in the Latin tongue, was sent to Rome by Pyrrhus, to advise the Romans to sue for peace; but the Romans afterwards dispatched generals into Greece and other quarters, who taught the nations, till that time free, and therefore unable to bear the yoke, to beg peace of them, and be subject.

Sylla was fond of pleasure, but fonder of glory, he hastened

cundia, crudelitas et avaritia, et concito tantus odium in sui, ut penitus aboleo meritum pater et frater.

Catilina, vir nobilis 6 genus, sed pravus 6 ingenium, cum quidam clarus quidem, sed audax vir, conjuro adversus patria; is socius deprehensus, strangulo in cœrcer; et sane quis possum acerbus aut nimis gravis in homo convictus tantus facinus?

Vespasianus, princeps sum immemor offensa et inimicitia; leniter fero convicium dictus in sui a causidicus et philosophus: et Galba sum vir non incuriosus fama, non appetens alienus pecunia, sed avarus pecunia publicus, et non profusus suus; patiens amicus libertusque, capax imperium, nisi impero.

Cineas, qui sum Demosthenes discipulus, et doctus Latinus lingua, mitto ad Roma a Pyrrhus, ut hortor Romanus peto pax; sed Romanus postea mitto dux in Græcia aliusque pars, qui doceo gens, ad id tempus liber, et ideo impatiens jugum, peto pax a sui, et servio.

Sylla sum cupidus voluptas, sed cupidus gloria;

with his victorious army from Asia; and indeed since Marius had been so cruel against his friends, how great severity was there occasion for, that Sylla might be revenged of Marius ?

propero cum victor exercitus ab Asia; et sane quum Marius sum tam ferus in is amicus, quantus sævitia opus sum, ut Sylla vindico de Marius?

Agesilaus was an excellent general, undaunted at danger, able to endure want, and accustomed to hardship; he was a man of low stature, and slender body; so that strangers, when they beheld his person, despised him; but they who knew his abilities could not sufficiently admire him.

Epaminondas, the son of Polymnus, the Theban, was modest, prudent, skilled in war, a lover of truth, and of a great spirit.

Nyctimene is said to have committed some horrible wickedness, for which she was changed into an owl, an ugly dismal bird, who, conscious of her guilt, never appears when the sun shines, but being driven from the society of birds, seeks to conceal her shame in the darkness of the night.

RULE II.

15. PARTITIVES, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals govern the genitive plural.

REG. II.

PARTITIVA, et partitive posita, comparativa, superlativa, interrogativa, et quædam numeralia, genitivo plurali gaudent.

None of the wild beasts.	*Nulla belluarum.*
The black among vultures.	*Nigri Vulturum.*
The elder of the brothers.	*Senior fratrum.*
The most learned of the Romans.	*Doctissimus Romanorum.*
Which of us ?	*Quis nostrum.*
One of the muses.	*Una musarum*
The eighth of the wise men.	*Octavus sapientum.*

1. *Partitives* are adjectives, nouns, or pronouns, signifying many, or a part of many, severally, and as it were one

by one; as, *ullus*, *nullus*, *solus*, *uter*, *uterque*, *utercunquè*, *utervis*, *uterlibet*, *alter*, *alteruter*, *neuter*, *alius*, *aliquis*, *quidam*, *quispiam*, *quisquis*, *quisque*, *unusquisque*, *aliquot*, *cæter*, *reliquus*; to which add, *omnis*, *cunctus*, and the substantive *nemo*.

2. *Words placed partitively* are adjectives used in a partitive sense, or taken to signify a part of many; as, *lecti juvenum*, the choice of the young men; *nigræ lanarum*, the black hair among wool; *degeneres canum*, *sancti deorum*, *&c.* to which may be added the substantive *vulgus*; as, *vulgus Atheniensium*, *vulgus militum*.

3. *Comparatives* are adjectives of the comparative degree; as, *doctior*.

4. *Superlatives* are adjectives of the superlative degree; as, *doctissimus*.

5. *Interrogatives* are adjective nouns or pronouns, by which we ask a question; those belonging to this rule are, *quis*, *quisnam*, *quisve*, *uter*, *quot*, *quotus*, *quotusquisque*.

6. *Numerals* are adjectives signifying number; and to this rule belong both the *cardinals*, such as, *unus*, *duo*, *tres*, *&c.* and the *ordinals*, such as, *primus*, *secundus*, *tertius*, *&c.* as also the *distributive singuli*; to which add, *multi*, *pauci*, *plerique*, *medius*.

Note 1. The partitive, &c. takes the gender of the substantive it governs, when there is no other; but if there are two substantives of different genders, it generally agrees with the first; as, Cic. *Indus maximus fluminum*. Id. *Leo fortissimus animalium*. But not always; as Plin. *Delphinus velocissimum omnium animantium*.

Note 2. Partitives, &c. govern the genitive singular of collectives; as, Cic. *Præstantissimus nostræ civitatis*. Virg. *Nymphorum sanguinis una*.

Note 3. The comparative, as also the partitive, *uter*, *alter*, *neuter*, when they govern a genitive of partition, import a comparison betwixt two only: thus, speaking of two brothers, or two persons, we say, *major fratrum*, *uter vestrum?* But speaking of three or more, we say, *maximus fratrum*, *quis vestrum*.

Note 4. Instead of the genitive of partition, we often find the ablative with *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*, and sometimes the accusative with *inter*, or *ante*, as, Ovid. *De tot modo fratribus unus*. Cic. *unus e Stoicis*. Id. *Acerrimus ex omnibus nostris sensibus est sensus videndi*. Senec. *Crœsus inter reges opulentissimus*. Liv. *Longe ante alios acceptissimus militum animis*.

Note 5. After partitives, &c. we use the genitives, *nostrum* and *vestrum*, but not *nostri* or *vestri*.

Note 6. In this construction of partitives, &c. *de*, *e*, vel *ex numero* is understood or sometimes expressed; as, Juv. *Quædam de numero famiarum.* V. Max. *Unus e numero Persarum.* Cæs. *Ex numero adversariorum sexcentis interfectis.*

I. Augustus after the civil wars, neither in his harangues nor in his edicts, called any of the military, fellow soldiers.

Augustus, post civilis bellum neque in concio, neque per edictum, appello ullus miles commilito.

Alexander engaged with none of his enemies whom he did not conquer, and laid siege to no town which he did not take.

Alexander congredior cum nullus hostis qui non vinco et obsideo nullus urbs qui non expugno.

Spain was invaded by the Romans before it knew itself. and alone of all the provinces understood its own strength after it was subdued.

Hispania obsideo a Romanus antequam cognosco sui, et solus omnis provincia intelligo suus vires postquam vinco.

Who will wonder that the enemy gave way, when one of the consuls ordered his own son, though victorious, to be slain, because he had fought contrary to orders?

Quis miror hostis cedo, quum alter consul jubeo suus filius, quamvis victor, occido, quia pugno contra imperium?

What every one of your friends may have written to the general concerning these two men, I know not? But neither of them is much to be blamed; the rest of the soldiers were also in the fault, and none of us is innocent.

Quis quisque tuus necessarius scribo ad imperator de hic duo vir, nescio; sed neuter is sum valde reprehendendus; reliquus miles sum etiam in culpa, et nemo ego sum innocuus.

This man entertains a stranger more handsomely than either of you, or any of your friends: Come, says he, here are eggs, hens, apples, and nuts; some of the apples are mellow; of the eggs, some are long, some round; choose either of them you please, for both of them are good.

Hic vir excipio hospes eleganter quam utervis tu, aut quisquam amicus vester: Agite, inquam hic sum ovum, gallina, pomum et nux; ovum alius sum oblongus, alius rotundus; eligo uterlibet hic, nam uterque is sum bonus.

2. The centurion being surrounded by the enemy, was in great danger; but the chief of his friends, the chosen amongst the young men, and the light armed of the soldiers, came running up to his relief.

3 and 4. The younger of the bees go abroad to their work, the more elderly labour within. Thus the most ancient of mortals practised industry; they lived without a crime, and therefore without punishment, nor was there need of rewards.

5 and 6. Who of mortals can endure regal pride? Wherefore Tarquin, the seventh and last of the Roman kings, was driven into banishment, and scarce two or three of his well wishers were left in the city.

All Gaul is divided into three parts; whereof the Belgæ inhabit one, the Aquitani another, the Gauls the third. Of all these the Belgæ are the bravest. What numbers of men have flourished there?

¶ After Sylla came over to Africa, and to the camp of Marius with the horse, though raw before, and unacquainted with war, he soon became the most accomplished of all. But what one of a thousand of great generals is happy?

The tyrants are conquered, and fly back to the city. After this they begged assistance of the Lacedemonians. The war is renewed, five hundred of the

Centurio circumventus ab hostis, versor in magnus periculum; sed præcipuus amicus, lectus juvenis, et expeditus miles, concurro in auxilium.

Adolescentior apis exeo ad opus, senior operor intus, ita vetustissimus mortalis exerceo diligentia: ago sine scelus eoque sine pœna, nec opus sum præmium.

Quis mortalis possum tolero regalis superbia? Itaque Tarquinius, septimus atque ultimus Romanus rex, ago in exilium, et vix duo aut tres fautor relinquo in urbs.

Omnis Gallia sum divisus in tres pars; qui Belgæ incolo unus. Aquitani alius Galli tertius. Hic omnis Belgæ sum fortissimus. Quot homo ibi provenio?

Post quam Sylla venio in Africa, atque in castra Marius cum equitatus, quamvis rudis antea, et ignarus bellum, brevis fio solertissimus omnis. Sed quotusquisque magnus dux sum felix.

Tyrannus vinco, et in urbs refugio. Post hic peto auxilium a Lacedæmonius. Bellum redintegro, quingenti Lacedæmonius

Lacedemonians are slain in battle, Critias and Hippolochus the most cruel of all the tyrants, fall. But who amongst men, or which of the gods, bewailed their death?

terficio in prælium, Critias et Hippolochus, omnis tyrannus sævissimus, cado. Sed quisnam homo, quisve deus, lugeo mors?

Many of the soldiers were kissing the hands and feet of Otho, and calling him the only emperor: whilst in the mean time, Vitellius, ignorant of the victory, was drawing together the remaining strength of the German army: most of the soldiers were on their march, a few only of the veterans were left in the winter quarters.

Multus miles exosculor manus ac pes Otho, unicusque imperator prædico; dum interim, Vitellius, nescius victoria, traho reliquus vires Germanicus exercitus; plerique miles sum in iter, pauci, tantum veteranus relinquo in hiberna.

Of Cæsar's men, not above twenty were missing, but in the castle there were none of the soldiers but were wounded, four of the centurions lost their eyes, thirty thousand arrows were shot into the castle by the enemy, and in the shield of Scæva the centurion were found two hundred and thirty holes.

Cæsar miles non amplius viginti sum desideratus, sed in castellum nemo miles omino sum quin vulnero, quatuor centurio amitto oculus, triginta mille sagitta conjicio in castellum ab hostis, et in scutum Scæva centurio invenio ccxxx *foramen.*

Sicily at the beginning was the country of the Cyclops: after they were extirpated, Cocalus seized the government of the island, after whom each of the cities fell under the power of tyrants.

Sicilia a principium sum patria Cyclops: postquam ille extinguo, Cocalus occupo regnum insula; post qui singuli civitas concedo in imperium tyrannus.

Cæsar, the most penetrating and wisest of generals, resolves to take Dumnorix along with him into Britain, because he knew him to be desirous of change, fond of power, of a great spirit, and of great authority among the Gauls; though

Cæsar, sagacissimus ac sapienttissimus dux, constituo duco Dumnorix suicum in Brittannia, quod cognosco is cupidus res novus, avidus imperium, magnus 6 *animus, et magnus auctoritas inter Gal-*

he persisted to intreat that he might be left in Gaul.

Gordius spied a young lady of excellent beauty at the gate of the city, and asked her which of the augurs he should consult? When she understood the occasion of his question, being skilled in the art, she told him that he should be a king, and promises that she should be the companion of his life and hopes. This offer seemed the chief happiness of a kingdom.

lus; quamvis ille contendo peto uti in Gallia relinquo.

Gordius conspicor virgo eximius pulchritudo ad porta urbs, et percontor quis augur consulto? Cum intelligo causa quæstio, peritus ars, respondeo ille sum rex, et polliceor sui fore socius vita is et spes, Hic conditio videor primus felicitas regnum.

Pylades and Orestes cherished a mutual love, and no mortal knows which of them was the more faithful.

The priestess of Apollo being asked why Jupitor was esteemed the chief of the Gods, since Mars was the best soldier? made this answer, Mars is valiant, but Jupiter is wise.

The nation of the Suevi is the most warlike of all the Germans. The nature of their food, their daily exercise, and free manner of life improve their strength, and make them men of huge stature of body.

When Faith, Temperance, the Graces, and other celestial powers left the earth, (says one of the Ancients,) Hope was the only goddess that staid behind

The first of all virtues is Innocence, the next is Modesty. If we banish Modesty out of the world, she carries away with her half the virtue that is in it.

RULE III.

16. ADJECTIVES signifying profit or disprofit govern the dative.

REG. III.

ADJECTIVA significantia commodum vel incommodum regunt dativum.

Kind to me.
Agreeable to the people.
Sentenced to punishment
Evident to all.

Benignus mihi.
Acceptus plebi.
Addictus supplicio.
Apertum omnibus.

Bordering on the sea.	*Finitimus mari.*
Fit for study.	*Aptus studio.*
Frank to petitioners.	*Facilis rogantibus.*
Of the same age with Cicero.	*Æqualis Ciceroni.*
Like his father.	*Similis patri.*
Allied to heaven.	*Cognatus cælo.*
Exposed to danger.	*Obnoxius periculo.*

To this rule belong chiefly adjectives signifying,

1. PROFIT or DISPROFIT; as *benignus, bonus, utilis, commodus, felix, faustus, fructuosus, prosper, saluber;* also, *calamitosus, inutilis, damnosus, dirus, exitiosus, funestus, incommodus, malus, noxius, perniciosus, pestifer.*

2. PLEASURE or PAIN; as, *acceptus, dulcis, gratus, gratiosus, jucundus, lætus, suavis;* also, *acerbus, amarus, iusuavis, injucundus, ingratus, molestus, tristis.*

3. LOVE or HATRED; as, *addictus, æquus, amicus, benevolus, blandus, carus, deditus, fidus, fidelis, lenis, mitis, propitius;* also, *adversus, asper, crudelis, contrarius, infensus, infestus, infidus, inimitis, inimicus, iniquus, invisus, invidus, iratus, odiosus, suspectus, trux.*

4. PERSPICUITY or OBSCURITY; as, *apertus, certus, compertus, conspicuus, manifestus, notus, perspicuus;* also, *ambiguus, dubius, ignotus, incertus, obscurus.*

5. PROPINQUITY; as, *finitimus, proprior, proximus, propinquus, socius, vicinus, affinis.*

6. FITNESS or UNFITNESS; as, *aptus, appositus, accommodatus, habilis, idoneus, opportunus;* also, *ineptus, inhabilis, importunus, inconveniens.*

7. EASINESS or DIFFICULTY; as, *facilis, levis, obvius, pervius;* also, *difficilis, arduus, gravis, laboriosus, periculosus, invius.*

8. EQUALITY or INEQUALITY; as, *æqualis, æquævus, par, compar, suppar, communis;* and, *inæqualis, impar, dispar, discors:* Also, LIKENESS or UNLIKENESS; as, *similis, æmulus, geminus;* and, *dissimilis, absonus, alienus, diversus, discolor.*

9. Also many compounded with CON; as, *cognatus, concolor, concors, confinis, congruus, consanguineus, concius, consentaneus, consonans, conveniens, conterminus, contiguus, continuus, continens, &c.*

10. A great variety of other adjectives that cannot be reduced to distinct classes; as, *obnoxius, subjectus, supplex, superstes, proprius, credulus, absurdus, decorus, deformis, præsto, secundus, &c.*

Note 1. With respect to the adjectives belonging to this rule, observe. 1. That *æmulus, certus, incertus, dubius, ambiguus, conscius, manifestus, suspectus, noxius, compertus, &c.* often govern the genitive; as was taught No. 14. 2. That though *adversus, æqualis, affinis, alienus, blandus, communis, conterminus, contrarius, credulus, dispar, dissimilis, fidus, finitimus, par, proprius, similis, superstes, &c.* take commonly the dative; yet sometimes they govern the genitive, as already observed in No. 14. Note 2, 3. That *benignus, prosper, lætus, gravis,* and some others, often take the genitive or ablative, as belonging to No. 21. Here also observe, that adjectives belonging to different rules, and which admit of different constructions in different senses, sometimes take both cases after them; as, Ter. *Mens sibi conscia recti.*

Note 2. Some adjectives signifying love, hatred, or other passions toward or against a person; such as, *amicus, animatus, beneficus, benevolus, benignus, pius, gratus, misericors, liberalis; acerbus, severus, sævus, crudelis, iniquus, injuriosus, infensus, &c.* take often the accusative, with the preposition *in, erga,* or *adversus.*

Note 3. Some adjectives signifying fitness, usefulness, or the contrary; such as, *accommodatus, oppositus, aptus, congruus, commodus, habilis, idoneus, opportunus, utilis; ineptus, inhabilis, inutilis, &c.* take frequently the accusative with *ad.*

Note 4. Adjectives signifying motion, tendency, or propension to a thing; such as, *celer, tardus, velox, piger, impiger, lentus; præceps, rapidus, segnis; declivis, inclinabilis, proclivis, pronus, propensus, paratus, promptus, profugus, &c.* take the accusative, with *ad* or *in,* rather than the dative.

Note 5. *Propior* and *proximus,* in imitation of their primitive *prope,* sometimes takes the accusative, the preposition *ad* being understood, but seldom or never expressed; as, Sal. *Vitium propius virtutem.* Cic. *Proximus Pompeium sedebam.*

Note 6. Substantives sometimes govern the dative; as Virg. *Erit ille mihi semper Deus.* Ter. *Natura tu illi pater es, consiliis ego.* Hor. *Mœstis præsidium reis.* Virg. *Tu decus omne tuis.* Cic. Non *hominibus sed virtutibus hostis.* Plaut. *Lupus est homo homini.* Lucr. *Urbi pater est.* Ter. *Nostræ est fautrix familiæ.*

Note 7. The dative, according to grammarians, is not, properly speaking, governed either by adjectives, verbs, or any other part of speech; but is fitly subjoined to any word, when acquisition, ademption, advantage, disadvantage, or destination, is signified.

17. Verbals in BILIS and DUS govern the dative.

Verbalia in BILIS et DUS regunt dativum.

Wonderful to you.	*Mirabilis tibi.*
To be intreated by me.	*Exorandus mihi.*

Note 1. The participle perfect, signifying passively, takes sometimes the dative, but oftener the ablative, with *a*, or *ab*. Cic. *Ego audita tibi putaram.* Id. *Mors Crassi est a multis defleta.* Ovid. *Proditus a socio est.*

Note 2. Verbals in DUS also, instead of the dative, take sometimes the ablative, with *a* or *ab*. Cic. *Admonendum a me.* Id. *Non eos venerandos a nobis.*

16. 1. Mallows are wholesome for the body, useful to the sick, and hurtful to no man; but some medicines are unprofitable to the physician himself, destructive to health, and pernicious to the patient.

Malva sum saluber corpus, utilis æger, et pestifer nemo; sed quidam medicamentum sum inutilis medicus ipse, perniciosus valetudo, et exitiosus ægrotus.

The victory, which Cæsar obtained in the plains of Pharsalia, was baneful to his country, destructive to the commonwealth, pernicious to the Roman name, fatal to the city, and dismal to human kind.

Victoria, qui Cæsar adipiscor in campus Pharsalia, sum calamitosus patria, damnosus respublica, exitiabilis Romanus nomen, funestus urbs, et dirus humanus genus.

Fortune is always kind to you my trade is profitable to me; the stars are beneficial to mariners: we shall loose from the harbour to morrow; may it be lucky, fortunate, and happy for us all.

Fortuna semper sum benignus tu; meus ars sum fructuosus ego; stella sum commodus nauta; solvo e portus cras; qui bonus faustus, felixque sum ego omnis.

2. My colleague is delightful to his friends, agreeable to his companions, acceptable to all, and unpleasant to no body; without him, and without the study of letters, life itself would be tasteless to me.

Meus collega sum jucundus amicus, acceptus comes, gratiosus omnis, et injucundus nemo; sine is, et sine studium literæ, vita ipse forem insuavis ego.

Dew on the tender grass is agreeable to cattle, and sleep is sweet to a traveller; a burden is irksome to a sluggish ass, and

Ros in tener gramen sum gratus pecus, et somnus sum dulcis viator; onus sum ingratus piger

labour troublesome to a lazy person; an unripe grape is sour to the taste; and wind is a sad thing for trees.

3. Be thou just to all, kind to all, intimate with few, fawning to none, true to your lord, faithful to your master, gentle to your petitioner, merciful to enemies, and unjust to nobody: thus you will be dear to all, and hated by none.

Nero at first was friendly to good men, and addicted to the study of the muses; but the latter part of his life was contrary to the former; for now he was harsh to, and angry with those who advised him, spiteful and enraged against mankind, an enemy to all, hated by the gods, and many things were cross to him.

4. The arguments concerning the former pyramids appear dark to some, doubtful to others, and clear to few; but the three remaining pyramids, being situate on a hill, are visible to sailors and known to all.

5. In Africa the places which are next to our sea, nigh to Carthage, or near to Mauritania, are very fertile; but the places bordering on Numidia, and near to the scorching heats are more barren.

6. Decency is adapted to the nature of things; thus, some colours are proper for mourning, and others quite improper for this purpose; the morning

asinus, et labor molestus ignavus; immaturus uva sum acerbus gustus, et ventus sum tristis arbor.

Sum tu equus omnis, beneuolus cunctus, familiaris pauci, blandus nullus, fidus dominus fidelis herus, lenis precans, mitis hostis, et iniquus, nemo: sic sum carus omnis, et odiosus nullus.

Nero primo sum amicus bonus, et deditus studium musa; sed posterior pars vita sum contrarius prior; nam jam sum asper et iratus monitor, infestus ac insensus humanus genus inimicus omnis, invisus deus, et multus sum adversus ille.

Argumentum de prior pyramis video obscurus quidam, dubius alius, et perspicuus pauci; at tres reliquus pyramis, situs in mons, sum conspicuus navigans, et notus omnis.

In Africa locus qui sum proximus noster mare, proquinquus Carthago, aut vicinus Mauritania, sum ferax, sed locus finitimus Numidia, et propior ardor, sum magis sterilis.

Decor sum accommodatus natura res: sic, quidam color sum conveniens luctus, et alius prorsus ineptus, hic res: aurora sum

is friendly to the muses, and fit for study ; a town situate on the shore is convenient for trade, but without walls it will be exposed to enemies.

7. Nothing is difficult or hard to a brave man ; to him no place is dangerous, no battle terrible, no sea unpassable : all hardships are easy and light to such a man ; yet his mind is always disposed to peace, but ready and prepared for war.

8. The poet married a wife equal in age, and every way a match for him ; she was like her mother, her lips rivalled the roses and as a matron is diverse and different from a strumpet, so she was unlike her sister : but there is a fault different from this fault ; her spirit was unsuitable and unequal to her fortune ; sometimes she was inconsistent with herself ; now she is dead ; death is common to every age.

9 and 10. Heaven is allied to earth, nature is always consistent with itself, and men's fortune is agreeable to their manners ; thus, the savage people bordering on Ethiopia, are subject to sad slavery, exposed to many hardships ; and yet, if you consider their strength, they are inferior to none of the neighbouring nations.

Note 2. A good man is affectionate towards his parents, beneficient to his relations, benevolent to his friends, grateful

amicus musa, et aptus studium ; urbs oppositus littus sum idoneus commercium, sed sine murus sum opportunus hostis.

Nihil sum difficilis aut arduus fortis vir ; is nullus locus sum periculosus, nullus prælium gravis, nullus mare invius ; omnis labor sum facilis et levis talis vir ; tamen animus sum semper pronus pax, sed promptus et paratus bellum.

Poeta duco uxor æquævus, et omnimodo par sui ; sum similis mater, labrum sum æmulus rosa ; et, ut matrona sum dispar atque discolor meretrix, ita sum dissimilis soror ; sed sum vitium diversus hic vitium ; animus sum alienus et impar fortuna ; nonnunquam sum discors sui ; nunc mortuus sum ; mors sum communis omnis ætas.

Cælum sum cognatus tellus, natura semper sum concors sui, et homo fortuna sum consentaneus mos ; sic ferus natio confinis Æthiopia sum subjectus tristis servitium, obnoxius multus injuria ; et tamen, si specto vires sum secundus nullus finitimus gens.

Bonus vir sum pius in parens, beneficus in propinquus, benevolus erga, amicus, gratus adversus

to his well-wishers, well affected towards good-men, kind to all, injurious to none, harsh to no body, and not cruel or severe to an enemy.

Note 3. This fellow is good for nothing, but his brother is good for many things; his shoes are tight and meet for his feet, his clothes are light and convenient for running, and the ground is proper for that purpose.

Note 4. The general is slow to punishment, swift to rewards, bent on war; his son too is alert for battle, and not backward to danger; but his mind is prone to cruelty, inclined to vice, and disposed to any wickedness.

17. Death, whose path must once be trod by all, is terrible to the wicked, with whose life, all good things are extinguished; but desirable to good men, whose praise cannot die, and whose minds are conscious to themselves of integrity. Let us therefore imitate the life of good men, who are born for glory, though they be often despised by the wicked.

¶ Liberty is equally desirable to the good and to the bad, to the brave and to the dastardly; wherefore Appuleius did not cease to maintain the laws of the Gracchi, so much spirit did Marius inspire, who had

fautor, bene animatus in bonus, benignus erga omnis, injuriosus in nullus, acerbus in nemo, neque crudelis aut sævus in hostis.

Hic homo sum utilis ad nullus res, sed frater sum idoneus ad multus res; calceus sum habilis et aptus ad pes, vestis sum levis et commodus ad cursus, et lacus sum opportunus ad is res.

Dux sum piger ad pœna, velox ad præmium, promptus ad bellum; filius quoque sum celer in pugna, et haud ignavus ad periculum; sed animus sum præceps in crudelitas, propensus ad vitium, et paratus ad omnis nefas.

Mors, qui via sum semel calcandus omnis, sum terribilis malus, cum qui vita omnis bonus extinguo; sed optabilis bonus, qui laus non possum emorior, et qui mens sum conscius sui rectum. Imitor igitur vita bonus, qui sum natus gloria, licet sæpe sum despectus malus.

Libertas sum æque optabilis bonus et malus, strenuus et ignavus: itaque Appuleius non desisto assero Gracchianus lex, tantum animus Marius do, qui semper sum in-

been always an enemy to the nobility. But Tiberius refused the title of father of his country, lest afterwards he should be found unequal to so great an honour.

Subrius the tribune being asked by Nero, why he had not discovered the conspiracy; replied, because I hated you? nor was any of the soldiers, quoth he, more faithful to you, than I, whilst you deserved to be loved; I began to hate you, after you became a murderer of your mother, and of your wife, a charioteer, a comedian, and an incendiary.

The Romans were now so powerful, that they were a match for any of the foreign nations; wherefore the consul provides forces, arms, and other things necessary for the war, very industriously; nor was the event of the war any other, than the preparation had been; wherefore Antiochus was routed and forced to fly into Asia.

Nor was fortune more favourable to the flying Gauls; but continual showers, frost and snow, fatigue and famine, consumed the miserable remains of this unhappy war. The people and nations too, through which they marched, followed the scattered Gauls, and slaughtered vast numbers of them.

After the death of the king, the Alexandrians sent ambassadors to the Romans, intreating,

micus nobilitas. At Tiberius recuso appellatio pater patria, ne postea invenio impar tantus honor.

Subrius tribunus interrogatus à Nero, cur non patefacio conjuratio? respondeo, Quia odi tu; nec quisquam miles, inquam, sum fidelis tu quam ego, dum mereo amo; cæpi odi, postquam existo parricida mater et uxor, auriga, histrio, et incendiarus.

Romanus jam sum adeo validus, ut sum par quilibet externus gens; Itaque consul paro copiæ, arma, et alius necessarius bellum diligenter; nec eventus bellum sum; alius quam apparatus sum; quare Antiochus fugo, et cogo fugio in Asia.

Nec fortuna sum benignus fugiens Gallus; sed assiduus imber, gelu et nix, lassitudo et fames, obtero miser reliquiæ hic infelix bellum. Gens quoque et natio per qui habeo iter, sector palans Gallus, et occido magnus is numerus.

Post mors rex Alexandrinus mitto legatus ad Romanus, orans, ut sus-

that they would undertake the guardianship of the child, and defend the kingdom of Egypt, which they said Philip and Antiochus had divided betwixt them. This embassy was very acceptable to the Romans.

cipio tutela pupillus, et tutor regnum Ægyptus, qui dico Philippus et Antiochus divido inter sui. Hic legatio sum gratus Romanus.

Ptolemy was as ridiculous to the Romans as he was cruel to his own subjects. His countenance was deformed, his statue short, his belly hanging out, that he was more like a beast than a man. He sent for his son from Cyrene, and slew him, lest the Alexandrines should make him king.

Ptolemæus sum tam ridiculus Romanus, quam sum cruentus civis suus. Vultus sum deformis, statura brevis, venter prominulus ut sum similis bellua quam homo. Arcesso filius a Cyrenæ, et interficio ille, ne Alexandrinus creo rex.

After Alexander had dismissed his soldiers, being now near his death, he asked his friends standing about him, whether they thought that they could find a king like him? They all held their tongues. Then he said he knew not that, but that he foresaw how much blood Macedonia would shed in that contest.

Postquam Alexander dimitto miles, jam proximus mors, percontor amicus circumstans, num existimo sui possum invenio rex similis sui? Cunctus taceo. Tum dico sui nescio is, sed, sui prospicio quantum sanguis Macedonia fundo in is certamen.

Nor did the friends of Alexander without reason expect his kingdom, for they were men of such valour and dignity, that you would have thought every one of them kings. Never would they have found any equal to themselves, if they had not clashed among themselves; and Macedonia, would have had many Alexanders, instead of one had not fortune armed them for their mutual destruction.

Nec amicus Alexander frustra regnum specto, nam sum vir is 6 virtus ac 6 veneratio, ut singuli is rex puto. Nunquam sui par reperio, si non inter sui concurro; multusque Macedonia, pro unus, Alexander habeo, nisi fortuna is in mutuus pernicies armo.

Atticus is said to have been complaisant to strangers, agreeable to his friends, just to all, and troublesome to none. He so demeaned himself, that he seemed on a level with the lowest, yet equal to the greatest, and was deservedly very dear to the Athenians. Praise is grateful to human nature.

The heart of the envious man is gall and bitterness, his tongue spitteth venom, the success of his neighbour breaketh his rest, he sitteth in his cell repining; hatred and malice prey upon his heart, and there is no rest in him. He feeleth in his own breast no love of goodness, and therefore believeth his neighbour is like unto himself.

The hand of the generous man is like the clouds of heaven, which drop upon the earth, fruits, herbage, and flowers; but the heart of the ungrateful is like a desert of sand, which swalloweth the showers that fall, burieth them in its bosom, and produceth nothing.

A wise man considers that nothing is to be desired by him but what is laudable and excellent. Let us imitate the wise, and always live so as to think that an account must be given by us.

RULE IV.

*18. ADJECTIVES signifying dimention govern the accusative of measure.

REG. IV.

ADJECTIVA dimensionem significantia regunt accusativum mensuræ.

The stones of Solomon's temple were forty cubits long, twelve cubits broad, and eight cubits high.

Lapides Solomonis templi erant quadraginta cubitos longi, duodecim cubitos lati, et octo cubitos alti.

The adjectives of DIMENSION are, *altus*, *crassus*, *densus*, *latus*, *longus*, *profundus*.

The names of MEASURE are, *digitus*, *palmus*, *pes*, *cubitus*, *ulna*, *passus*, *stadium*, *milliare*.

Note 1. Verbs of DIMENSION; such as, *pateo*, *cresco*, &c. govern also an accusative of MEASURE.

Note 2. The word of MEASURE is sometimes put in the ablative; as, Liv. *Fossa sex cubitis alta*. Per. *Venter ejus extat sesquipede;* and sometimes, but rarely, in the genitive; as, Plin. *Nec longiores duodenum pedum.*

Note 3. The *measure of excess*, or the word denoting how much

one thing exceeds or comes short of another, is always put in the ablative.

Note 4. To the *measure of excess*, may be referred these ablatives, *tanto, quanto, quo, eo, hoc, aliquanto, multo, parvo, nihilo, &c.* which are frequently joined in this sense with the comparative degree, or sometimes with the superlatives, or with a verb importing comparison.

Note 5. These adjectives do not govern the accusative of themselves, the preposition *ad* or *in* being understood, or sometimes expressed; as, Plin. *Longa folia habet fere ad tres digitos.* Colum. *Sulcum in quatuor pedes longum, in tres altum.* When they take the ablative, *a, ab, tenus*, or *in*, may be supplied; and when they take the genitive, *ad mensuram*, vel *spatium*, may be understood.

The walls of Babylon were two hundred feet high, and fifty broad.

Murus Babylon sum duceni pes altus, et quinquageni latus.

This wall is five feet six inches high, and three hundred cubits long; and these trees are twenty feet long, and two feet round.

Hic maceria sum quinque pes sex digitus altus, et trecenti cubitus longus; et hic arbor sum viginti pes longus, et duo pes crassus.

In this climate, about the day of the equinox, a gnomon seven feet high, casts a shadow not above four feet long.

In hic tractus, circa dies æquinoctium, gnomon septem pes altus, reddo umbra non amplius quatuor pes longus.

Note 1. Tell in what country the expanse of heaven does not extend above three ells, and thou shalt be the great Apollo.

Dico qui in terra spatium cælum non pateo amplius tres ulna, et sum magnus Apollo.

Othos and Ephialtes are said to have been of a wonderful bigness, every month they grew nine inches, at length they endeavoured to climb up into heaven.

Othos et Ephialtes dico sum mirus magnitudo, persinguli mensis cresco novem digitus, tandem conor ascendo in cælum.

Note 3. The wall is six feet higher than the rock, and the turrets are ten feet higher than the wall.

Murus sum sex pes altior quam rupes, et turris sum demipes altior quam murus.

I am two feet taller than you, and you are a foot and a half taller than my brother.

Ego sum duo pes longior quam tu, et tu sum sesquipes longior quam meus frater.

The sun is many times bigger than the earth, and the earth is many times bigger than the moon.

Sol sum multus pars major quam terra, et terra sam multus pars major quam luna.

Note 4. By how much the greater the battle was, by so much more famous was the victory of Conon; the Lacedemonians being conquered, take to flight.

Quantum major prælium sum, tantum clarior sum victoria Conon; Lacedæmonius victus fuga capesso.

The disease of the covetous man is scarcely curable; for the more he has, the more he desires.

Morbus avarus vix sum medicabilis; nam quod plus habeo, id plus cupio.

It is much more laborious to conquer one's self than an enemy; but the more difficult any thing is, the more honourable it is

Sum multum operosior supero sui ipse quam hostis; sed quod quid suum difficilior, hoc præclarior sum.

This condition was so much the more grievous to them, by how much it was the later; for formerly they had quelled, in the Delphic war, the fury of the Gauls, terrible both to Asia and Italy.

Hic conditio sum tantum amarior is, quantum sum serior; nam antea frango, in Delphicus bellum, violentia Gallus, terribilis et Asia et Italia.

¶ The exploits of the Athenians were great and glorious enough, but yet somewhat less than they are represented; but because their writers were men of great parts and eloquence, the actions of the Athenians are celebrated through the whole world for the greatest.

Res gestus Atheniensis sum satis amplus et magnificus, verum tamen aliquantum minor quam fero; sed quia auctor sum homo magnus 6 *ingenium et* 6 *facundia, factum Atheniensis celebro per totus orbis pro maximus.*

This garden is an hundred cubits long and sixty broad. Here are three beds, every one of which is three feet broad and five feet long; but the middle bed which is one foot high, is the most pleasant: upon it I

Hic hortus sum centum cubitus longus et sexaginta latus. Hic sum tres area qui singuli sum tres pes latus et quinque pes longus: sed medius area, qui sum unus pes altus, sum amœ-

often sit and read the old poets with great pleasure.

nus : super is sæpe sedeo et lego vetus poeta magnus cum voluptas.

The ark in which Noah, his wife, his three sons, with their wives, and a few animals of every species, were saved, is recorded by Moses, the sacred historian, to have been 300 cubits long, 50 broad, and 30 cubits high.

The grotto, in the island of Antiparos, is a cavern 120 yards wide, 113 long, and about 60 yards high, and the descent to it is 480 yards deep.

There are about 400 famous pyramids in Egypt, three of which are great ones, the rest are smaller. The largest of the three great pyramids is 512 feet high, and 1028 feet broad at bottom. The second pyramid is 342 feet high, and its broadest side at the bottom 622 feet long.

A great fortune in the hands of a fool is a great misfortune. The more riches a fool has, the greater fool he is.

RULE V.

19. THE comparative degree governs the ablative, which is resolved by *quam*.

REG. V.

COMPARATIVUS regit ablativum, qui resolvitur per quam.

Nothing is sweeter than liberty.

Nihil est dulcius libertate.

Resolved thus: *Nihil est dulcius quam libe rtas.*

Note 1. The positive with the adverb *magis* sometimes governs the ablative: as, Virg. *O luce magis dilecta sorori.* Ovid. *Puraque magis pelucida gemma.*

Note 2. The comparative takes often the following or like ablatives; *opinione, spe, æquo, justo, solito, dicto, &c.* as, *opinione major, spe amplior, flagrantior æquo, tristior solito, &c.*

Note 3. *Nihil* with the comparative, is elegantly put for *nemo* or *nullus;* as, *Nihil Virgilio doctius;* None more learned than Virgil.

Note 4. *Quam* after *plus, amplius, minus,* is elegantly suppressed; as, Ter. *Quis quingentos colaphos infregit mihi.* Virg. *Noctem non amplius, unam.* Nep. *Minus diebus triginta in Asiam reversus.*

Note 5. To the comparative the words *quam pro,* are sometimes elegantly subjoined; as, Curt. *Majorum quam pro statu sonum reddebant sylvæ.*

Note 6. Comparatives, besides the ablative of comparison, take

naturally after them, a case which their positives govern; as, Virg. *Thymo mihi dulcior Hyblæ.* Senec. *Nihi est dignius magno viro placabilitate.*

Note 7. The comparative does not govern the ablative of itself, the preposition *præ* being understood, or sometimes expressed; as, Apul. *Unus præ cæteris fortior exsurgit.*

RULE VI.

*20. THESE adjectives, *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, *præditus*, *captus*, and *fretus*; also, *natus*, *satus*, *ortus*, *editus*, and the like, require the ablative.

Worthy of praise.
Content with little.
Endued with virtue.
Charmed with learning.
Trusting to his strength.
Born of a goddess.
Descended of kings.

REG. VI.

DIGNUS, indignus, contentus, præditus, captus, *et* fretus; *item* natus, satus, ortus, editus, et *similia*, *ablativum petunt.*

Dignus laude.
Contentus parvo.
Præditus virtute.
Captus doctrina.
Fretus viribus.
Natus dea.
Ortus regibus.

Note 1. Like adjectives are such as, *generatus, creatus, prognatus, procreatus, cretus, oriundus.*

Note 2. *Dignus, indignus, contentus,* take sometimes the genitive; as, Sil. *Proles digna Deum.* Virg. *Indignus avorum.* Liv. *Nec jam libertatis contentos.* See *captus* and *oriundus* also governing the genitive, in No. 14, Note 2.

Note 3. The ablative is not governed by the adjectives mentioned in this rule, but by some preposition understood: such as, *a, ab, cum, in, e, ex, de.* And the genitives in Note 2, are governed by some ablative understood.

19. The first epistle of Horace is sweeter than any honey.

Primus epistola Horatius sum dulcior quivis mel.

Nothing is sweeter to the mind than the light of truth.

Nihil sum dulcior mens lux veritas.

In civil broils, where there is need of action rather than de-

In discordia civilis, ubi opus sum factum magis

liberation, nothing is safer than dispatch.

The country of Campania is the finest of all: nothing is softer than the air, nothing more fruitful than the soil, nothing more hospitable than the sea.

Amongst the Scythians no crime is more heinous than theft; they just as much despise gold and silver as other mortals covet them.

A stroke follows heavier than all that had happened before through the violence of fire. Rome is divided into fourteen quarters, whereof three were levelled to the ground.

20. The thing was worthy of a laurel, worthy of a chariot; but Cæsar was now so great, that he might despise triumphs,

quam consultum, nihil sum tutior festinatio.

Plaga Campania sum pulcher omnis: nihil sum mollior cœlum, nihil uberior solum, nihil hospitalior mare.

Apud Scytha nullus scelus sum gravior furtum; perinde aspernor aurum et argentum ac reliquus mortalis appeto.

Clades sequor gravior omnis qui ante accido, per violentia ignis. Roma divido in quatuordecim regio, qui tres solum tenus dejicio.

Res sum dignus laurus, dignus currus; sed Cæsar jam tantus sum, ut possum contemno triumphus.

Nothing is more worthy of a great and brave man, than clemency, and readiness to be pacified.

Nihil sum dignior magnus et præclarus vir, clementia et placabilitas.

To be always repining and complaining, is unworthy of a man; but he who is endued with virtue, and satisfied with his lot, is truly rich and truly great.

Semper murmuro et queror sum indignus homo; sed qui præditus sum virtus, et contentus suus sors, sum vere dives et vere magnus.

Sylla, trusting to the strength of his party, returned from Asia; whilst he staid at Athens he kept Pomponius with him, being charmed with the politeness and learning of the youth.

Sylla, fretus opis pars, redeo ex Asia; dum apud Athenæ morror, habeo Pomponius suicum, captus et humanitas et doctrina adolescens.

Ascanius, sprung from the ancient Trojan race, was born of a noble family; for his father Æneas was descended of

Ascanius, editus antiquus Trojanus stirps, natus sum nobilis gentes; nam pater Æneas satus

Anchises and Venus, and Anchises was descended of king Assaracus.

If I be descended from a heavenly race, says Phæton, give me a token of such a great descent. Your father's palace, replied his mother, is contiguous to our earth; go, and inquire of himself of what blood thou art sprung.

¶ After him Aurelian undertook the government, born in Dacia, a man powerful in war, yet of a violent temper, and somewhat too inclinable to cruelty, who likewise most valiantly beat the Goths.

Cæsar descended of the most noble and most ancient family of the Julii, not content with very many and very fortunate victories in Gaul, carried over his army into Britain.

The Gauls boast that they are all descended of Pluto, and for that reason compute their reckonings of time, not from the number of days, but nights, and they so regulate their birthdays, and the beginnings of their months and years, that the day comes after the night.

There were with Cæsar two brothers, Roscillus and Agus, men of singular courage: these on account of their bravery, were not only in high esteem with Cæsar, but were even accounted dear by the army; but

sum Anchises et Venus, et Anchises ortus sum rex Assaracus.

Si sum creatus cælestis stirps, inquam Phaeton, edo nota tantus genus. Paternus domus, respondeo mater, sum conterminus noster terra; gradior et scitor ab ipse, quis sanguis sum cretus.

Postis Aurelianus suscipio imperium, Dacia oriundus, vir potens in bellum, tamen immodicus animus et aliquantum propensior ad crudelitas, quique strenuissime Gothi vinco.

Cæsar, genitus nobilis et antiquus Julii familia, haud contentus multus ac felix victoria in Gallia, trajicio exercitus in Britannia.

Gallia prædico sui omnis prognatus Dis, et ob is causa finio spatium tempus, non ex numerus dies, sed nox; et sic observo dies natalis, et initium mensis et annus, ut dies subsequor nox.

Sum apud Cæsar duo frater, Roscillus et Agus, homo singularis & virtus; hic, propter virtus, sum non solum in honor apud Cæsar, sed etiam habeo carus apud exercitus; sed

depending on Cæsar's friendship, they despised their comrades.

Cyrus after this victory, carried the war into Lydia, where he routs Crœsus's army: Crœsus himself is taken. By how much slighter this war was than the former, by so much the milder was the victory. Crœsus obtains the city of Barce; in which, though he did not lead a king's life, yet he led a life next to royal majesty. This clemency was no less useful to the conqueror than the conquered.

Sandrocottus, a man born of a mean family, was the asserter of their liberty; but after his success, he turned the title of liberty into slavery. This man being ordered to be slain by Alexander, whom he had offended, made his escape: after which fatigue, as he lay fast asleep, a lion of a huge bigness came up to him as he slept, and wiped off the sweat.

Duilius the admiral, not satisfied with the triumph of one day, ordered during his whole life, when he returned from supper, torches to be lighted up, and flutes to play before him, as if he would triumph every day. Thus, all mortals know the actions of those, who endued with great power, pass their life in an exalted station.

The Macedonian war was by so much the more famous than

fretus Cæsar amicitia, despicio suus.

Cyrus post hic victoria transfero bellum in Lydia, ubi fundo Crœsus exercitus; Crœsus ipse cæpio. Quantum levior hic bellum sum prior, tantum mitior sum victoria. Crœsus impetro urbs Barce; in qui, et si non dego regius vita, tamen dego vita, proximus regius majestas. Hic clemantia non sum minus utilis victor quam victus.

Sandrocottus, vĭr natus humilis genus, sum auctor libertas; sed post victoria, verto titulus libertas in servitus. Hic vir jussus interficio ab Alexander, qui offendo, aufugio; ex qui fatigatio, cum jaceo captus somnus, leo ingens forma accedo ad dormiens; et detergo sudor.

Duilius imperator, non contentus unus dies triumphus, jubeo, per omnis vita, ubi redeo a cœna, funale prælucco, et tibia præcino, quasi quotidie triumpho. Ita, cunctus mortalis nosco factum is, qui, præditus magnus imperium, ago ætas in excelsus.

Bellum Macedonicus sum tantum clarior Punicus

the Carthaginian, by how much the Macedonians excelled the Carthaginians; wherefore the Romans raised more legions than usual, and sent for aid from Masinissa, king of the Numidians, and all their other allies.

quantum Macedo antecedo Pœni, quare Romanus conscribo legio plus solitus, et accio auxilium a Masinissa rex Numidæ cæterque omnis socius.

It was indeed a sort of prodigy, that, out of fifty children, not one was found, whom either paternal majesty, or the veneration of an old man, or the indulgence of a father, could reclaim from so great a barbarity. Was a father's name, so contemptible among so many sons; But the cause of the parricide was more wicked than the parricide itself.

Sum prorsus ostentum genus, ut, ex quinquaginta liberi, nemo invenio qui aut paternus majestas, aut veneratio senex, aut indulgentia pater, a tantus immanitas revoco. Sumne paternus nomen adeo vilis apud tot filius? Sed causa parricidium sum scceleratior ipse parricidium.

The piety of a child is sweeter than incense, more delicious than odours, wafted by the gales, from a field of spices.

Wisdom is more precious than rubies; length of days is in her right hand, and in her left hand riches and honour. Her ways are ways of pleasantness, and all her paths are peace.

When Chiron, whose actions are worthy of honour, was handling the arrows of Hercules, one of them, that had been dipped in the poisonous blood of the Lernæan Hydra, fell upon his foot, and made a wound that was incurable, and pains that were intolerable, insomuch that he desired to die, but could not, because he was descended of two immortal parents.

RULE VII.

REG. VII.

21. AN adjective of plenty, want, and privation, governs the genitive or ablative.

ADJECTIVUM copiæ, inopiæ, et privationis, regit genitivum vel ablativum.

Rich in horses.	*Dives equorum.*
Rich in lands.	*Dives agris.*
Void of reason.	*Inops rationis.*
Wanting words.	*Inops verbis.*
Free from faults.	*Immunis delictorum.*
Free from vices.	*Immunis vitiis.*

To this rule belong,

I. Adjectives of PLENTY; such as, "abundans, beatus, copiosus, dives, ferax, fertilis, fœcundus, fœtus, frequens, frugifer, gravis, gravidus, immodicus, largus, prælargus, locuples, mactus, nimius, oneratus, onustus, opulentus, plénus, refertus, differtus, satur, tentus, distentus, tumidus, turgidus, uber;" to which add, "benignus, firmus, instructus, lætus, liberalis, munificus, paratus, prodigus, prosper, satiatus, insatiatus, insatiabilis."

II. Adjectives of WANT; such as, "egenus, indigus, inops, jejunus, inanis, modicus, pauper, sterilis, tenuis, vacuus."

III. Adjectives of PRIVATION; such as, "cassus, expers, exsors, dissors, exsul, extorris, exhæres, immunis, irritus, mutilus, nudus, orbus, truncus, viduus." Of PARTICIPATION; as, "consors, particeps." Of POWER and IMPOTENCE; as, "compos, pollens, potens; impos, impotens." To which add, "liber, solutus, imparatus, infirmus, parcus, purus."

Of these, some govern.

1. The genitive only; as, "benignus, exsors, impos, impotens, irritus, liberalis, munificus, prælargus."

2. The ablative only; as, "beatus, differtus, frugifer, mutilis, tentus, distentus, tumidus, turgidus, paratus, imparatus, instructus."

3. The genitive more frequently; as, compos, consors, particeps, egenus, discors, exsul, exhæres, expers, fertilis, indigus, parcus, pauper, prodigus, sterilis, prosper, insatiatus, insatiabilis."

4. The ablative more frequently; as, "abundans, cassus, extorris, fœtus, frequens, gravis, gravidus, jejunus, liber,

locuples, nudus, oneratus, onustus, orbus, pollens, solutus truncus, viduus, lætus, firmus, infirmus, satiatus, tenuis."

5. The genitive or ablative indifferently; as, "copiosus, dives, fœcundus, ferax, immunis, inanis. inops, largus, mactus, modicus, immodicus, nimius, opulentus, plenus, potens, refertus, satur, purus, vacuus, uber."

Note 1. Neither the genitive nor the ablative, strictly speaking, depend upon the adjectives; for the genitive is governed by the ablative *re* or *negotio*, understood; and these, and all other ablatives, by *in*, *a*, *ab*, *de*, or *ex*.

Note 2. Of the above adjectives, *copiosus, firmus, paratus, imparatus, inops, instructus, exlorris, orbis, pauper, tenuis, fœcundus, modicus, parcus, immunis, inanis, liber, nudus, solutus, vacuus, potens, sterilis*, have frequently the preposition expressed; as, Cic. *Locus copiosus a frumento.* Id. *Ab equitatu firmus.* Id. *Ab omni re paratus.* Id. *Imparatus a pecunia.* Id. *Inops ab amicis.* Id. *Instructus a doctrina.* Hor. *Meo sum pauper in ære.* Id. *Tenuis in verbis serendis.* Plin. *Parcus in victu, modicus in cultu.* Vell. *Liber a conspectu, immunis ab arbitris.* Cic. *Messana ab his rebus vacua atque nuda est.* Id. *Solutus a cupiditatibus liber a delictis.* Quinct. *In affectibus potentissimus.* Ovid. *Herba potens ad opem.* Liv. *In res bellicas potens.* Apul. *Civitas ab aquis sterilis.*

Note 3. *Benignus, prosper, lætus, gravis,* and some others in a different sense, govern the dative, by No. 16.

Note 4. Some grammarians refer the adjectives gover nng the genitive only, to No. 14. And it would not have been repugnant to method and good order to have framed No. 20, so as to comprehend those which govern the ablative only.

I. This island is rich in cattle, well stored with goats, overflowing with milk, fertile in grain, fruitful in corn, and abounding in herbs. Its mountains are stored with brass and lead, and covered with woods.

This man is blessed with wealth, and rich in money; his house is full of plate, replenished with precious things, and stuffed with jewels; his pockets are always loaded with silver, and stuffed with gold.

Hic insula sum dives pecus, copiosus capra, abundans lac, fertilis fruges, fœcundus annona, et ferax herba. Mons is sum uber æs et plumbum, et frequens sylva.

Hic homo sum beatus 6 *divitiæ et opulentus pecunia; domus is sum plenus vas, satur pretiosus res, et refertus* 6 *gemma; crumena sum semper onustus* 6 *argentum, et turgidus* 6 *aurum.*

This soldier formerly was frank of his money, abounding in wealth, profuse of his gold, lavish of praise, proud of victory, extravagant in his mirth, and too high spirited; now he is loaded with years, cloyed with age, his wife is big with a boy.

These fields are rich in grain, fertile in corn, fruitful in victual, gay with grain and flowers; the cows and sheep are fat, their udders are strutted with milk.

II. Your brother is moderate in his desire, but yet he is in want of every thing, in need of help, poor in silver and gold, weak in strength, destitute of friends, but free from guilt.

No letter comes from you empty, or void of something useful, which I the rather admire and commend, because this age is barren in virtues, and fruitful in vices.

III. This gentleman is free of all vice, void of a fault, and clear of wickedness; yet he is in want of help, being banished his country, forced from his city and home, disappointed of his hope, deprived of his paternal estate, and destitute of all his possessions.

This young lady, deprived of her parents, and wanting a portion, was the sharer of my dangers, and shall be the partner of

Hic miles olim, sum liberalis pecunia, largus opis, prodigus aurum, munificus laus, tumidus 6 *successus, immodicus lætitia, et nimius animus; nunc sum gravis* 6 *annus, satiatus ævum, uxor sum gravidus* 6 *puer.*

Hic ager sum locuples 6 *fruges, fœtus* 6 *frumentum, frugifer* 6 *alimentum, lætus fruges et flos; vacca et ovis sum pinguis, uber sum distentus* 6 *lac.*

Tuus frater sum modicus votum, attamen sum egenus omnis res, indigus opis, pauper argentum et aurum, tenuis 6 *vires, inops amicus, sed vacuus* 6 *crimen.*

Nullus epistola venio a tu jejunus, aut inanis aliquis 6 *res utilis, qui ego magis miror et laudo, quia hic seculum sum sterilis virtus, et fœcundus vitium.*

Hic vir sum immunis omnis 6 *vitium, exsors culpa, et purus scelus; tamen sum indigus opis, exsul patria, extorris* 6 *urbs domusque, irritus spes, exhæres paternus bonum, et expers omnis* 6 *fortuna.*

Hic virgo, orbus 6 *parens, et cassus* 6 *dos, sum particeps meus periculum, et sum consors reg-*

my kingdom, her life has not been free of troubles, nor is her breast void of love.

The governor of the city, which is destitute of a garrison, is a man endued with virtue, abounding in wealth, but sparing of his money, mighty in war, but unable to restrain his passion; his mind, however, is generally calm, free from fear, and disengaged from all cares.

Some animals are destitute of feet; but in Germany there are wild beasts that are called alces, whose shape is like that of goats, which have legs without joints, and they are void of horns.

¶ The victorious Regulus, an honest man, and of ancient morals, lovely to all, though ignorant of the liberal arts, after he had widely spread the terror of his name, and slain a great number of the Carthaginian youth, sent a fleet to Rome loaded with abundance of spoil, and heavy with a triumph.

Alexander, though full of dust and sweat, yet taken with the pleasantness of the river Cydnus, threw himself into the cold water; then on a sudden, a numbness seized his nerves: yet afterwards he recovered his health, and took Persepolis, the metropolis of the Persian empire, a famous city, filled with the spoils of the world.

Man, who is partaker of reason and speech, is more excel-

num, vita non sum vacuus 6 *molestia, nec pectus sum viduus* 6 *amor.*

Præfectus urbs, qui sum nudus 4 *præsidium, sum vir compos virtus, pollens* 6 *opis, sed parcus pecunia, potens* 6 *bellum, sed impotens ira; animus tamen sum fere tranquillus, liber* 6 *terror, et solutus omnis cura.*

Quidam animal sum truncus pes; sed in Germania sum bellua qui appello alx, qui figura sum consimilis capra, qui habeo crus sine nodus, sumque mutilus 6 *cornu.*

Victor Regulus, probus vir et vetus mos, amabilis cunctus, quamvis expers liberalis ars, quum late circumfero terror suus nomen, et cædo magnus vis juventus Punicus, ad Roma mitto classis onustus ingens 6 *præda, et gravis* 6 *triumphus.*

Alexander, etsi plenus pulvis ac sudor, tamen captus amœnitas flumen Cydnus, projicio sui in præfrigidus aqua; tum repente rigor occupo nervus tamen postea recipio sanitas, et expugno Persepolis caput Persicus regnum, urbs illustris refertus 6 *spolium terra orbis.*

Homo, qui sum particeps ratio et oratio, sum

lent than beasts, who are void of reason and speech; but the mind of man has got reason in vain, unless he is mindful of his duty, and do the things that are agreeable to reason and nature.

The Egyptians boast that Egypt was always so temperate, that neither the winter's cold, nor the heats of the summer sun did incommode its inhabitants; that the soil is so fertile, that no country is more fruitful in food for the use of man.

Alcibiades, the Athenian, born of a great family, in a very great city, was much the handsomest of the men of his time, fit for all things, and abounding in sense: it is agreed amongst all, that nobody was more eminent than he, either in vices or in virtues.

Historians say, that Cyrus, king of Persia, who conquered the greatest part of Asia, waged war at last against the Scythians, whose queen was named Tomyris; that his army was routed, he himself slain; that his head was cut off, and thrown into a vessel, full of blood.

All men hate those who are unmindful of a kindness, and all men love a mind grateful, and mindful of a good turn. Mutual benevolence is the great bond of human society; and without it life itself is grievous, full of fear and anxiety, and void of all comfort and

prestans fera, qui sum expers ratio et oratio; sed animus homo sortior ratio frustra, nisi sum memor officium suus, et ago is qui sum consentaneus ratio et natura.

Ægyptii prædico Ægyptus sum semper ita temperatus, ut neque hibernus frigor nec ardor æstivus sol premo is incola; solum ita fœcundus, ut nullus terra sum ferax alimentum in usus homo.

Alcibiades, Atheniensis natus summus genus, in amplus civitas, sum multum formosus omnis suus ætas, aptus ad res omnis, plenusque consilium: constat inter omnis, nihil sum excellens ille, vel in vitium vel in virtus.

Auctor narro, Cyrus rex Persia, qui domo magnus pars Asia, gero bellum tandem contra Scytha, qui regina appello Tomyris; exercitus is deleo, ipse occido; caput is abscindo, et conjicio in vas plenus sanguis.

Omnis odi is qui sum immemor beneficium, et omnis amo animus gratus, et memor beneficium. Mutuus benevolentia sum magnus vinculum humanus societas; et sine is vita ipse sum gravis, plenus timor et anxietas, et va-

pleasure. Let us therefore avoid the crime of ingratitude above all others.

cuus omnis 6 solatium et voluptas. Fugio igitur crimen in gratus animus præ reliquus.

If we lift up our eyes to the Heavens, the glory of God shineth forth; if we cast them down upon the earth: it is full of his goodness: The hills and the vallies rejoice and sing; fields, rivers, and woods resound his praise.

Human life is never free from troubles; all places are full of fraud, treachery and snares.

The Roman soldiery made Veteranio emperor, who was a good man, and of ancient morals, but void of all the liberal arts.

No man can be said to be great or powerful, who is not master of himself.

II. *The government of Verbs.* II. Regimen Verborum.

§ 1. Of personal Verbs. § 1. *Personalium.*

RULE I. REG. I.

*22. SUM, when it signifies possession, property, part or duty, governs the genitive.

SUM, *quoties possessionem, proprietatem, munus aut officium, significat, regit genitivum.*

This field is my father's, but the orchard belongs to my uncle. *Hic ager est patris, at pomarium est avunculi.*

It is the property of a fool to persist in an error. *Insipientis est perseverare in errore.*

It is the part of a poor man to number his flock. *Pauperis est numerare pecus.*

It is the duty of soldiers to fight for their country. *Militum est pro patria pugnare.*

Note 1. Both in this and in the following rule, *officium, munus, opus, negotium, res, proprium,* or some other word to be gathered from the sense, is understood, and is sometimes expressed; as, Cic. *Principum munus est resistere levitati multitudinis.* Sometimes

the preceding substantive is to be repeated; as, *Hic liber est* [liber] *fratris Hoc Pecus est* [pecus] *Melibœi.*

Note 2. To this rule may be referred the following and like expressions. Virg. *Grates persolvere dignas non opis est nostræ.* Cas. *Est hoc Gallicæ consuetudinis.* Plin. *Moris antiqui fuit.* Cic. *Quæ res evertendæ reip. solent esse.* Sall. *Regium imperium, quod initio conservandæ libertatis fuerat.* Id. *Quæ postquam gloriosa modo, neque belli patrandi agnovit,* sup. *esse.*

23. These nominatives, *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum,* are excepted.

Excipiuntur hi nominativi, meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum.

It is my duty to confess. *Meum est fateri.*
It is your duty to forgive. *Tuum est ignoscere.*

Note 1. The meaning of the rule is, that instead of the primitive pronouns, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri,* in the genitive, we must use their possessives, *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum,* in the nominative case, and in the neuter gender.

Note 2. POSSESSIVE nouns, such as, *regius, humanus, belluinus, Romanus, &c.* admit of the like construction; as, Cic. *Hoc quam regium sit, quem præterit?* Ter. *Humanum est errare.* Proverb. *Belluinum est ventri servire.* Liv. *Et agere et pati fortia Romanum est.* Ter. *Hoc patrium est.* Cic. *Gladiatorium id quidam.*

RULE II.

*24. MISEREOR. *miseresco,* and *satago,* govern the genitive.

REG. II.

MISEREOR, miseresco, *et* satago, *regunt genitivum.*

Take pity on your countrymen. *Miserere civium tuorum.*
Take pity on the king. *Miserescite regis.*
He has enough to do with his own affairs. *Satagit rerum suarum.*

Note 1. Several other verbs signifying *an affection of the mind,* govern sometimes the genitive, but chiefly with the poets as Cic. *Pendeo animi.* Ter. *Discrucior animi.* Plaut. *Fastidit mei.* Hor. *De-*

cipitur laborum. Plaut *Fallebar sermonis.* Hor. *Invidit Ciceronis.* Virg. *Lætor malorum.* Hor. *Abstineto irarum.* Id. *Desine querelarum.* Virg. *Desistere pugnæ.* Hor. *Regnavit populorum.* Tac. *Adipisceretur dominationis.* Plaut. *Levas laborum, &c.* But these and the like are much oftener otherwise construed, *viz.* some take the accusative, others the ablative, and that either with or without a preposition, *&c.*

Note 2. In assigning the reason of this rule, grammarians differ; some take all such constructions to be Grecisms, or imitations of the Greek: others consider them as eliptical Latin expressions, and pretend to supply them by some general word; such as, *negotio, re, causa, nomine,* or the like, with the preposition *in, de* or *a*. Others again think, if they are to be supplied, that some particular word, suited to the sense of the expression, must be understood thus, *Miserere civium,* sc. *miseria. Discrucior animi,* sc. *dolore Regnavit populorum,* sc. *in cœtu. Levas laborum,* sc. *onere, &c.*

RULE. III.

25. EST taken for *habeo* [*to have*] governs the dative of a person.

REG. III.

EST *pro* habeo *regit dativum personæ.*

Every one has their own way.	*Suus cuique mos est.*
We have many books.	*Sunt nobis multi libri.*
Don't you know that kings have long hands?	*An nescis longas regibus esse manus?*

Note. That *foret* and *suppetit,* as also *suppedilat,* when used in a neuter sense, are likewise often taken for *habeo,* and admit of the same construction. Mart. *Si mihi causa foret.* Hor. *Cui rerum suppetit usus.* Tac. *Publio neque animus in periculis, neque oratio suppeditavit.*

RULE IV.

26. SUM taken for *affero* [*to bring*] governs two datives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing.

REG. IV.

SUM *pro* affero *regit duos dativos, unum personæ, alterum rei.*

The sea brings ruin upon mariners.	*Mare est exitio nautis.*
King Philip brought aid to the Romans.	*Philippus rex Romanis auxilio fuit.*
Every one minds his own pleasure.	*Curæ est sua cuique voluptas.*

Note 1. Other verbs sometimes govern two datives; such as *forem, do, duco, habeo, tribuo, relinquo, verto, venio, mitto,* and some others.

Note 2. To this rule may be referred such phrases of naming as these, *Est mihi nomen Joanni.* Just. *Ptolemæus, cui cognomento Philopatri fuit.* Virg. *Ascanius, cui nunc cognomen Iulo additur.* As also the following or like expressions, *Esse cordi, usui, derisui, prædæ, ludibrio,* sc. *alicui dicto audiens esse. Habere curæ, quæstui,* sc. *sibi, Canere receptui,* sc. *militibus, &c.*

Note 3. Instead of the dative of the THING, the nominative is sometimes used; as, Virg. *Idem amor exitium pecori est, pecorisque magistro;* for *exitio.*

22. The books which you see were my cousin's, but now they are my brother's.	*Liber qui video, sum consobrinus meus, sed nunc sum frater.*
Cæsar Augustus dwelt hard by the Forum, in a house that had belonged to Calvus the orator.	*Cæsar Augustus habito juxta Forum, in domus qui sum Calvus orator.*
Never was there a more bloody battle; at last, however, the victory was the Lacedemonians.	*Nunquam sum cruentus prælium; ad postremum, tamen, victoria sum Lacedomonii.*
It is the property of a coward to wish for death; but it is the property of a great soul to despise an injury.	*Sum timidus opto mors, sed sum magnus animus despicio injuria.*
It is the part of a foolish boy to love play and neglect his studies; and it is the part of a good shepherd to shear his sheep, not to slay them.	*Sum stultus puer amo lusus, et negligo studium, et sum bonus pastor tondeo pecus, non deglubo.*
It is the duty of children to love and reverence their parents, and it is the duty of a scholar to honour his master.	*Sum liberi amo et revereor parens, et sum discipulus honoro magister.*
23. It is my part to teach and	*Sum meus doceo et præ-*

direct; it is thy part to study hard, if thou desirest to be a scholar.

It is our part to regulate your courage; and it is your duty not to pry into the orders of your officers but submissively to obey.

24. Look about, says Tellus, take pity on your own heaven; the poles are smoking, which, if the fire shall destroy, your palaces will tumble down.

Pity such great hardships; take pity also on me, and be not troublesome; I am busy in my own affairs.

Xantippe, Socrates's wife, by day and by night was sufficiently employed in womanish quarrels and brawlings.

25. Cæsar the dictator rivalled the greatest orators, and Augustus had a ready and fluent eloquence.

Thou mayest rest with us upon the green grass; we have mellow apples; soft chesnuts, and plenty of curdled milk.

26. Conon, when he heard that his country was invaded, did not enquire whether he might live safely; but from whence he might bring relief to his countrymen.

The loss, however, of the human race, was matter of grief to all the gods; and they asked, what would be the appearance of the earth destitute of mortals?

scribo; sum tuus studeo diligenter, si volo sum doctus.

Sum noster rego vester virtus; et vester sum, non sciscitor imperium dux, sed modeste pareo.

Circumspicio, aio Tellus, misereor cœlum vester; polus fumo, qui si ignis violo, atrium vester ruo.

Misereor tantus labor; miseresco quoque ego, ac ne sum molestus; satago res meus.

Xantippe, Socrates uxor, per dies perque nox satago muliebris ira et molestia.

Cæsar dictator sum æmulus summus orator, et Augustus promptus ac profluens eloquentia.

Tu possum requiesco egocum super viridis frons; sum ego mitis pomum, mollis castanea, et pressus copia lac.

Conon, quum audio patria obsideo, non quæro ubi ipse vivo tuto; sed unde sum præsidium civis suus.

Jactura, tamen, humanus genus, sum dolor omnis superi; et rogo, qui sum forma terra 6 *mortalis orbus?*

The vine is an ornament to the trees, grapes are an ornament to the vines, bulls to the flocks, and growing corn to the fertile fields.

Vitis sum decus arbor, uva sum decus vitis, taurus grex, et seges pinguis arvum.

Note 1. Micipsa imagined that Jugurtha would be an honour to his kingdom, and thought it a glory to himself, that he was called the friend and ally of the Roman people.

Micipsa existimo Jugurtha forem gloria regnum suus, et duco sui gloria, sui voco amicus et socius populus Romanus.

The complainers charged it as a crime against Gallius, that he had provided poison; and who is it that would not have imputed it to him as a fault.

Accusator do crimen Gallius, is paro venenum; et quis sum, qui non verto is vitium?

These gentlemen strut in state before your noses, and boast of their triumphs just as if they reckoned them an honour to them, and not rapine.

Hic vir incedo per os vester, et ostento suus triumphus, perinde quasi habeo is honor sui, ac non præda.

The girl was left to this woman as a pledge for the money; but it is charged upon you as laziness, that you write so few letters to your friends.

Adolescentula relinquo hic mulier arrhabo pro argentum; sed tribuo tu ignavia, quod scribo tam rarus litera ad amicus.

Chabrias too was reckoned amongst the greatest generals, and performed many things worthy of memory, but of these his invention in the battle which he fought at Thebes, when he came to the relief of the Bœotians, is the most famous.

Chabrias quoque habeo in summus dux, geroque multus res dignus memoria; sed ex hic inventum is in prælium qui apud Thebæ facio, cum venio subsidium Bœotii, maxime elucco.

¶ After this a battle is fought: the Macedonians rush upon the sword with contempt of an enemy so often conquered by them: Alexander himself attempted the most dangerous things; where he saw the enemy thickest, there he always

Post hic prælium committo: Macedo ruo in ferrum, cum contemptus hostis toties a sui victus: Alexander ipse aggredior quisque periculosus; ubi conspicio hostis confertus, eo sui semper ingero, voloque

thrust himself, and had a mind the dangers should be his own, not his soldiers.

periculum sum suus, non miles.

Rashness is the property of youth, prudence of old age; and to love riches is the property of a little and narrow soul, as to despise them, in comparison of virtue, is the property of a great and noble mind.

Temeritas sum florens ætas, prudentia senectus; et amo divitæ sum parvus angustusque animus, ut contemno is, præ virtus, sum magnus et sublimis animus.

Virginius begged that they would pity him and his daughter, that they would not hearken to the entreaties of the Claudian family, but to the entreaties of Virginia's relations; and the tribunes, who being created for the assistance of the commons, did implore their protection and aid.

Virginius oro ut misereor sui et filia, ne audio precis gens Claudius, sed precis Virginia cognatus; et tribunus, qui creatus ad auxilium plebs, implo-ro is fides et auxilium.

Part advised to call in Mithridates, king of Pontus, part Ptolemy, king of Egypt; but Mithridates was full of business of his own, and Ptolemy had always been an enemy to Syria; wherefore all agreed upon Tigranes, king of Armenia; who being sent for, held the kingdom of Syria for eighteen years.

Pars suadeo arcesso Mithridates rex Pontus, pars Ptolemæus rex Ægyptus, sed Mithridates satago res suus, et Ptolemæus semper sum hostis Syria: itaque omnis consentio in Tigranes rex Armenia: qui accitus teneo regnum Syria per octodecim annus.

The nation of the Catti have robust bodies, compact limbs, a stern countenance, great vigour of mind, a great deal of sense and address; they confide more in their general than in their army: over the blood and spoils of an enemy they uncover their face, and boast that they are then worthy of their country and their parents.

Gens Catti sum durus corpus, strictus artus, minax vultus, magnus vigor animus, multum ratio ac solertia; repono plus in dux quam in exercitus: super sanguis et spolium hostis revelo facies, et fero sui sum tum dignus patria et parens.

Now I come to Cicero, who

Nunc ad Cicero venio,

had the same contest with his cotemporaries that I have with you, for they admired the ancients, he preferred the eloquence of his own times.

The Macedonians had perpetual wars with the Thracians and Illyrians: the latter despised the infancy of the Macedonian king, and invaded the Macedonians; who being beat, brought out their king and placed him behind their army in his cradle, and then renewed the dispute more briskly.

As soon as Philip, king of Macedonia, entered upon the government, all people had great hopes of him, because of his parts, and because of the old oracles of Macedonia, which had given out that the state of Macedonia should be very flourishing under one of the sons of Amyntas.

After this Alexander orders himself to be adored, not saluted. Callisthenes was the most violent among the recusants; which thing brought ruin both on him, and on many great men of Macedonia; for they were all put to death under pretence of a plot.

He ordered Marcus Claudius the proconsul, to retain a sufficient garrison at Nola, and send away the rest of the soldiers, that they might not be a burden to their allies, and charge to the government.

Cæsar Octavianus, Mark

qui idem pugna sum cum æqualis suus, qui ego sum tucum; ille enim antiquus miror, ipse suus tempus eloquentia antepono.

Macedo sum assiduus bellum cum Thraces et Illyrii: posterior contemno infantia Macedonicus rex, et invado Macedo; qui pulsus, profero rex suus, et pono pone acies in cunæ, et tunc repeto certamen acriter.

Ut Philippus, rex Macedonia, ingredior imperium, omnis sum magnus spes de ille, propter ipse ingenium, et propter vetus fatum Macedonia, qui cano status Macedonia sum florens sub unus filius Amyntas.

Deinde Alexander jubeo sui adoro, non salutor. Collisthenes sum acer inter recusans; qui res sum exitium et ille, et multus princeps Macedonia; siquidem omnis interficio sub species insidiæ.

Jubeo Marcus Claudius proconsul, retineo idoneus præsidium ad Nola, et dimitto cæter miles, ne sum onus socius, et sumptus respublica.

Cæsar Octavianus,

Antony and Lepidus, divided the Roman empire among themselves. Asia and Egypt were Mark Anthony's ; he married Cleopatra, the most beautiful woman of her age, who, desirous of the empire of the world, stirred him up to make war against Cæsar Octavianus, which brought destruction on them both.

Marcus Antonius, et Lepidus, partior Romanus imperium inter sui. Asia et Ægyptus sum Marcus Autonius ; duco Cleopatra, pulcher fœmina, seculum suus, qui, cupidus imperium terra orbis, impello is gero bellum contra Cæsar Octavianus, qui sum pernicies uterque.

It is the part of a wise man to look to the end of things. When therefore the fatherless call upon thee ; when the widows heart is sunk, and she imploreth thy assistance ; it is thy duty to pity her affliction, and relieve those who have no helper.

Every thing is common among ants. An ant never works for herself, but for the whole society of which she is a member. Whereas bees, of which so wonderful stories are told, have each of them a hole in their hives : their honey is their own, and every bee is wholly taken up about her own concerns

Idleness is the parent of want and pain, but the labour of virtue bringeth forth pleasure. The hand of the diligent defeateth want ; prosperity and success are the industrious man's attendants. But the slothful man is a burden to himself ; he loitereth about, and knoweth not what he would do.

RULE V.

REG. V.

27. A VERB signifying advantage or disadvantage governs the dative.

VERBUM significans commodum vel incommodum regit dativum.

I am not profitable to myself.
Fortune favours the brave.
Wise men command their passions.
Cæsar threatened the eagle-bearer.
Fools trust to dreams.

Mihi minus proficio.
Fortuna favet fortibus.
Sapientes imperant cupiditatibus suis.
Aquilifero Cæsar comminatus est.
Stulti fidunt somnis.

The girl married her cousin-german.	*Consobrino suo nupsit puella.*
It is the part of a good man to satisfy his conscience.	*Est boni viri satisfacere conscientiæ suæ.*
I was present at the battle.	*Aderam pugnæ.*
The last hand is put to the work.	*Accessit operi manus extrema.*
Man, who is partaker of reason excels the brutes.	*Homo, qui rationis particeps est, antecellit bestiis.*
A boy takes pleasure to play with his equals.	*Puer gestit paribus colludere.*
The sailors ply the oars.	*Nautæ incumbunt remis.*

To this rule belong a great variety of verbs, mostly neuter, *viz.*

I. Verbs of various significations, importing,

1. To PROFIT or HURT; as, "proficio, placeo, commodo, prospicio, caveo, metuo, timeo, consulo," to provide for or against; also, "noceo, officio, incommodo, displiceo, insidior."

2. To FAVOUR, to HELP, and their contraries: as, "faveo, gratulor, gratificor, grator, ignosco, indulgeo, annuo, parco, studeo, adulor, plaudo, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, assentor, supplico, supparasitor;" also, "auxilior, adminiculor, subvenio, succurro, patrocinor, medeor, medicor, opitulor: also, "derogo, detrabo, invideo, æmulor."

3. To COMMAND, OBEY, SERVE and RESIST; as "impero, præcipio, mando, moderor;" to restrain; also, "pareo, ausculto, obedio, obsequor, obtempero, morigeror, obsecundo;" also, "famulor, servio, inservio, ministro, ancillor;" also, "repugno, obsto, reluctor, renitor, resisto, refragor, adversor;" and with the poets, pugno, certo, bello, contendo, concurro, luctor.

4. To THREATEN or to be ANGRY with; as, "minor, comminor, interminor, irascor, succenseo."

5. To TRUST; as, "fido, confido, credo;" also, diffido, despero.

6. A great many other verbs that cannot be reduced to any distinct head; such as, "nubo, excello, hæreo, cedo, operor, præstolor, prævaricor, recipio," to promise pepigi." "renuncio, respondeo, tempero, vaco, convicior, aio, luceo, sapio, sordeo, dormio, &c."

II. Verbs compounded with SATIS, BENE, and MALE; as, "satisfacio, satisdo, benefacio, benedico, benevolo, malefacio, maledico."

III. All the compounds of the verb SUM, except *possum;* as, "adsum, prosum, obsum, desum, insum, intersum, præsum, sepersum," &c.

IV. A great many verbs, compounded with these nine PREPOSITIONS, "ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, præ, sub, super."

AD; as, "accedo, accresco, accumbo, acquiesco, adno, adnato, adequito, adhæreo, adrepo, adsto, adstipulor, advolvor, affulgeo, allabor, allaboro, annuo, appareo, applaudo, appropinquo, arrideo, aspiro, assentior, assideo, assisto, assuesco, assurgo."

ANTE; as, "antecello, anteeo, antesto, anteverto."

CON; as, "colludo, concino, consono, convivo."

IN; as, "incumbo, indormio, inhio, ingemisco, inhæreo, innascor, innitor, insideo, insto, insisto, insudo, insulto, invigilo, illacrymo, illudo, immineo, immorior, immoror, impendeo."

INTER; as, "intervenio, intermico, intercedo, intercido, interjaceo."

OB; as, "obrepo, obluctor, obtrecto, obstrepo, obmurmuro, occumbo, occurro, occurso, obsto, obsisto, obvenio."

PRÆ; as, "præcedo, præcurro, præeo, præsideo, præluceo, præniteo, præsto, prævaleo, præverto."

SUB; as, "succedo, succumbo, sufficio, suffragor, subcresco, suboleo, subjaceo, subrepo, supplico."

SUPER; as, "supervenio, supercurro, supersto."

Note 1. Some few of these words; such as, *fido, confido, innitor cedo, vaco,* instead of the dative, take sometimes the ablative, as will be taught No. 30.

Note 2. The verbs *jubeo, offendo, lædo,* and *juvo,* though reducible to some of the above classes, do not govern the dative, but the accusative; as, Luc. *Silentia jussit.* Hor. *Cur ego amicum offendam in nugis?* Cic. *Neminem læsit.* Ovid. *Juvit facundia causam.*

Note 3. Verbs of LOCAL MOTION; such as, *eo, vado, curro, propero, festino, pergo, fugio,* &c. and verbs denoting tendency to MOTION; such as, *tendo, vergo, specto, pertineo.* &c. instead of the dative, take the accusative, with the preposition *ad* or *in.*

Note 4. A great many of the verbs belonging to this rule admit of other constructions: as, Plaut. *Parcere pecuniam.* Id. *Auscultare aliquem.* Cic. *Desperare rempublicam.* Cæs. *Ad hæc respondit.* Cic. *Adesse in pugna.* Sall. *Accedere ad urbem.* Cic. *Accedere in oppidum.* Virg. *Accedere domos infernas.* Sall. *Anteire omnes gloria.* Id. *Col-*

ludere cum aliquo. Plaut. *Incumbere gladium.* Cic. *Incumbere ad studia, in studium.* Petron. *Incumbere super prædum.* Plin. *Interjacet duas syrtes.* Cic. *Obrepere in animos, ad honores.* Virg. *Præcedere agmen.* Sall. *Succedere murum.* Liv. *Succedere ad urbem, in pugnam.* Virg. *Superstare aliquem, &c.*

I. 1. It is the part of a wise man to please God, to do good to men, to take care of himself, to provide for his own safety, to be concerned for his friends, and study their interest, to do harm to none, to displease nobody, neither to hurt the miserable, nor lay snares for the innocent.

2. A good man favours the good, and rejoiceth with them upon any happy event; he is always disposed to spare the vanquished, and forgive what is past; he neither entertains resentment, nor flatters any one; he knows, that those who detract from good men, derogate from themselves; he therefore envies nobody, but zealously imitates the most worthy.

It is the property of a generous man to assist the poor, to aid the needy, to succour the distressed, to heal their wounds, to patronise the orphans, to help his countrymen, to study their advantage, and to pray to God, that he would second his endeavours; whilst the covetous man flatters and caresses the rich, and applauds himself when he looks at his money in his chest.

3. God hath commanded us to rule our lusts, to govern our

Sum sapiens placeo Deus, proficio homo, caveo sui, prospicio salus suus, metuo amicus et consulo utilitas, officio nullus, displiceo nemo, neque noceo miser, neque insidior innocuus.

Bonus faveo bonus, et gratulor is de aliquis res felix; semper paratus sum parco victus, et ignosco præteritus; neque indulgeo ira, neque adulor quisquam; nosco is, qui detraho bonus derogo sui; ideo invideo nemo, sed æmulor dignus.

Sum generous auvilior pauper, subvenio inops, succurro miser, medeor vulnus, patrocinor orbus & parens, opitulor civis, studeo commodum, et supplico Deus, ut annuo ausum; dum avarus assentor et blandior dives et plaudo sui, cum contemplor nummus in arca.

Deus præcipio ego ut impero cupiditas, moderor

spirit, to listen to his word, to obey his admonitions, to be subject to his laws, to be submissive to parents, to comply with their will, to serve and wait upon them, and obey their orders, and not to be a slave to passion.

animus, ausculto verbum is, pareo monitum, obedio lex, obtempero parens, obsecundo voluntas is, famulor et ministro ille, et obsequor imperium, neque servio iracundia.

A Christian ought to oppose vicious pleasure, to struggle against and withstand the beginnings of anger, to resist evil, to oppose the corrupt practices of those who despise virtue and religion, and not to be a slave to lust, nor humour wicked men.

Christianus debeo repugno vitiosus voluptas, reluctor et obsto principium ira, resisto malum, adversor pravus mos is qui contemno virtus et religio, neque inservio cupiditas, neque morigeror malus, homo.

4. & 5. The general was angry and enraged at the soldiers; he threatened the standard bearers, he threatened the runaways but as he durst not depend on the courage of his men, he resolved to retreat, and trust to the night and the darkness. Though at first he did not believe the things that were said concerning the enemy, yet now he began to give up his affairs for lost, and despair of safety.

Dux succenseo et irascor miles; minor signifer, comminor fugiens, sed cum non audeo confido virtus miles, statuo recedo, et fido nox et tenebræ. Quamvis primo non credo is qui narro de hostis, tamen nunc cæpi diffido res suus, et despero salus.

6. I cannot restrain my tongue, says the gentleman to his companion, the sun shines on the wicked, and few are wise for themselves. I bewail the misfortune of the unhappy young lady; she excelled all the girls of the east, she was taken up with the liberal sciences, and was always intent upon philosophy.

Non possum tempero lingua, aio vir comes, sol luceo sceleratus, et pauci sapio sui. Doleo casus infelix virgo; excello omnis puella oriens, operor liberalis studium, et semper vaco philosophia.

Many young men courted this girl, and presents sent by many

Multus juvenis peto hic puella, et munus missus a

lovers were disdained by her; at length, however, she yielded to the gentle command of her parents, and married a Roman knight; but the event did not answer people's expectation, he was a bad husband, and the poor creature has bid adieu to life; my voice clings to my jaws!

multus procus sordeo ille; tandem, tamen, cedo lenis imperium parens et nubo Romanus eques; sed res non respondeo homo opinio, sum durus maritus, et miser renuncio vita; vox faux hœreo!

II. An honest man endeavours to satisfy his creditors, and to act well for the commonwealth, which is a fine thing; he endeavours also to speak well of good men, to revile nobody, and to do an ill turn to none. God often blesses such a man, which he does when he gives him prosperity, enlarges his fortune, and shows him favour.

Probus vir conor satisfacio creditor, et benefacio respublica, qui sum pulcher; conor quoque benedico bonus homo, maledico memo, et malefacio nullus. Deus sæpe benedico talis homo, qui facio cum do prosper, augeo bonum, faveoque.

III. Parents often outlive their children; and as some men have a weakness of judgment, and others want prudence, an old man of this sort ought to be present at public deliberations, and have the charge of the thing to be done; not that he may have it in his power to hurt any one, but that he may be able to do good to many; and God sometimes favours such an undertaking.

Parens sæpe supersum liberi; et ut quidam homo insum imbecillitas judicium, et alius desum prudentia, senex ejusmodi debeo intersum publicus consilium, et præsum res faciendus; non ut possum obsum quivis, sed ut possum prosum multus; et Deus nonnunquam adsum talis inceptum.

IV. *Ad.* The thing pleased me much; for the young man had resolved to rest in your opinion, and adhere to virtue. Fortune, therefore, smiled upon him, and favoured his first attempt; and great courage was

Res arrideo ego valde; nam adolescens statuo acquiesco sententia tuus, et adhæreo virtus. Fortuna, igitur, affulgeo ille, et aspiro primus labor, et ingens animus accido miles,

added to his men, who rode up to the very gates of the city.

The enemy threw themselves into the river, and endeavoured to swim to land. Our general returned victorious with twelve sergeants, who attended him, and arose up before him, as he came into his tent where he sat down to a feast. The grandees sat by him, and six boys waited at table.

Ante and *Con.* Virtue, which is always consistent with itself, excels all other things, and the endowments of the mind excel strength of body ; but they often beget pride. There was a comedian in Greece, of a celebrated character, with whom I lived a long time, who far excelled most actors and musicians : he used to boast and say, Let the boys play with their equals, and sing to themselves and the muses.

In. This villain mocks and insults all good men ; he is said never to have groaned or wept at the death of a friend ; but he gapes after gain, and sleeps on his bags of money ; he obstinately persists in, and pursues his former course, though danger seems to hang and hover over him ; for a pain has lately settled in his feet, which obliges him to lean on a staff, as a soldier leans on a spear, or as a house leans on pillars.

Inter. There was an alliance for a long time betwixt this

qui adequito ipse porta urbs.

Hostis projicio sui in fluvius, et conor adno terra. Noster dux redeo victor cum duodecim lictor, qui appareo is, et omnis assurgo is, veniens in tabernaculum, ubi accumbo epulæ. Primores assideo ille, et sex puer adsto mensa.

Virtus, qui semper consono sui, anteeo omnis alius res, et dos animus antecello vires corpus ; at sæpe gigno superbia. Sum histrio in Græcia, celeber fama, qui diu convivo, qui longe antesto plerique actor et citharœdus : soleo glorior, et dico, Puer colludo par, et concino sui et musa.

Hic scelestus illudo et insulto omnis bonus ; dico nunquam ingemo aut illachrymo mors amicus ; sed inhio lucrum et indormio saccus pecunia ; pertinaciter insto, et inhœreo prior vestigium, etiamsi periculum video impendeo et immineo is ; nam dolor nuper insideo pes, qui cogo is initor baculum, ut miles insisto hasta, aut ut tectum incumbo columna.

Amicitia diu intercedo hic populus cum finitimus

people and their neighbours; a war, however, at last broke out between them; they joined battle in a valley full of ferns, which use to grow in neglected fields: at first the sun was shining, and the gold glittered on their bright armour; many were slain on both sides, who were all buried in pits that lay betwixt the hills, and more would have fallen had not night come on during the time of the battle.

Ob. The lot that has fallen to men is mortal: mortality occurs, nay often occurs to our thought, and all men struggle against death in vain; but yet vices creep in upon us, wickedness stands in the way of piety, one desires and deprecates the merits of another, few withstand the allurements of pleasure, and nobody is disposed to die for his country.

Præ. Mercury is said to preside over gain; but a fair reputation is better than riches. Masters ought and use to lead the way to their scholars, and the boy is worthy of honour who outshines his ancestors, or outstrips his cotemporaries. Providence over-rules human devices, and certain signs sometimes go before certain events.

Sub and *Super.* Wave succeeds wave, grief comes in the midst of joy, old age and poverty steal upon you; but do not sink under the burden; for your farm,

bellum, tamen, tandem exorior inter is; committo prælium in vallis plenus filix, qui soleo innascor neglectus ager: primo sol splendeo, et aurum intermico fulgens arma; multus interficio utrinque, qui omnis sepelio in fovea qui interjaceo mons, et plus cado nisi nox intervenio prælium.

Sors qui obvenio homo sum mortalis: mortalitas occurro, imo occurso animus, et omnis obluctor mors frustra; attamen vitium obrepo ego, scelus obsto pietas, alter obstrepo et detrecto laus alter, pauci obsisto blanditiæ voluptas, et nemo sum paratus occumbo mors pro patria.

Mercurius dico præsideo lucrum; sed bonus existimatio præsto divitiæ. Præceptor debeo et soleo præeo discipulus, et puer sum dignus honor qui præluceo majores, aut antecello æqualis. Providentia prævaleo humanus consilium, et certus signum interdum præcurro certus res.

Unda succedo unda, luctus supervenio lætitia, senectus et paupertas subrepo tu; sed ne succumbo onus; nam ager tuus, qui

which lies under the hill, is far better than its rent, and will find a purchaser; and as you are content with little, if but a small part of the price shall be left to you, you will be richer than a covetous man, whom the wealth of Crœsus would not satisfy.

Subjaceo mons, longe supercurro vectigal, et invenio emptor; et cum sum contentus parvum, si modo exiguus pars pretium supersto, tu sum ditior avarus, qui opis Crœsus non sufficio.

Note 3. All the rivers run into the sea, and we all hasten to one habitation. My brother enlisted in the army, went to a battle; but being worsted, he hastened to the shore, fled into Africa, and went to the city Carthage. His friends, to whom the business chiefly belonged, afterwards brought him back; his years are now on the decline towards old age. Virtue aims at high things.

Omnis fluvius curro in mare, et ego omnis sedes propero ad unus. Meus frater eo in militia, vado in prælium; sed victus, festino ad littus, fugio in Africa, et pergo ad urbs Carthago. Amicus, ad qui res maxime pertineo postea reduco; annus jam vergo in senium. Virtus ad arduus tendo.

¶ So great a madness had seized their cruel minds, that they did not spare the age, which even enemies would have spared; and carried on a destructive war against their children, and children's mothers for whom wars used to be undertaken. So great was the havock, that the gods seem to have agreed, together with men, for the destruction of the parricides.

Tantus rabies invado ferus animus, ut non parco ætas, qui etiam hostis parco; geroque internecivus bellum cum liberi, liberique mater, pro qui bellum soleo suscipio. Tantus strages sum, ut deus videor consentio, pariter cum homo, in exitium parricida.

The chiefs of the fathers said, that his speech was worthy of the consular office, worthy of so many consulships, worthy of his whole life, full of honour; that other consuls had, by betraying their dignity, flattered the common people; that he, mindful

Primores pater dico, concio is dignus sum imperium consularis, dignus tot consulatus, dignus totus vita, plenus & honor; alius consul, per proditio dignitas, adulor plebs, is, memor majestas pater, ha-

of the majesty of the fathers, had made a speech suitable to the times.

beo oratio accommodatus tempus.

Polycletus, a man terrible to our own soldiers, is sent into Britain ; but he was an object of derision to the enemy, amongst whom the power of freed men, was not yet known, and they wondered that an army should obey a slave.

Polycletus, vir terribilis noster miles, mitto in Britannia : sed sum irrisus hostis, apud qui potentia libertus nondum cognosco mirorque quod exercitus obedio servitium.

The Christian religion not only commands us to help our friends, but to relieve those that are enemies to us; for so we shall make them our friends, and shall promote love, kindness, peace, and good-will among men ; which things please God.

Christianus religio non modo præcipio ego opitulor amicus, sed succurro is qui sum inimicus ego ; sic enim reddo is amicus, et promoveo amor, benignitas, pax, et benevolentia inter homo ; qui placeo Deus.

The Parthians were formerly the most obscure among the people of the east. When the empire of Asia was transferred from the Medes to the Persians they were a prey to the conquerors : finally they were subjects to the Macedonians, that it may seem strange to any one that they arrived to such a flourishing condition, that they now command those nations, to which they formerly were under subjection.

Parthi sum olim obscurus inter populus oriens. Cum imperium Asia transfero a Medus ad Persa, sum præda victor ; postremo servio Macedo, ut videor mirus quivis is proveho ad tantus felicitas, ut nunc impero is gens, qui olim servio.

He that resisteth his own evil inclinations, obeyeth God ; and deserves greater praise than the general who vanquishes mighty armies, and takes the strongest cities, but serves his passions which he cannot govern.

Qui repugno suus malus affectus, obedio Deus ; et mereor magnus laus dux qui fundo magnus copiæ, et, expugno munitus urbs, sed servio cupiditas, qui non possum moderor.

Taken with the sweetness of

Captus dulcedo is po-

that power, you suffer any wickedness to lurk under it. Let them say the same things which they bawl out here, in the camp, and amongst the soldiers; and let them corrupt our armies, and not suffer them to obey their commanders, since that is at last the liberty of Rome, not to reverence the senate, the magistrates, or the laws.

testas, sino quilibet scelus lateo sub is. Dico idem, qui vociferor hic, in castra, et apud miles; et corrumpo exercitus, nec patior is pareo dux, quoniam is demum sum libertas Roma, non revereor senatus, magistratus, aut lex.

The Lacedemonians, after the manner of mankind, the more they have, the more they desire: for not content with the accession of the Athenian powers, they begun to affect the empire of all Asia, the greatest part of which was subject to the Persians.

Lacedæmonius, de mos genus humanus, quod plus habeo, id plus cupio; nam, non contentus accessio opis Atheniensis, cæpi affecto imperium totus Asia, qui magnus pars pareo Persa.

King Eumenes met the Romans with aid, and a little after a battle was fought with Antiochus: a Roman legion was beat in the right wing, and fled to the camp; but M. Æmilius, a tribune of the soldiers, who had been left for the security of it, commands his soldiers to take arms, and threaten the runaways.

Rex Eumenes occurro Romanus cum auxilium, et paulo post prælium committo cum Antiochus: Romanus legio pello in dexterior cornu, et fugio ad castra; sed M. Æmilus, tribunus miles, qui relinquo ad tutela is, impero miles capio arma, et minor fugiens.

Hiero was descended of Hierocles: his very education was ominous of his future grandeur; he had a remarkable handsomeness of person; he was smooth in his address, just in business, moderate in command, that there seemed nothing at all wanting to him suitable for a king, but a kingdom.

Hiero gigno Hierocles; ipse educatio sum prænuncius futurus majestas sum is insignis pulchritudo corpus; sum blandus in alloquium, justus in negotium, moderatus in imperium, ut nihil prorsus videor desum is regius, præter regnum.

And that no misery might be

Et ne quid malum de-

wanting to the most honourable families, he obliges their wives and daughters to marry their slaves, that he might render them more faithful to himself, and more violent against their masters. But such dismal matches were more grievous to the matrons than sudden death.

sum honestus domus, compello uxor is filiaque nubo servus suus, ut reddo is fidus sui, et infestus dominus. Sed tam lugubris nuptiæ sum gravis matrona repentinus funus.

We were not born for ourselves only; we ought therefore to consult the interest of our friends, to be beneficial to mankind, and serviceable to human society.

Canute, one of the kings of England, piously acknowledged, that none truly deserves the name of King, but he whose eternal laws, heaven, earth, and seas obey.

Agamemnon, king of the Argives, commanded the Grecian fleet in the expedition against Troy. But Diana was angry with Agamemnon, because he had killed one of her deers, Wherefore the provoked goddess caused such a calm that the Grecian ships became fixed and immoveable Hereupon they consulted the soothsayers, who ordered to sacrifice one of Agamemnon's children, and so satisfy the winds and Diana. Accordingly his daughter Iphigenia is brought; but whilst the young lady stood at the altar, the goddess pitied her, and substituted a hind in her stead. Iphigenia was sent into the Chersonese, where she presided over the sacrifices of Diana.

Is it not better to die by bravery, than by disgrace, to lose a miserable and inglorious life, after you have been the sport of other men's insolence? But surely we have the victory on our hands; our age is fresh, our minds are vigorous: On the other hand, all things are decayed to them; there is need only of a beginning.—— Who of mortals, that has the spirit of a man, can endure that they should have an excess of wealth, and that a private estate is wanting to us even for necessaries? In short, what have we left except a miserable life?

RULE VI.

REG VI.

28. A VERB signifying actively governs the accusative.

VERBUM active significans regit accusativum.

Love God.
Reverence your parents.

Ama deum.
Reverere parentes.

Note 1. The infinitive or a sentence sometimes supply the place of the accusative; as, Gell. *Pœnitere tanti non emo;* for *pœnitentiam.* Ter. *Feci e servo libertus ut esses mihi;* for *feci te libertum.*

Note 2. NEUTER VERBS have sometimes an accusative: 1. Of their own or the like signification; as, *vivere vitam, gaudere gaudium, servire servitutem, ire, viam longam, pugnare prœlia, garrire nugas, prandere olus, cœnare aprum, sitire sanguinem, &c.* 2. When taken in a metaphorical, or in an active sense; as, *Corydon ardebat Alexin, crepat sulcus et veneta, saltare Cyclopa, sonat vitium fidelia, olet hircum, spirat deum: Abolere maculam, laborare arma, clamare aliquem, horret mare, sensum pulchre calleo, medias fraudes polluit, &c.* But some preposition, such as, *ad, in, ob, circa, per,* is always understood.

Note 3. The accusatives *hoc, id, quid, aliquid, quiquid, nihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, multa, pauca, alia, cætera, omnia,* are often governed by *propter, ob,* or *circa,* understood; as, Ter. *Num id lacrumat virgo?* Plaut. *Scio quid erres.* Hor. *Quicquid delirant reges plectunctur Achivi.*

Note 4. ADVERBS are often joined to verbs, nouns, and other parts of speech, to express some circumstance, quality, or manner of their signification.

Note 5. The poets frequently use the neuter gender of adjectives adverbially, or instead of adverbs; as, Virg. *Torvumque repente clamat;* for *torve.* Hor. *Mens lætatur turbidum;* for *turbide.* Virg. *Et pede terram crebra ferit;* for *crebre.* Id. *Transversa tuentibus hircis;* for *transverse.*

Note 6. The accusative after active verbs, in some figurative expressions, is governed not by the verb, but by some preposition understood, while the true accusative to the verb is suppressed; thus, *Ferire, icere, perculere fœdus,* is put for *ferire, &c. porcum ad sanciendum fœdus. Plangere funera, damna:* for, *Plangere pectus ad funera, ad damna. Conserere prœlium;* for, *conserere manum ad prœlium faciendum.*

* 29. *Recorder, memini, reminiscor,* and *obliviscor,* govern the accusative or genitive.

Recorder, memini, reminiscor, *et* obliviscor, *regunt accusativum vel genitivum.*

I remember the battle.	*Recordor pugnam.*
I remember the victory.	*Recordor victoriæ.*
I mind the place.	*Memini locum.*
I mind the day.	*Memini diei.*
He remembers time.	*Reminiscitur tempus.*
He remembers the night.	*Reminiscitur the noctis.*
We forget reproaches.	*Obliviscimur contumeliâs*
We forget hardships.	*Obliviscimur laborum.*

Note 1. *Memini*, when it signifies *to make mention of*, takes the genitive or the ablative with *de*, but never the accusative; as, Cæs. *Cujus supra meminimus.* Quinct. *De quibus multi meminerunt.*

Note 2. The verbs belonging to this rule are generally esteemed neuter, and when they take the accusative, *ad*, or *quod*, *ad* is understood; when they take the genitive, *quod ad negotium*, or *negotio*, is suppressed.

Note 3. The phrase, *Venit mihi in mentem.* seems someway allied to this rule, and admits of three varieties, viz. *Venit mihi in mentem hæc res, hujus rei, de hac re:* to the last two may be understood *memoria* or *recordatia;* as, Cic. *Si quid in mentem veniet.* Id. *Mihi solet venire in mentem illius temporis, quo fuimus una.* Plaut. *In mentem venit de speculo.*

28. I love virtue, thou seeketh praise, he despises pleasure, we practise charity, ye fear God, they honour the king.

The boy deserves praise, the slave shall suffer punishment, the man defames his wife, care attends money, pride accompanies honours.

God wisely governs the world, riches sometimes procure envy, birds do not every where build their nests, the dogs nimbly pursue the hare.

Discord always produces strife, strife generally begets hatred, quarrels often break up friendship, honours commonly change manners.

29. A good man easily forgets injuries, but always remembers a good turn; a wicked man sees the faults of others and forgets his own, but at length with sorrow shall he remember his villanies.

Cæsar settled the differences among the Æduans, and having exhorted them to forget their disputes and quarrels, he return-

Amo virtus, quæro laus, contemno voluptas, colo caritas timeo Deus, honoro rex.

Puer mereor laus, servus patior pœna, vir criminor uxor, cura sequor pecunia, superbia comitor honor.

Deus sapienter guberno mundus, divitiæ interdum contraho iavidia, avis non ubivis struo nidus, canis strenue sector lepus.

Discordia semper pario lis, lis plerumque genero odium, jurgium sæpe dissolvo amicitia, honor vulgo muto mos.

Bonus vir facile obliviscor injuria, sed semper reminiscor beneficium, improbus cerno vitium alius et obliviscor suus, sed tandem cum dolor recordor flagitium suus.

Cæsar compono lis inter Ædui, et cohortatus ut obliviscor controversia ac dissensio, redeo ad castra.

ed to the camp. They remembered his advice, and complied with his admonitions.

¶ In the mean time the Roman people received a terrible stroke from the Parthians: nor can we complain; for after Crassus had pitched his camp at Nicephorium, deputies sent by king Orodes advised him to remember the treaties made with Pompey and Sylla. But the consul was gaping after the Parthian gold.

Let not the glare of gold and silver dismay you, which neither protects nor wounds. In the very host of the enemy we shall find our troops, the Britons will espouse their own cause, the Gauls will reflect on their former liberty, and the Germans will abandon the Romans.

Antiochus, though he approved of Annibal's advice, yet would not act according to his counsel, lest the glory of the victory should be Annibal's and not his own. He was conquered therefore, and remembered Annibal's counsel when it was too late.

Remember the counsel which I gave, it will profit thee very much if thou dost not forget it: obey the laws of Almighty God, obey the king and all other subordinate magistrates, in all things that are lawful; resist the beginnings of anger, and yield not to the allurements of pleasure.

Ille memini consilium et pareo monitum.

Interim Romanus populus accipio gravis vulnus a Parthi: nec possum queror; nam postquam Crassus pono castra apud Nicephorium, legatus missus a rex Orodes denuncio ut memini fœdus percussus cum Pompeius et Sylla. Sed consul inhio Parthicus aurum.

Ne fulgor aurum atque argentum terreo tu, qui neque tego neque vulnero. In ipse acies hostis invenio noster manus, Britanni agnosco suus causa, Galli recordor prior 4 libertas, et Germani desero Romanus.

Antiochus, tametsi probo consilium Annibal tamen nolo ago ex sententia ille, ne gloria victoria sum Annibal, et non suus. Vinco igitur, et memini consilium Annibal cum sum sero.

Memini 4 consilium qui do, prosum tu plurimum si 4 is non obliviscor: obedio lex omnipotens Deus, obedio rex et omnis alius inferior magistratus, in omnis qui sum licitus: repugno principium ira et ne cedo blanditiæ voluptas.

Such was the greatness of Alexander's soul, that though he left a son, who was called Hercules, a brother who was named Aridæus, and his wife Roxane with child, he forgot his relations, and named the most worthy his heir, just as if it was unlawful for any other than a brave man to succeed a brave man.

Tantus sum magnitudo animus Alexander, ut quamvis relinquo filius qui appello Hercules, frater qui nomino Aridæus, et uxor Roxane pregnans, obliviscor necessitudo, et nuncupo dignus hæres, prorsus quasi nefas sum alius quam vir fortis sucedo vir fortis.

Difficulties stupify the slaggard, and terrify the fearful, but animate the courageous.

A faithful friend is the medicine of life, and they that fear the Lord shall find him.

That man is of a happy memory, who forgets injuries, and remembers those things that are worthy of his character.

Egeon, called also Briareus, was one of the giants; Virgil says that he had 50 heads and 100 hands. He tore up solid rocks from the foundation, and hurled them against Jupiter; yet Jupiter overcame him, and thrust him under mount Ætna; where, as often as he moves his side, the mountain casts forth streams of liquid fire.

The poets mention a river in hell called Lethe, of the water of which, if any one drinks, he immediately forgets all things past? so that the souls of the pious, when they drink of the waters of this river, straightway forget the miseries, which they suffered in this world.

RULE VII.

REG. VII.

*30. VERBS of plenty and scarcity; also, *utor*, *abutor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and some others, generally govern the ablative.

VERBA copiæ et inopiæ; item utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, et qædam alia, plerumque ablativum regent.

He abounds in riches.
He is free from every fault.

Abundat divitiis.
Caret omni culpa.

He uses deceit.	*Utitur fraude.*
He abuses books.	*Abutitur libris.*
We depend on hope.	*Nitimur spe.*
You take pleasure in poems.	*Gaudes carminibus.*
The boy is sick of a fever.	*Puer febri laborat.*

To this rule belong,

Verbs of PLENTY; as "abundo, exubero, redundo, scateo, affluo, circumfluo, diffluo, superfluo."

2. Verbs, of SCARCITY; as, "careo, egeo, indigeo, vaco," to want; to which add, "deficio, destituor."

3. "Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor."

5. "Nitor, innitor, epulor, nascor, creor, glorior, lætor, delector, gaudeo, vivo, victito, fido, confido, exulto, sto, consto, consisto, cedo, supersedeo, laboro."

Note 1. *Egeo* and *indigeo* frequently take the genitive; as, Cæs, *Egere auxilii.* Cor. *Opis indiget.* Also, among the more ancient writers, *scateo* and *careo;* as, Lucret. *Terra scatet ferrarum.* Plaut. *Tui carendum erat.* Sometimes *careo* and *egeo* take the accusative; as, Plaut. *Id careo.* Gell. *Multâ egeo.*

Note 2. *Potior* sometimes governs the genitive; as, Sall. *Potiri urbis,* to make himself master of the city. Id. *Potiri hostium,* to get his enemies in his power. Cic. *Potiri rerum,* to have the chief command.

Note 3. *Potior, fungor, vescor,* and *epulor,* sometimes take the accusative; as, Cic. *Gens urbem nostram potitur.* Tac. *Ut munera fungerentur.* Plin. *Si caprinum jecur vescantur.* Id. *Pullos epulari.* As also among the more ancient writers, *utor, abutor,* and *fruor;* as, Plaut. *Uteris, ut voles, operam meam.* Ter. *Operam abutitur.* Id. *Ingenium frui.*

Note 4. The ablative is not governed by these verbs, but by some preposition understood; such as, *a, ab, de, ex, in.* And when any of these verbs take the genitive, some ablative, such as, *re, negotio, causa, præsentia, ope, copia, imperio,* or the like, with a preposition, is understood.

Note 5. With some of these verbs the preposition is frequently expressed; as, Liv. *Ne a metu vacarent.* Cic. *Cum constemus ex animo et corpore.* Id. *Com graviter ex intestinis laborarem.* Id. *Cujus in vita nitebatur salus civitatis.* Id. *In virtute recte gloriamur.*

Note 6. The verbs, *fido, confido, innitor, cedo, vaco,* instead of the ablative, take frequently the dative, as was taught No. 27.

1. Many men abound in gold and silver, whose houses are full of wickedness.

Multus homo abundo aurum atque argentum qui domus scelus affluo.

Some men flow in wealth, nay, overflow in money, and yet desire those things most with which they abound.

Quidam homo circumfluo opis, imo superfluo pecunia, et tamen desidero is maxime qui abundo.

Neglected sores use to swarm with vermin, and neglected fields and noxious weeds ; but yet this garden abounds in apples.

Neglectus ulcer soleo scateo vermis, et neglectus ager noxius herba ; sed tamen hic hortus exubero pomum.

This man pleads the cause with great vigour ; he is all bedewed with sweat ; he is over copious in his language ; his discourse, however, abounds with all manner of ornaments.

Hic vir ago causa strenue ; diffluo sudor ; redundo eloquium ; oratio tamen abundo omnis ornamentum.

2. Nature needs few things ; he however that wants friends, and he that is weak in judgment, or is disappointed of his expectations, stands in need of advice ; but to be free from a fault, is a great comfort.

Natura egeo pauci ; qui autem careo amicus, et qui deficior ratio, aut destituor spes, indigeo consilium ; sed vaco culpa magnus sum solatium.

3. We ought to use diligence, and not to abuse time ; the life which we enjoy is short, let us therefore do our duty carefully ; thus at length we shall obtain the golden fleece, we shall feed on milk and honey.

Debeo utor diligentia, et non abutor tempus ; vita qui fruor sum brevis, fungor igitur officium sedulo ; sic tandem potior aureus vellus, vescor lac et mel.

4. Men ought to depend on virtue rather than blood ; for if any one persist in this practice, and take pleasure in equity, he deserves praise. But fools often labour under this distemper, that they glory in their faults, rejoice at other men's misfortunes, are delighted with vain hope, and exult on success.

Homo debeo nitor virtus potius quam sanguis ; nam si quis innitor hic ars, et gaudeo æquitas mereor laus. Sed stultus sæpe is morbus laboro, ut glorior vitium suus, lætor alienus malum, delector vanus spes, et exulto successus.

The rich feast on dainty dishes, but the poor live on barley bread, nay some live on husks. Let us lay aside prolixity of words, for many poor people, descended of honourable parents, have retired from the city, on account of the dearth of corn.

Dives epulor opimus dapes, sed pauper victito hordeaceus panis, imo quidam vivo siliqua. Supersedeo multitudo verbum, nam multus pauper, prognatus honestus parens, cedo urbs, propter caritas annona.

Some men trust to strength of body, and the stability of fortune, as stags trust to their running; brave men, say they, descend from brave men, and a pretty girl cannot be born of a disgraceful mother.

Quidam homo confido firmitas corpus, et stabilitas fortuna, ut cervus fido cursus; fortis, inquam, creor fortis, et formosus puella non possum nascor mater pudendus.

This field consists of vineyards and woods; I might retain it, but I will stand by my bargain and my promise; thus good men will praise me, the poor will bless me.

Hic ager consto vinea et sylva; possum retineo, sed sto pactum et promissum; sic bonus ego laudo, pauper ego benedico.

¶ In Thessaly, Cæsar's army enjoyed very good health, and very great plenty of water, and abounded in every kind of provision, except corn.

In Thessalia, Cæsar exercitus utor bonus valetudo, summusque copia aqua, abundoque omnis genus commeatus, præter frumentum.

Great armies need great generals. Though Cæsar's soldiers had long wanted corn, and had endured the most pinching famine, yet no word was heard from them unworthy of the majesty of the Roman people, or of their former victories.

Magnus exercitus egeo magnus dux. Quamvis Cæsar miles diu careo frumentum, et sustento extremus fames, tamen nullus vox audio ab is indignus majestas populus Romanus, aut superior victoria.

He seems to me to live, and enjoy life, who intent on business, pursues the glory of some famous action or useful art. But in the great multitude of affairs, nature has pointed out

Is videor ego vivo, et fruor anima, qui, intentus negotium quaero gloria aliquis præclarus facinus aut bonus ars. Sed in magnus copia res, natura ostendo diversus iter. Sun

different ways. It is a glorious thing to act well for the public, and it is no despicable thing to speak well.

pulcher benefacio respublica, et non sum absurdus benedico.

The victory was the Thebans; but Epaminondas, whilst he performed the office, not only of a general, but also of a very gallant soldier, was grievously wounded. It is uncertain whether he was a better man or general; he was frugal of the public money; he was more greedy of glory than of riches.

Victoria sum Thebanus; sed Epaminondas dum fungor officium non tantum dux, verum etiam fortis miles, graviter vulnero. Sum incertus sumne vir bonus an dux; sum parcus publicus pecunia; sum cupidus gloria quam divitiæ.

After this, Vitellius obtained the government, a man of an honoured rather than noble family; he, as he had a mind to be like Nero, was slain by Vespasian's generals, and, being thrown into the Tiber, wanted common burial.

Dein, Vitellius potior imperium, vir honoratus magis quam nobilis & familia; hic, cum volo sum similis Nero, occido a Vespasianus dux et dejectus in Tiberis, careo communis sepultura.

The Scythians have not any house, or dwelling, or habitation; they carry their wives and children along with them in waggons, which they use instead of houses; they live on milk and venison; the use of wool is quite unknown to them.

Scythæ non sum ullus domus, aut tectum, aut sedes; veho uxor liberique suicum in plaustrum, qui utor pro domus; vescor lac et ferina; usus lana sum prorsus ignotus is.

Do you think that this most beautiful city consists of houses, roofs, and a pile of stones? These dumb and lifeless things may perish, and be repaired: the eternity of the state, and the peace of nations, depend upon the safety of the senate.

Tu credo hic pulcher urbs sto domus, tectum, et congestus lapis? Iste mutus et inanimus possum intercido, ac reparo: æternitas res, et pax gens, incolumitas senatus nitor.

The land of Canaan, into which Moses conducted the Israelites, not only flowed with milk and honey, but with wine also; as ap-

ears from the large bunch of grapes which the spies brought to Moses. It abounded also in springs of water.

The poor man wants some things, the luxurious man many, and the covetous man wants all things.

When Babel was a building, they made use of burnt bricks instead of stone, and slime instead of mortar. Strabo affirms the tower to have been 660 feet high. It consisted of eight square towers, one above another, which gradually decreased in breadth. This with the winding of the stairs from top to bottom on the outside, rendered it in some sort like a pyramid.

Active VERBS governing another case together with the accusativ

VERBA activa alium una cum accusativo casum regentia.

*31. VERBS of accusing, condemning, acquitting, and admonishing, with the accusative of the person, govern also the genitive of the crime or thing.

1. *VERBA accusandi, damnandi, absolvendi, et admonendi, cum ascusativo personæ regunt etiam genitivum criminis aut rei.*

He accuses me of theft.
I condemn myself of laziness.
They acquit him of manslaughter.
We put the grammarians in mind of their duty.

Arguit me furti.
Me ipsum inertiæ condemno.
Illum homicidii absolvunt.
Grammaticos officii sui commonemus.

1. Verbs of ACCUSING are, " accuso, ago, appello, arcesso, anquiro, arguo, incuso, insimulo, interrogo, postulo, alligo, astringo, defero, compello."

2. Verbs of CONDEMNING are, " damno, condemno, infamo, noto."

3. Verbs of ACQUITTING are, " absolvo, libero, purgo."

4. Verbs of ADMONISHING are, " moneo, admoneo, commoneo, commonefacio."

Note 1. Verbs of ACCUSING, CONDEMNING, and ACQUITTING, instead of the genitive, take frequently the ablative, and that either with or without the preposition *de*; as, Cic. *Accusare me de epistolarum negligentia.* Id. *De repetundis eum postulavit.* Id. *De prævaricatione eum absolvere.* Id. *Eum de vi condemnavit.* Id. *Suis eum criminibus accusabo.* Id. *Metuit ne scelere se alliget.* Liv. *Consulem suspicione absolvere.* Cic. *Librarios culpa libero.* Tac. *Adolescentem crimine purgavit.* Virg. *Damnabis tu quoque votis.* Cic. *Condemnabo te eodem crimine.* Eut. *Plurimos capite damnavit.*

Note 2. *Accuso, incuso, insimulo,* sometimes takes two accusatives, as, Plaut. *Si id me non accusas.* Ter. *Quæ me incusaveras.* Plaut. *Sic me insimulare falsum facinus.*

Note 3. Verbs of ADMONISHING, instead of the genitive, take sometimes the ablative with, *de*; as, Cic. *Ut Terentium moneatis de testamento.* Id. *De quo vos paulo ante admonui.* Id. *Te de indulgentia patria commonebat.* And sometimes they govern two accusatives; as, Cic. *Eos hoc moneo.* Ter. *Id unum te moneo.* Id. *Isthuc me admonere.*

Note 4. The genitive, strictly speaking, is not governed by the verbs mentioned in this rule, but by some ablative understood; such as, *crimine, scelere, peccato, culpa, pœna, actione, mulcta, nomine, re, causa, ergo,* &c. as, *Accuso te furti,* i. e. *crimine furti.* And these, or any other ablative, is always governed by *de* or *in* expressed or understood. When verbs of admonishing take two accusatives, *circa,* or *quod ad,* may be understood to the accusative of the thing.

1. He that accuses another of a crime, ought to look well to himself; for it is the property of a fool to accuse another of a fault, of which he himself is guilty.

Qui incuso alter probrum, debeo intueor sui ipse; nam sum stultus accuso alter peccatum, qui ipse sum conscius.

The soldiers were in a rage, and began to charge the tribunes with treason and treachery, and to accuse the centurions of avarice.

Miles fremo, et cœpi arguo tribunus majestas ac proditio, et insimulo centurio avaritia.

The deputies have accused this man of extortion; he cannot govern his tongue, he will make himself guilty of theft or bribery.

Legatus postulo hic homo repetundæ; ipse non possum moderor lingua, alligo sui furtum aut ambitus.

2. Forbear to charge your friend with villany, or reproach him with arrogance: he condemns himself of rashness, he condemns himself of foolishness.

Parco damno amicus tuus scelus, aut infamo is arrogantia; condemno sui ipse temeritas, condemno sui ipse amentia.

3. The senate neither freed the man of the fault, nor accused him; but after he had cleared himself of all the things that were alledged, the judges acquitted him of the trespass.

4. Our infirmity often reminds us of mortality, sickness warns us of death, adversity ought to admonish us of our duty, and put us in mind of religion.

¶ Julius Cæsar was a very spare drinker of wine, and so easy as to his diet; that he is said once to have made use of old oil, served up instead of fresh, that he might not seem to accuse his landlord of carelessness or clownish ignorance.

Not long after, Cœpio and Hispo accused Marcellus, prætor of Bithynia, of high treason. The calamities of the times and the insolence of men rendered Hispo and his way of life afterwards famous: at first he was needy and obscure, but turbulent; he made his court to the cruelty of the prince. There remained even then some traces of expiring liberty.

Capito objected that Thrasea, though invested with the priesthood, had never made oblations for the safety of the prince, and that he had not attended the funeral of Poppea. Capito was an enemy to Thrasea, because he had supported

Senatus nec libero homo culpa, neque arguo; sed postquam purgo sui omnis qui affero, judex absolvo is injuria.

Imbecillitas noster sæpe admoneo ego mortalitas, morbus moneo ego mors, res adversus debeo commonefacio ego officum noster, et commoneo ego religio.

Julius Cæsar sum parcus vinum, et adeo indifferens circa victus, ut dico quondam appeto conditus oleum, appositus proviridis, ne videor arguo hospes negligentia aut rusticitas.

Nec multo post, Cœpio et Hispo postulo Marcellus, prætor Bithynia, majestas. Miseria tempus et audacia homo facio Hispo et forma vita postea celeber, primo sum egens et ignotus, at inquies; adrepo sævitia princeps. Maneo etiam tum quidam vestigium moriens libertas.

Capito objecto, Thrasea, quamvis præditus sacerdotium, nunquam immolo pro salus princeps, et non intersum funus Poppea. Capito sum inimicus Thrasea, quod juvo legatus Cilix, dum

the deputies of the Cilicians when they accused him of extortion.

interrogo is repetundæ.

A certain informer not long ago accused this honest man of a wicked action; the judges however did not find him guilty of the villany, but absolved him from the charge. The cursed rogue was cast into prison, where he leads a life worse than death. He often blames the times for the mishap, of which he himself is the cause.

Delator quidam olim accuso hic probus vir facinus; judex tamen non condemno is scelus, sed absolvo is crimen. Sceleratus homo conjicio in carcer, ubi vita gravis mors exigo. Sæpe damno tempus infelicitas, qui ipse sum causa.

On the other side, the consul bid the Romans remember their former bravery; he put them in mind of the Aventine and Sacred mount, that they should fight for their liberty, which they had lately recovered.

Ex alter pars, consul jubeo Romanus memini pristinus virtus; admoneo is Aventinus, et Sacer mons, ut pugno pro libertas, qui nuper recupero.

When the army of the thirty tyrants, of which the greatest part were Athenians, fled, Thrasybulus called out, and put them in mind of their relations, their laws and their old fellow-ship during so many wars, and begged that they would pity their banished countrymen.

Cum exercitus triginta tyrannus, qui pars magnus sum Atheniensis, fugio, Thrasybulus exclamo, et admuneo is cognatio, lex, et vetustus commilitium per tot bellum, et oro ut misereor exul civis.

Alexander, in his passage, put the Thessalians in mind of the kindness of his father Philip, and his mother's alliance with them by the family of the Æacidæ. The Thessalians heard these things gladly, and made him captain-general of the whole nation.

Alexander, in transitus. admoneo Thessalus beneficium pater Philippus, et maternus necessitudo cum hic ab gens Æacidæ. Thessalus audio hic cupide, et creo is dux universus gens.

Midas requested of Bacchus, that whatever he touched might become gold: Bacchus consented. Whatever, therefore, Midas touched, instantly became gold; nay, when he touched his meat or drink

they also became gold. Midas, now sensible of his mistake, accused himself of folly, and desired Bacchus to remove this pernicious gift. Bacchus complied, and bid him bathe in the river Pactolus. Midas did so; and hence the sand of that river became gold.

Sesostris, king of Egypt, had his chariot drawn by four captive kings, whom he had not condemned to die. But as one of them continually fixed his eye on the chariot-wheel, Sesostris asked him what he meant? The captive king replied, The turning of the wheel puts me in mind of our fortune; for that part which is now highest presently becomes lowest; and that which is lowest becomes highest.

---

* 32. Verbs of valuing, with the accusative, govern such genitives as these, *magni, parvi, nihili, &c.*

2. *Verba æstimandi, cum accusativo, regunt hujusmodi genitivos*, magni, parvi, nihili, &c.

I value you much. *Æstimo te magni.*
You little regard me. *Tu me parvi pendis.*

Verbs of VALUING are, "æstimo, existimo, duco, facio, habeo, pendo, puto, taxo;" to these add *sum* and *fio*, which likewise govern the genitive of value, but do not take the accusative.

The rest of these genitives are, "tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, maximi, minimi, plurimi;" also, "assis, nauci, flocci, pili, teruncii, hujus, pensi."

Note 1. To this rule may be referred these phrases, *æqui bonique facio;* or *æqui boni facio;* and *boni consulo.*

Note 2. The verb *æstimo*, instead of the genitive, takes sometimes these ablatives, *magno, permagno, parvo, nihilo, nonnihilo;* as, Senec. *Data magno æstimas, accepta parvo.* Cic. *Quia sit nonnihilo æstimandum.* Id. *Tu ista permagno æstimas.*

Note 3. The substantive understood to the adjectives, *magni, parvi, &c.* is *pretii, æris, ponderis, momenti,* or the like; and the construction may be thus supplied: *Æstimo te magni*, i. e. *æstimo te* esse hominem *magni* pretii. *Æstimat pecuniam parvi*, i. e. *æstimat pecuniam* esse rem *parvi* momenti, or thus, *æstimo te* pro homine *magni* pretii, *æstimat pecuniam* pro re *parvi* momenti. In like manner,

Isthuc æqui bonique facio, i. e. *facio isthuc* rem *æqui bonique* hominis vel negotii. And someway similar to this is that of Nep. *Quæ ille universa naturali quodam bono fecit lucri*, i. e. *fecit* rem *lucri*.

Epicurus valued pleasure at a great rate; but a wise man values pleasure at a very low rate.

Epicurus voluptas magnum æstimo; sed sapiens voluptas minimum facio.

Brave men little regard big words, and they value threats as nothing.

Vir fortis jactans verbum parvum pendo, et minæ nihilum facio.

I do not value those men a farthing, I do not value the augur a rush, I value you more than them all.

Non is teruncius facio, non nauci augur habeo, tu plus quam omnis ille puto.

That fellow did not value me one penny, he went off, nor did he value a pin what I said.

Iste homo non unus as ego æstimo, abeo, neque qui dico floccus existimo.

Cassius likewise plighted his own faith, which Jugurtha valued no less than that of the public.

Cassius quoque fides suus interpono qui Jugurtha non minus quam publicus duco.

Most men value money very much, and gold is valued a great deal every where.

Plerique homo pecunia maximum facio, et passim plurinum fio aurum.

Every evil is as great as we rate it: a wise man, however, values reputation more than life itself.

Unusquis que malum sum tantum quantum ille taxo: sapiens, tamen, æstimo fama plus quam vita ipse.

There is nobody in all this house, who regards what he either says or does before the child.

Nemo sum in hic totus domus, qui pensum habeo quis coram infans aut dico aut facio.

War makes many bishops, who in peace were not valued so much as a farthing or a pin.

Bellum gigno multus episcopus, qui in pax ne quidem teruncius aut pilus fio.

¶ It is not the part of a wise man to say, I will live well to-morrow. Virtue is the most precious of all things. It is therefore, the part of a fool to despise that which all men ought to value more than riches or pleasure.

Non sum sapiens dico vivo bene cras. Virtus sum preciosus omnis res. Sum itaque stultus sperno is qui omnis debeo æstimo plus quam divitæ aut voluptas.

A wise man values pleasure very little, because it is the bane of the mind, and the cause of all wickedness and misery; but he values no possession more than virtue, because it is an ornament in prosperity, a comfort in adversity, and the fountain of all public and private happiness.

Thebes, both before Epaminondas was born, and after his death, was always subject to a foreign power; on the other hand, as long as he governed the commonwealth, it was the head of all Greece. From which it may be understood, that one man was more worth than the whole city, and that an army is just as much worth as the general is.

Sapiens facio voluptas minimum, quia sum pestis animus, et origo omnis scelus et miseria; sed æstimo nullus possessio plus quam virtus, quia sum ornamentum in res secundus, solatium in adversus, et fons omnis publicus et privatus felicitas.

Thebæ, et ante Epaminondas natus, et post is interitus, perpetuo pareo alienus imperium; contra is, quamdiu ille præsum respublica sum caput totus Græcia. Ex qui possum intelligo, unus homo sum plus quam totus civitas, et exercitus sum tantum quantum imperator.

A boar had made the fountain muddy, out of which a horse of a proud spirit used to drink. The horse, full of wrath, entreated a man that he would assist him against the boar. The man leaped upon the back of the horse and slew the boar. The horse was glad; nothing was more joyful than the foolish horse. The man then spake to the horse thus: I value you more than the boar which I have slain; a horse is the most useful of all quadrupeds; hitherto you have been free from labour; you shall not return to your former way of life. The horse now sadly accused himself of great madness; Pride, says he, hath pushed me on to revenge; my foolish pride is now a grief to my heart; I wish I had forgot the small injury done by the boar; I am no more my own master.

---

33. VERBS of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the dative with the accusative.

3. *VERBA comparandi, dandi, narrandi, et auferendi, regunt dativum cum accusativo.*

I compare Virgil to Homer.	*Comparo Virgilium Homero.*
Give every man his own.	*Suum cuique tribuito.*
You tell a story to a deaf man.	*Narras fabulam surdo.*
He rescued me from death.	*Eripuit me morti.*
Give not up your mind to pleasure.	*Ne addicas animum voluptati.*

1. Verbs of COMPARING are, "comparo, compono, confero, æquo, æquiparo;" also, "antepono, antefero, præpono, præfero; and, postpono, posthabeo, postfero,"&c.

2. Verbs of GIVING are, "do, tribuo, largior, præbeo, ministro, suggero, suppedito." To which add verbs of RESTORING; as, "reddo, restituo, retribuo, rependo, remetior; of ACQUIRING, as, "quæro, acquiro, paro, pario;" of PROMISING, as, "promitto, polliceor, recipio, spondeo;" also, debeo, solvo, assero, vindico, mitto, relinquo," and innumerable others.

3. Verbs of DECLARING are, "narro, dico, memoro, loquor, nuncio, refero, declaro, aperio, expono. explico, significo, indico, monstro, ostendo," &c. To which add verbs of DENYING; as, "nego, inficior;" and CONFESSING; as, "fateor, confiteor," &c.

4. Verbs of TAKING AWAY are, "aufero, adimo, eripio, eximo, demo, surripio, detraho, excutio, extorqueo."&c.

5. To these may be added a great many active verbs, compounded with the prepositions *ad, in, ob, præ, sub,* and innumerable other verbs that cannot be reduced to distinct classes. In short, any active verb may govern the dative with the accusative, when together with the thing done, is also signified the person or thing to or for whom or which it is done.

Note 1. *Comparo, confero, compono,* instead of the dative, take frequently the ablative with *cum;* as, Cic. *Ut hominem, cum homine comparetis.* Sall. *Dicta cum factis componere.* Cic. *Conferte hanc pacem cum illo bello.*

Note 2. Verbs of TAKING AWAY, instead of the dative, have often the ablative with *a, ab, de, e,* or *ex; as,* Ter. *Auferre ab aliquo, triginta minas.* Cic. *Eripite nos ex miseriis.* Plaut. *De magnis divitiis se quid demas, &c.* The preposition is sometimes suppressed; as, Virg. *Vagina eripit ensem.*

Note 3. The accusative is sometimes suppressed; as, *Suplicare alicui,* sc. *genua. Nubere alicui,* sc. *se* vel *vultum. Imponere alicui,* sc. *sarcinam* vel *ridiculi quidpiam. Detrahere alicui,* sc. *laudem. Ignoscere alicui,* sc. *culpam, &c.*

Note 4. These verbs, *hortor, invito, voco, provoco, animo, stimulo, conformo, lacesso, instigo, incito, suscito, allicio, pellicio* and the like instead of the dative, take the accusative, with the preposition *ad*, or sometimes *in*.

1. The covetous man compares great things with small, and disregards every thing in comparison of money. Old men compare themselves with old men, and prefer retirement to business; but boys generally postpone serious matters to diversion.

Avarus compono magnus parvus, et postpono omnis nummus. Senex comparo sui senex, et antefero otium negotium; at puer fere posthabeo serius ludus.

Fools compare themselves with great men, and prefer pleasure to virtue; but wise men put themselves on a level with their inferiors, and prefer friendship to money; they less value wealth than liberty, and prefer death to slavery.

Stultus confero sui magnus et præpono voluptas virtus; sed sapiens æquo sui inferior, et præfero amicitia pecunia; postfero opis libertas, et antepono mors servitus.

2. God hath given an erect countenance to man, bestowed on him many endowments of mind, and granted him the earth for an habitation, which yields grass for cattle, affords flowers for bees, finds food for man, and furnishes fuel for fire.

Deus do sublimis os homo, tribuo is multus dos animus, et largior is terra in domicilium, qui suggero gramen pecus, ministro flos apis, suppedito alimentum homo, et præbeo materia ignis.

If this tyrant will not restore liberty to the citizens, return things to their owners, refund the money to the people, or repay to every one his own, the people ought to seek for themselves another governor, and procure an enemy to their foe.

Si hic tyrannus nolo reddo libertas civis, restituo res dominus suus, retribuo pecunia populus, aut rependo quisque suus, populus debeo quæro alius præfectus sui, atque acquiro hostis inimicus suus.

This covetous fellow lays up riches for others, but he will not gain praise to himself: he had lately betrothed his daughter to a gentleman, to whom he

Hic avarus paro divitiæ alius, sed non pario laus sui: nuper spondeo filia vir, qui polliceor amplus dos; sed non præsto

has promised a large portion; but he will not perform what he has promised to him; for he designs to leave a very great estate to his son.

qui promitto is; nam statuo relinquo permagnus hæreditas filius.

The gentleman who used to send letters and presents to you, begins now to claim and assume high titles to himself; you owe him a great sum, and it is not your part to pay him bad money instead of good; you owe your life to him.

Vir qui soleo mitto litera et munus tu, nunc incipio assero et vindico magnus titulus sui; debeo ille grandis pecunia, et non sum tuus solvo is adulterinus nummus pro bonus; debeo vita ille.

3. This man brings good news to us; he has told the whole affair to his master, and has assigned me the reason why he did so. I give credit to his words, for he does not use to tell a falsehood to any one, but speaks the truth to all; in this affair he has behaved well, I will return him the favour.

Hic homo nuncio res lætus ego; narro omnis res dominus, et memoro ego causa quare ita facio. Tribuo fides verbum, non enim soleo dico falsus quivis, sed loquor verum omnis; hic in res ago bene, refero is gratia.

It is the part of a fool to discover his sentiments to every one, to unfold his thoughts to mockers, to expose his mistakes to enemies, or to open his ears to flatterers; but we may discover any thing to a true friend, or signify our mind to him by a letter.

Sum stultus declaro sententia suus quivis, explico cogitatio suus irrisor, expono error suus inimicus aut aperio auris assentator; at possum indico quivis res verus amicus, aut significo mens is per literæ.

It is the part of a good man to show the way to him that wanders, and point out to him his road. It is also the part of a good man to confess his sins to God, and own his mistakes to men. But he does wickedly, who denies aid to his country, or refuses a legacy to the man to whom the testator hath left it:

Sum bonus vir monstro via errans, et ostendo is iter. Sum etiam bonus vir confiteor peccatum Deus, et fateor error homo. At improbe facio, qui nego opis patria, aut inficior legatum homo qui legator relinquo.

4. Pain takes away the enjoyments of pleasure from men, and often removes sleep from their eyes. Wine removes the load from an anxious spirit, and takes off the gloom from the brows. But it is the property of philosophy ro remove error from the mind.

Dolor aufero fructus voluptas homo, et sæpe adimo somnus oculus. Vinum eximo onus solicitus animus, et demo nubes supercilium. Sed sum proprius philosophia detraho error mens.

Fortune often snatches away wealth from the rich, but she cannot filch away honesty or probity from the virtuous. It is not easy, however, to extort money from a covetous man; you will sooner wrest the club from Hercules. But you may easily strike fire from a flint.

Fortuna sæpe eripio opis dives, at non possum surripio honestas aut probitas bonus. Haud facilis, tamen, sum extorqueo pecunia avarus; cito extorqueo clava Hercules. Sed possum facile excutio ignis silex.

5. A wise man suits himself to nature, and adds virtue to virtue; but a fool gives up his mind to intemperance, and brings misery on his country: sometimes he turns robber, and puts a sword to the throat of his countrymen, he joins wicked fellows as comrades to him, and adds strength to the mischief.

Sapiens accommodo sui natura, et addo virtus virtus; at stultus addico animus intemperantia, et adfero calamitas patria, interdum fio latro, et admoveo gladius jugulum civis, adjungo pravus homo socius sui, et adjicio vires malum.

A brave man easily pardons others many things, himself nothing; he proclaims war against his lusts, but never desires to make war upon his country, or engage himself in civil broils; he rather chooses to fasten his darts in the backs of enemies, to strike a terror into them, or to inflict punishment on criminals.

Fortis vir facile ignosco alius multus, sui nihil; indico bellum cupiditas suus, sed nunquam cupio infero bellum patria, aut infero sui civilis dissensio: malo infigo telum tergum hostis, incutio terror ille, aut irrogo pœna peccans.

We ought to oppose a stout heart to hard fortune; but we ought not to throw ourselves in-

Debeo oppono fortis pectus adversus res; sed non debeo objicio ego telum ho-

among the darts of the enemy, and expose our life to danger without cause, especially now when night begins to spread darkness over the earth.

stis, et offero caput periculum sine causa, præsertim nunc cum nox incipio offundo caligo terra.

The bees prepare meat for the winter; and the king ought to imitate them, and provide those things that are neccessary for war or a siege; he ought to set a general and lieutenants over his forces, and prescribe to every one his duty, that he may be able to prevent access to the enemy.

Apis præparo cibus hiems; et rex debeo imitor is, et paro is qui sum recessarius bellum aut obsidio; debeo præficio dux et legatus copiæ et præscribo unusquisque munia suus, ut possum præcludo aditus hostis.

The king being frighted, puts spurs to his horse, and withdraws himself from the battle; his army was routed and put to flight; the cities and towns soon after began to submit themselves to the conqueror, to put their necks under his yoke, and subject themselves to his government.

Rex territus, subdo calcar equus, et subtraho sui pugna; exercitus is fundo fugoque; urbs et oppidum mox cœpi submitto sui victor, suppono collum jugum, et subjicio sui imperium is.

Gold and poverty have often persuaded men to bad things; but I give thanks to God, that my brother has done you no wrong: I give credit to the words of the messenger more than to yours; I will not shut my ears to the truth.

Aurum et paupertas sæpe suadeo malum homo; sed ago gratia Deus, quod frater meus facio tu nullus injuria: habeo fides verbum nuncius magis quam tuus; nolo claudo auris veritas.

God, who has threatened most dreadful punishment to the wicked, commands us to set bounds to our desires, and give a check to lust; let us, therefore, lend a patient ear to his admonitions; let us not devote ourselves to pleasure, nor give up ourselves to sloth or idleness.

Deus, qui minor gravis supplicium impius, jubeo ego statuo modus cupido noster, et injicio frœnum libido; commodo, igitur, patiens auris monitum is; ne dedo ego voluptas, nequo trado egomet secordia aut ignavia.

Note 4. The general conformed himself to the inclination of the prince, and called the rogues before him; they had provoked us to anger, had challenged us to a combat, had spirited up others to the same crime, and spurred them on to arms. The next day, however, the general invited them all to a feast, and exhorted them to peace.

Dux conformo sui ad voluntas rex, et scelestus ad sui voco; lacesso ego ad ira, provoco ego ad certamen, animo alius ad idem crimen, et stimulo is ad arma. Postridie, tamen, dux invito omnis ad epulæ, et hortor is ad pax.

The love of praise rouses men to their duty, disposes their minds to industry, and incites them to glorious actions. But the love of money prompts men to villainous practices, allures them to wickedness, and entices maids to dishonesty.

Amor laus suscito homo ad officium suus, inclino animus ad diligentia, et incito is ad præclarus facinus. Sed amor nummus instigo vir in malus ars, allicio is ad nequitia, et pellicio virgo ad stuprum.

¶ When Eumenes understood these things, he called his soldiers together, and first he gives them thanks, that none was found who preferred the hopes of a bloody reward to the obligation of his oath; then he cunningly subjoins, that he had forged these letters, that he might try their affections.

Cum Eumenes cognosco hic, convoco miles, et primo ago is gratia, quod nemo invenio qui antepono spes cruentus præmium fides sacramentum; tum callide subnecto sui confingo hic epistola, ut experior animus.

After this Alexander invites his friends to a feast; where, when mention was made of the things which Philip his father had done, he began to prefer himself before his father, and to extol the greatness of his own exploits to heaven, whilst the greater part of the guests said as he said.

Post hic, Alexander voco amicus ad convivium; ubi, cum mentio orior res qui Philippus pater is gero, cæpi præfero sui pater, et extollo magnitudo res suus cœlum tenus, dum magnus pars conviva assentor.

When the ambassadors of the Athenians came to Alcibiades, he promised them the king's

Cum legatus Atheniensis venio ad Alcibiades. polliceor is amicitia rex

friendship, if the government, should be transferred from the people to the senate. The Athenians because the danger of the war hung over them, had a greater care for their safety than honour; wherefore the government is transferred to the senate.

si respublica translatus fàrem a populus ad senatus. Atheniensis, quod periculum bellum is immineo, sum magnus cura salus quam dignitas; itaque imperium transfero ad senatus.

The coming of the Carthaginians into Sicily recalled Dionysius the tyrant, out of Italy. Hanno the Carthaginian was general of that war, whose enemy, Suniatus the most powerful of the Carthaginians, endeavoured to give notice of his coming to Dionysius; but Hanno intercepted the letter, and condemned Suniatus of treachery.

Adventus Carthaginiensis in Sicilia revoco Dionysius tyrannus ex Italia. Hanno Carthaginiensis sum dux is bellum, qui inimicus, Suniatus potens Pœnus, conor prænuncio adventus is Dionysius; sed Hanno comprehendo literæ, et damno Suniatus proditio.

Virginius weeping said never a word a long time; at last he lifted up his hands to Heaven and begged his fellow-soldiers that they would not ascribe the villany of Appius Claudius to him; that they would not abhor him as the murderer of his children. He told them, that the life of his daughter was dearer to him than his own.

Virginius flens mitto nullus vox diu; tandem tendo manus ad cœlum, et oro commilito ne attribuo scelus Appius Claudius sui; ne aversor sui ut parricida liberi. Dico is vita filia sum carus sui suus.

After Alexander, Arrybas's step son, and brother of Olympias, was come to the age of twenty years, Philip, king of Macedonia, took the kingdom of Epire from Arrybas, and gave it to the youth; being wicked towards both: for he did not observe the laws of affinity towards him from whom he took the kingdom, and he

Postquam Alexander, Arrybas privignus, et frater Olympias, pervenio ad ætas viginti annus, Philippus, rex Macedonia, eripio regnum Epirus Arrybas, et do puer; scelestus in uterque; nam non servo jus cognatio in is qui adimo regnum, et facio is qui do impudi-

made him to whom he gave it a debauchee, before he made him a king.

Alexander commends the loyalty of the Persians, as well to their former kings as to himself. He puts them in mind of his kindness to them, how he had never treated them as a conquered people, but as the companions of his victory; and now he says, that he would trust the guard of his person, not only to the Macedonians, but to them too.

Almost all the east appointed divine honours and temples for Jason; which after many years, Parmenio, a general of Alexander the great, ordered to be pulled down, lest the name of any one should be more venerable in the east than the name of Alexander. After the death of Jason, Medius his son built the city Medea, in honour of his mother.

The Athenians, therefore, against so great a storm of war chose two generals, Pericles, a man of tried conduct, and Sophocles, the writer of tragedies; who both laid waste the lands of the Spartans, and added many cities of Achaia to the empire of the Athenians. This affair procured to the generals the love of the citizens.

Wherefore, as all the pretenders were invited to the wedding, the Grecian strangers are desired likewise to the feast;

cus, antequam facio rex.

Alexander laudo fides Perssæ tum in pristinus rex tum in sui. Admoneo is beneficium suus in is, ut nunquam habeo is quasi victus, sed veluti socius victoria; et nunc aio, sui credo custodia corpus suus, non tantum Macedo, sed is etiam.

Totus fere oriens constituo divinus honor templum Jason; qui, post multus annus, Parmenio, dux Alexander magnus, jubeo diruo, ne nomen quisquam sum venerabilis in oriens nomen Alexander. Post mors Jason, Medius is filius condo urbs Medea in honor mater.

Atheniensis, igitur, adversus tantus tempestas bellum, deligo duo dux, Pericles, vir spectatus virtus, et Sophocles, scriptor tragœdia; quiet vasto ager Spartanus, et adjicio multus civitas Achaia imperium Atheniensis. Is res concilio dux amor civis.

Itaque, cum omnis procus invito ad nuptiæ Græcus hospes rogo et am ad convivium; deinde vir-

then the young lady being introduced, was ordered by her father to deliver water to him, whom she chose for her husband. She turning to the Greeks, delivers the water to Protis, who afterwards built Messilia nigh the mouth of the River Rhone.

Claudius Cæsar made war upon Britain, which none of the Romans after Julius Cæsar had meddled with; he added likewise some islands lying in the ocean beyond Britain to the Roman empire, which are called the Orkneys, and gave the name of Britannicus to his son.

Vespasian was a prince of most charming goodness, as who did not easily punish those guilty of treason against him beyond the pain of banishment; but he was too greedy of money yet so that he took it from nobody unjustly, and bestowed it very liberally on people in want. He added two very potent nations, twenty towns, and the isle of Wight near Britain, to the Roman empire. Under him too Judea was added to the Roman empire, and Jerusalem, the most famous city of Palestine.

Cyrus takes Sybaris, and returns to Persepolis; where he called the people together, and orders them all to be ready with hatchets, and cut down the wood which hung over the

go introductus, jubeo a pater porrigo aqua is, qui eligo vir. Ille conversus ad Græcus, porrigo aqua Protis, qui postea condo Massilia prope ostium amnis Rhodanus.

Claudius Cæsar infero bellum Britannia, qui nullus Romanus post Julius Cæsar attingo; addo etiam quidam insula positus in oceanus ultra Britannia Romanus imperium, qui appello Orcades, imponoque nomen Britannicus filius suus.

Vespasianus sum princeps placidus bonitas, ut qui non facile punio reus majestas contra sui ultra pœna exilium; sed sum avidus pecunia, tamen, ita ut aufero is nullus injuste, et largior is studiose indigens. Adjicio duo validus gens, viginti oppidum, et insula Vectæ proximus Britannia, Romanus imperium. Sub hic quoque Judea accedo Romanus imperium, et Hierosolyma, clarus urbs Palestina.

Cyrus assumo Sybaris, et regredior Persepolis; ubi convoco populus, et jubeo omnis præsto sum cum securis, et excido sylva qui immineo via; qui

highways; which when they had readily done, he invites them all to a feast the day after.

cum strenue facio, invito omnis ad epulum postridie.

Annibal's advice pleased king Antiochus; wherefore one of Annibal's companions is sent into Africa to the Carthaginians. to encourage them to the war, and tell them that Annibal would come presently with an army; that nothing was wanting but the countenance of the Carthaginians.

Annibal consilium placeo rex Antiochus; quare unus ex comes Annibal mitto in Africa ad Carthaginiensis, ut hortor is ad bellum et nuncio Annibal mox venio cum exercitus; nihil desum nisi animus Carthaginiensis.

While all were amazed at the cruel tyranny of Aristotimus, Hellenicus, an old man, who had no children, gathers together his friends, and exhorts them to the delivery of their country. They conspire together against the tyrant's life, and Aristotimus is taken off.

Cum omnis stupeo ad sævus dominatio Aristotimus, Hellenicus, senex, qui nullus liberi sum, contraho amicus suus, et hortor is ad vindicta patria. Conjuro in caput tyrannus et Aristotimus opprimo.

It is a commendable thing for a boy to apply his mind to the study of good letters; they will be always useful to him, they will procure him the favour and love of good men, which those that are wise value more than riches and pleasure.

Laudabilis sum puer adjungo animus ad studium bonus litera; sum semper utilis ille, concilio ille favor et amor bonus, qui qui sapio æstimo plus quam divitiæ et voluptas.

God has bestowed upon all his creatures some arms or weapons for their defence: To the birds he has given wings, to the lions strength; horns to bulls; stings to the bees; and to man he hath given wisdom, which is a more excellent weapon, and sharper than a two edged sword.

Do not, says Hanno, give yourselves up to an immoderate joy; Mago deceives you. They are only imaginary triumphs he promises you. If we are to believe him, Annibal has cut the Roman armies to pieces; why, therefore, does he ask more soldiers? He has twice taken and plundered the Roman camp; he is loaded with booty: why, therefore, should we send him more money and provisions. The Romans do not desire peace, and consequently are not so much humbled as he would persuade us. Let us not exhaust ourselves merely to satisfy Annibal's pride.

When Caius, a Roman nobleman, had beaten Pyrrhus, king of Epire, and driven him out of Italy, he divided some lands among his soldiers; to every man he distributed four acres, and reserved no more for himself; for none, said he, ought to be a general, who will not be content with the share of a common soldier; I would rather, quoth he, rule over rich men, than be rich myself.

There are a great many miseries, to which nothing but death can give relief. Death puts an end to the sorrows of the afflicted and oppressed; it sets the prisoner at liberty; it dries up the tears of the widows and fatherless: it eases the complaints of the hungry and naked; it tames the proudest tyrants; and puts an end to all our labours.

---

* 34. VERBS of asking and teaching admit of two accusatives, the first of a person, and the second of a thing.

3. *VERBA rogandi et docendi duos admittunt accusativos, priorem personæ, posteriorem rei.*

Beg pardon of God. — *Posce Deum veniam.*
He taught me grammar. — *Docuit me grammaticam.*

1. Verbs of ASKING are, "rogo, oro, exoro, obsecro, "precor, posco, reposco, flagito."
2. Verbs of TEACHING are, "doceo, edoceo, dedo-"ceo, crudio."

Note 1. The verb *celo* also governs two accusatives; as *Cela hanc rem uxorem*, conceal this affair from your wife. But we also say, *Celo te de hac re*, and *celo tibi hanc rem.*

Note 2. Verbs of ASKING often change the accusative of the person into the ablative, with *a, ab, or abs;* as Plaut. *Ab amico argentum roges.* Cic. *Quid studia a te flagitent tu videbis.* Virg. *Veniam oremus ab ipso.* Plaut. *Res quædam est, quam volo ego me abs te exorare.*

Note 3. Verbs of TEACHING frequently change the accusative of the thing into the ablative with *de*, as Cic. *Quid est tam arrogans, quam de rebus divinis collegium pontificum docere?* Sall. *de itinere hostium senatum edocet.*

Note 4. We say, *instruo, instituo, formo, informo, imbuo, aliquem artibus*, generally without any preposition.

Note 5. Other verbs are sometimes found construed with two accusatives; as, Ter. *Argentum, quod habes, condonamus te.* Cic.

Literas ad te, a consule, non quæ te aliquid juberent, sumpsimus.—Ter. *Scin, quod ego te volebam.* Sall. *Multa prius de salute sua Pomptinum obtestatus.*

Note 6. The accusative of the thing is not governed by the verb, but by *ad, quod ad, secundum, circa,* &c. understood.

1. When I ask money of you without a pawn, you say I have none.

Cum rogo tu nummus sine pignus, non habeo, inquam.

This one thing I beg of you, that you would give over lying; grant that I may obtain this favour of you.

Hic unus tu oro, ut desino mentior; sine ut exoro tu hic venia.

We all beg peace of you, the soldiers beseech this of you, the general himself intreats this of you.

Pax tu posco omnis, miles tu hic obsecro, dux ipse hic tu precor.

He ordered that they should go to Verres and demand of him the statue of Ceres and Victory.

Jubeo ut adeo ad Verres, et reposco is simulacrum Ceres et Victoria.

I have a bounteous stock of natural sense, and the rich court me though poor; I importune the gods for nothing more, nor do I dun my potent friend for greater things.

Sum ego benignus vena ingenium, divesque ego peto pauper; lacesso deus nihil supra, nec flagito potens amicus largus.

2. Poverty teaches some men temperance, and makes them relinquish their former fashions, but those men act wisely, who ask life, health and subsistence of God.

Egestas doceo aliquis temperantia et dedoceo is prior mos; sed hic homo ago prudenter, qui rogo deus vita, salus, et victus.

Minerva taught Telemachus all her arts, she taught him the laws and precepts of war.

Minerva edoceo Telemachus omnis ars suus, erudio is lex præceptumque bellum.

Note 4. Instruct this boy in the Greek and Latin languages he is a youth of extraordinary hopes, and of the highest virtue; instruct him in all the arts

Instituo hic puer Græcus et Latinus litera, sum adolescens eximius spes, et summus virtus; instruo ille omnis ars qui tu ipse

which you yourself have studied; and this I chiefly beg of you, that you season his mind with piety.

studeo; et hic præsertim tu oro, ut animus is pietas imbuo.

¶ The people conferred on him the sovereignty; they did not take the advice of the more elderly, nor ask them their opinion. Thus whilst they are angry at the senate's power they deliver themselves, with their wives and children, into slavery; wherefore the tyrant seizes sixty senators, lays them in chains, and threatens them with death.

Plebs defero is summus imperium; non consulo senior, neque rogo is sententia suus. Ita dum irascor senatus potentia, trado sui, cum conjux et liberi, in servitus; itaque tyrannus comprehendo sexaginta senator, compingo in vinculum, et minor ille mors.

After they all with tears had begged peace with the king, he replied, if they would give him pledges, that he might know they would do the things which they had promised, and if they would satisfy his allies and neighbours for the injuries which they had done him, that he would make peace with them.

Postquam omnis cum lacryma posco rex pax, respondeo, si do sui obses, ut intelligo is facio is qui polliceor, et si satisfacio socius et finitimus suus de injuria qui infero ipse, sui facio pax cum is.

Vitellius, bent on the death and punishment of almost every one, cut off a great many noblemen; he scarcely spared any of the usurers and publicans, who had ever demanded of him a debt or duty; he put to death also some of the commons, because they had cursed the blue faction.

Vitellius, pronus ad nex atque supplicium fere quisque, occido multus nobilis vir; vix parco ullus fœnerator publicanus que, qui unquam flagito sui debitum aut portorium; interimo et quidam de plebs quod maledico venetus factio.

After him, Marcus Antonius held the government alone, a man of the most frank generosity, whom all men admired: he was trained up to philosophy by Apollonius; to the knowledge

Post is, Marcus Antonius teneo respublica solus, vir promptus liberalitas, qui omnis miror; instituo ad philosophia per apollonius; ad scientia Græcus

of the Greek tongue by Sextus, the grand son of Plutarch; Fronto the orator taught him the Latin tongue.

Pythagoras taught the matrons chastity, and complaisance to their husbands; he taught the boys modesty, and the study of letters; amidst these things he inculcated upon all frugality as the mother of virtues; he recommended temperance, and recounted every day the mischiefs of luxury. So great was the admiration of this man, that, after his death, they made a temple of his house, and worshipped him for a god.

Catiline taught the youth whom he had seduced, many wicked practices; for as every one's fancy, according to their age was fired, he furnished whores to some, bought dogs and horses for others; in short he spared neither expense nor his own modesty, provided he could make them subject and trusty to him.

litera per Sextus, nepos Plutarchus; Fronto orator doceo is Latinus litera.

Pythagoras doceo matrona pudicitia, et obsequium in vir; doceo puer modestia, et studium litera; inter hic ingero omnis frugalitas, velut genetrix virtus; laudo temperantia, et enumero quotidie vitium luxuria. Tantus sum admiratio hic vir, ut, post mors is, facio, templum ex domus is, coloque is pro deus.

Catilina edoceo juventus qui illicio, multus malus facinus; nam uti quisque studium, ex ætas flagro, præbeo scortum alius, mercor canis atque equus alius; postremo, parco neque sumptus neque modestia suus, dum facio ille obnoxius fidusque sui.

Solomon asked wisdom of God; and God said unto him, because thou hast asked this thing, and hast not asked of me long life, nor riches, nor the life of thine enemies, behold I have done according to thy word! Lo! I have given thee a wise and understanding heart, and have also given thee that which thou hast not asked, riches and honour.

Before Jove, no husbandman manured the fields; the earth of itself produced every thing. But now, sturdy steers turn up the soil, harrows break the sluggish clods, and the swains pray to the gods for moist summers and serene winters.

When Hercules killed the giants Albion and Bergion, his arrows were wasted in the fight, so that he wanted arms; wherefore he begged aid of Jupiter, and obtained from him a shower of stones.

Teach thy son obedience, and he shall bless thee; teach him tem-

perance, and he shall have health; teach him prudence, and fortune shall attend him; teach him science, and his life shall be useful; teach him religion, and his death shall be happy.

---

* 35. Verbs of filling, loading, binding, depriving, clothing, and some others, require the accusative with the ablative.

5. *Verba implendi, onerandi, astringendi, privandi, vestiendi, et quædam alia, accusativum cum ablativo petunt.*

He filled the bowl with wine.	*Implevit patĕram mero.*
They load the ship with gold.	*Navem onerant auro.*
He bound Gaul in fetters.	*Vinculis Galliam astrinxit.*
He deprived his father of life.	*Patrem vita privavit.*
He clothed the wall with pictures.	*Parietem tabulis vestiebat.*
He exchanges squares for rounds.	*Mutat quadrata rotundis.*
We present you with this pipe.	*Hac te donamus cicuta.*
You give me great joy.	*Afficis me magna lætitia.*

1. Verbs of FILLING are, "mpleo, compleo, expleo, "repleo, saturo, obsaturo, satio, refercio, ingurgito, dito," and the like.

2. Verbs of LOADING are, "onero, cumulo, premo, "opprimo, operio, obruo:" to which add verbs of UNLOADING; such as, "levo, exonero."

3. Verbs of BINDING are, "astringo, alligo, devincio, "impedio, irretio, illaqueo," &c. to which add verbs of LOOSING; such as, "solvo, exsolvo, libero, laxo, "expedio."

4. Verbs of DEPRIVING are, "privo, nudo, orbo:" to which add verbs of SPOILING; such as, "spolio, "fraudo, emungo."

5. Verbs of CLOTHING are, "vestio, amicio, induo, "cingo, tego, velo, corono, calceo:" to which add their contraries, "exuo, discingo."

6. The other verbs belonging to this rule are, "muto, "dono, munero, remunero, communico, pasco, beo, im-

"pertior, dignor, afficio, prosequor, spargo, incesso, insec-
"tor, oblecto," and the like.

Note 1. *Impleo, compleo,* and *expleo,* sometimes takes the accusative and genitive; as, Liv. *Adolescentem suæ temeritatis implet.* Plaut. *Erroris illos, et dementiæ completo.* Virg. *Animumque explesse juvabit ultricis flammæ.* And among the more ancient authors, also, *saturo* and *obsaturo:* as, Plaut. *Hæ res vitæ me saturant.* And hence their passives sometimes retain the genitive; as, Virg. *Implentur veteris Bacchi.* Cic *Cum completus jam mercatorum carcer esset.* Lucret. *Sanguinis expletis naribus.* Ter *Istius obsaturabere.*

Note 2. These passive verbs of clothing, *induor, amicior, vestior, cingor, accingor;* also, *exuor, discingor,* and their participles, have frequently the accusative with the poets; as, Ovid. *Induitur faciem cultumque Dianæ.* Virg. *Inutile ferrum cingitur.* Id. *Exuvias indutus Achillei.* Claud. *Canas vestita nives.* Sil. *Exuta pudorem.* But with prose authors they have the ablative; as, Curt. *Veste Arabica induitur.* Liv. *Hispano cingitur gladio.* Cic. *Pallium quo amictus.* Tac. *Exutus omnibus fortunis.*

Note 3. *Pascor* dep. instead of the ablative, sometimes takes the accusative; as, Virg. *Pascuntur sylvas.*

Note 4. The ablative is not governed by the verbs belonging to this rule, but by some preposition understood; such as, *a, ab, de, e, ex, cum, pro;* and which are sometimes expressed; as, Mart. *De flava loculos implere moneta.* Cic. *Arcem urbis ab incendio liberavi.* Liv. *Laxare animum a laboribus.* Cæs. *Solvere naves e portu.* Sall. *Mutare bellum pro pace.* Plin. *Mentionem alicujus cum honore summo prosequi.* When the passive verbs of clothing take the accusative, *ad, quoad,* or *per,* is understood. And when any verb belonging to this rule takes the genitive, some ablative, such as, *re, negotio, causa,* or the like, with a preposition, is understood.

Note 5. Several of these ablatives may be referred to the cause, manner or instrument, of which in No. 53.

1. The tyrant filled his country with blood and slaughter, he filled the city with havock and carnage, he filled every house with mourning, which filled men's ears with dismal stories.

After he had satiated himself with revenge, after he had glutted himself with slaughter, after he had satiated himself with the blood of citizens, he sat down to a feast, and glutted himself with meat and drink.

Tyrannus impleo patria sanguis et cædes, repleo civitas strages et internecio, compleo omnis domus luctus, qui refercio homo auris dirus rumor.

Postquam expleo sui ultio, postquam satio sui cædes, postquam saturo sui sanguis civis, accumbo epulum, et ingurgito sui cibus potusque.

2. After they had loaded the altar with presents, they disburden themselves of cares, and load the ships with arms and provision, and sailing out of the harbour, they covered the whole sea with their fleet.

Postquam cumulo altare donum, exonero sui cura, et onero navis arma et commeatus, et egressus e portus operio totus pelagus classis.

But Æolus, who controls the winds with imperial sway, had resolved, when night should cover the earth with darkness, to bury them under the waves, whilst there should be none at hand that could relieve their minds from the distress.

At Æolus, qui ventus imperium premo, statuo, cum nox obruo terra tenebræ, opprimo is fluctus, dum nullus adsum qui levo animus ægritudo.

3. You will easily gain over good men by acts of kindness; but it is necessary to tie up some men by laws, to bind others with chains, that they may not obstruct the public good by their private quarrels.

Facile devincio bonus beneficium; at necesse sum ligo quidam lex, astringo alius vinculum, ni impedio bonum publicus privatus simultas.

The wicked endeavour to ensnare others with the allurements of vice; but they cannot disengage themselves from troubles or extricate themselves from sorrows; for though fortune sometimes delivers them from punishment, she never frees them from fear.

Malus conor irretio alius illecebræ vitium; at non possum laxo sui molestia, aut expedio sui ærumna; licet enim fortuna interdum libero is supplicium, nunquam solvo is metus.

4. This new philosophy deprives us of our rest, despoils us of our judgment, bereaves us of our senses; it cheats the young men out of their diversions, cozens the old men out of their money, nay, it robs the temples of presents.

Hic novus philosophia privo ego quies, spolio ego judicium, orbo ego sensus; fraudo adolescens oblectamentum, emungo senex argentum, imo nudo fanum donum.

5. The ancients used to clothe their bodies with the skins of wild beasts, and to cover the

Vetustus soleo vestio corpus spolium fera, et velo delubrum deus frons;

temples of the gods with boughs; but men now clothe themselves with garments of silk, even when winter has covered the earth with snow.

at nunc homo induo sui sericus vestimentum, etiam cum bruma amicio terra nix.

The Athenians used to crown their conquerors with olive, or bedeck the temples of their heads with laurel, when they had forced an enemy from their camp, or saved a citizen by their arms; they used also to crown their poets with ivy or laurel; they shod their comedians with sandals, and their tragedians with buskins.

Atheniensis soleo corono victor olea, aut cingo tempus laurus, cum exuo hostis castra, aut tego civis arma; soleo etiam corono poeta hedera aut laurus; comœdus calceo soccus, et tragœdus cothurnus.

6. The man who doth not pursue his enemy with curses, nor maul him with darts, but exchanges resentment for friendship, is worthy to be loved. The poets will present him with immortality, they will reward him with encomiums, they will extol him with honour, and celebrate him with praises. Others will enrich him with gifts, and entertain him at their table.

Vir qui non insector inimicus maledictum, aut incesso is jaculum, sed muto ira amicitia, sum dignus amo. Poeta dono is æternitas, remuneror is elogium, afficio is honor, et prosequor is laus. Alius beo is munus, et communico is mensa.

That fellow bestrews the ground with leaves, he feeds himself with herbs, and amuses himself with trifles; I will not compliment him with a salutation, I will not dignify him with such an honour.

Iste homo spargo humus folium, pasco sui herba, et oblecto sui nugæ; ego non impertior is salus, haud dignor is talis honor.

¶ Some men value reputation more than riches, or life itself; wherefore the tyrant, while he thinks himself despised, is in a rage, and resolves to fill the city with slaughter;

Quidam æstimo fama plus quam divitiæ, aut vita ipse; itaque tyrannus, dum puto sui contemno, sævio, et statuo repleo civitas cædes; sed de nihilum

but it was to no purpose to be angry with those who did not value him a rush.

When Alcibiades returned, the Athenians loaded him not only with all human honour, but divine; they compensated his losses with presents: they had not the unfortunate battle of Sicily in their mouths, but the conquest of Greece: nor did they make mention of Syracuse, but of Ionia and the Hellespont.

After he had obliged the neighbouring princes with acts of kindness and complaisance, he lays a plot for his sister's son, whom he resolves to deprive of life and of his possessions; and he would have robbed him of his kingdom, had not a mutiny of the soldiers ensued, whom he had cheated of their pay.

At Alesia, Cæsar drew two ditches fifteen feet broad, the innermost of which he filled with water conveyed from the river. This the enemy afterwards endeavoured to cover over with hurdles, and fill up with the rampart.

Varro says, that he had a lioness of marble, and winged Cupids sporting with her, some of which were holding her tied fast, others were forcing her to drink out of a horn, others were shoeing her with sandals, and that all were of one stone.

Such was the slaughter of the scattered soldiers, that the Athenians sustained more dam-

sum irascor ille qûi is non floccus facio.

Cum Alcibiades redeo, Atheniensis onero is non tantum omnis humanus honor, sed divinus; expleo detrimentum munus: non ille in ossum adversus pugna Sicilia, sed victoria Græcia; nec Syracusæ, sed Ionia, Hellespontusque, memini.

Postquam devincio finitimus rex beneficium et obsequium, soror filius insidiæ instruo, qui statuo privo vita et possesio; et spolio is regnum, ni seditio miles insequor, qui stipendium fraudo.

Apud Alesia, Cæsar perduco duo fossa quindecim pes latus, qui interior compleo aqua ex flumen derivatus. Hic hostis postea conor intego crates atque expleo agger.

Varro trado, sui habeo leæna marmorius, aligerque Cupido ludens cum is, qui alius teneo is religatus, alius cogo is bibo ex cornu, alius calceo is soccus, et omnis sum ex unus lapis.

Tantus sum cædes palans miles, ut Atheniensis accipio plus vulnus in is

age in that battle, than they had caused in the former; and so great was the despair among the Athenians, that immediately they changed their general Alcibiades for Conon.

prælium, quam do in superior; et tantus sum desperatio apud Atheniensis, ut statim muto dux Alcibiades Conon.

If I shall only touch upon the most considerable virtues of Pelopidas, I fear, lest it may less plainly appear to those ignorant of the Greek tongue how great a man he was: after his death the cities of Thessaly complimented his children with a great deal of land.

Si tantum modo summus virtus Pelopidas attingo, vereor, ne rudis Græcus litera minus lucide appareo quantus vir ille sum: post mors, civitas Thessalia liberi is multus ager dono.

He was glad that his rival was forced into banishment, and rejoiced at his misfortune; but never did an exile affect the eyes of beholders with greater compassion: his enemies indeed filled the palace with shoutings, but the people bedecked his statues with flowers.

Gaudeo æmulus ago in exilium, et lætor casus is; sed nunquam exul oculus visens magnus misericordia afficio: inimicus quidem compleo palatium clamor, sed populus imago is flos spargo.

The Germans do not mind husbandry, and the greater part of their food consists in milk, and cheese, and flesh: nor has any one a certain portion of land or distinct boundaries, lest, taken with the pleasantness of fields, they should exchange the study of war for agriculture.

Germanus agricultura non studeo, magnusque pars victus is lac, et caseus, et caro, consisto; neque quisquam certus modus ager, aut finis proprius, habeo, ne, captus amœnitas ager studium bellum agricultura commuto.

Two brothers, kings of Thrace, chose Philip king of Macedonia, umpire of their differences; but Philip at first filled their minds with vain hopes, at last he bound both princes with chains, robbed them of their kingdom, and stripped them of all their possessions.

The Chimæra, according to the poets, is a monster which vomiteth forth fire; he hath the head and breast of a lion, the belly of a goat and the tail of a dragon. A volcano in Lycia gave occasion to this fable; for in the top of the mountain were lions, the middle of it abounded with goats, and the bottom of it was full of serpents.

Bellerophon rendered the mountain [illegible] and hence he is said to have bound the monster with fetters, [illegible] killed or deprived the Chimæra of life

Hamilcar being chose general, discharged that office with great applause. He soon restored to his country all the revolted cities, and among these Utica and Hippo, the strongest of all Africa. Nor was he content with this, but likewise extended the bounds of the empire. He subdued several great and warlike nations in Spain; and enriched all Africa with horses, arms, men, and money.

ANNOTATIO.

* 36. The passives of such active verbs, as govern two cases, do still retain the last of them.

Quorum activa duos casus regunt, eorum passiva posteriorem retinent.

I am accused of theft.	*Accusor furti.*
Slaves are rated at more.	*Mancipia pluris æstimantur.*
Virgil is compared to Homer.	*Virgilius comparatur Homero.*
I am taught grammar.	*Doceor grammaticam.*
The bowl is filled with wine.	*Patera impletur mero.*

1. The passives of verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, and admonishing, retain the genitive.

2. The passives of verbs of valuing, retain the genitives *magni, parvi, nihili, &c.*

3. The passives of verbs of comparing, giving, declaring and taking away, retain the dative.

4. The passives of verbs of asking and teaching, retain the accusative of the thing.

5. The passives of verbs of filling, loading, binding, depriving, clothing, &c. retain the ablative.

I. He was accused of most heinous crimes, but he was cleared of all, and deservedly; for he was accused of faults, of which he was innocent.

Accuso gravis scelus, sed obsolvo omnis, et merito: nam arguo culpa, qui sum insons.

Albucilla, the famous woman, was accused of disaffection toward the emperor; but she was accused of this crime by her enemies.

Albucilla, famosus mulier, defero impietas in princeps; sed compello hic crimen ab inimicus.

One was condemned for murder, another was condemned for extortion, a third was condemned for bribery and the public money.

Alius damno cædes, alius damno repetundæ, alius condemno ambitus et publicus pecunia.

If any Roman knight was seen to have a horse somewhat lean, or not very sleek, he was censured for clownish carelessness.

Si quis Romanus eques videor habeo equus gracilentus, aut parum nitidus, noto impolitia.

We are admonished of many things by our friends: do not therefore take it ill that you are put in mind of your duty.

Admoneo multus ab amisus; nolo igitur ægre fero tu officium tuus commoneo.

2. Silver is valued much, gold is valued more, but virtue ought to be valued most.

Argentum æstimo magnum, aurum æstimo plus sed virtus debeo æstimo plurimum.

The sayings of wise men are sometimes little esteemed, but the words of a fool are always regarded less.

Dictum sapiens interdum parvum existimo, sed verbum stultus minor semper duco.

3. Death is rightly compared to sleep, and fortune is very rightly compared to the wind, to which it is very like.

Mors recte comparo somnus, et fortuna recte comparo ventus, qui sum similis.

Speech is given to all, wisdom to few; and the way to true happiness is shown to us from the word of God only.

Sermo do cunctus, sapientia pauci; et via ad verus felicitas ostendo ego ex verbum Deus solus.

Virtue can neither be forced away, nor stolen away from any one; but nobody can serve pleasure and virtue together.

Virtus nec possum eripio, nec surripio quisquam; at nemo possum servio voluptas et virtus simul.

4. The consul, when he understood these things were designed, calls the senate; and Si-

Consul, ubi cognosco is paro, convoco senatus; et Silanus primus rogo sen-

lanus was first asked his opinion because he was consul elect.

Nor was the earth called upon for corn and food only, but riches are dug up, and now the iron comes out, and gold more hurtful than iron.

This age is fertile in vice; a young lady takes pleasure to be taught the Ionic dances, and thinks on love from her tender years.

5. Neither are bees satisfied with heather, nor kids with leaves, nor cruel love with tears.

The man is amused with trifles, he is surfeited with feasting; but the sea is not overcharged with waters. The vallies are covered with darkness, though the mountains are clothed with snow.

¶ When Pausanias, king of the Lacedemonians, came to the assistance of the Athenians he made peace bewixt Thrasybulus and those who held the town. Thrasybulus also made a law, that nobody should be called to an account for things past, nor punished; and they called that an act of oblivion.

He that is accused of a wicked action, or he that is called in question about any thing, is called in Latin *reus:* but he that is accused of a fault, is not consequently in a fault; nor ought he to be accounted guilty of the crime till it be proved; for if to accuse any one of a crime

tentia, quod sum consul designatus.

Nec humus tantum posco seges alimentumque, sed opis effodio, jamque ferrum prodeo, et aurum nocens ferrum.

Hic seculum sum fœcundus culpa; virgo gaudeo doceo motus Ionicus, et meditor amor de tener unguis.

Nec cytisus saturo apis, nec frons capella, nec lacryma crudelis amor.

Homo oblecto nugæ, onero epulæ; at fretum non satio aqua. Vallis tenebræ tego, licet mons amicio nix.

Cum Pausanias, rex Lacedæmonius, venio auxilium Atticus, facio pax inter Thrasybulus et is, qui teneo urbs. Thrasybulus quoque fero lex, ne quis accuso anteactus res, neve multo; appelloque is lex oblivio.

Qui accuso facinus, aut qui postulo de res aliquis, voco Latine reus: *sed qui accuso culpa, non sum continuo in culpa; nec debeo existimo conscius crimen, donec probo; nam si accuso aliquis crimen sum satis*

were sufficient for condemnation, who could be safe?

Who doubts but many innocent persons have been tried for life and condemned to death; and that a great many wicked villains have been tried for life, and absolved from the crimes of which they were guilty? But they will not escape in the world to come, God will not absolve them from the wickedness which they have committed.

Hippias ordered the murderer of his brother to be seized; who, being forced by torments to name those that were guilty of the murder, named all the tyrant's friends, who were slain. Thus the citizens were put in mind of their liberty, and Hippias was forced into banishment.

If cunning valuers of things esteem meadows and fields at a great rate, because that sort of possession can least be damaged, at how great a rate ought virtue to be esteemed, which can neither be forced away nor stolen from any one?

After some days another letter of Darius is delivered to Alexander, in which the marriage of a daughter, and a part of his kingdom are offered him; but Alexander returned answer, that his own was given him, and ordered Darius to come, and leave the disposal of his kingdom to the conqueror.

When Eumenes was returned to the camp, letters were

ad condemnatio, quis possum sum tutus?

Quis dubito quin multus homo innocens accuso caput, et damno caput; et multus homo facinorosus accuso caput, et obsolvo crimen, qui sum conscius? Sed non effugio in seculum futurus, Deus non absolvo is scelus qui perpetro.

Hippias jubeo interfector frater suus comprehendo, qui coactus per tormentum nomino is, qui sum conscius cædes, nomino omnis tyrannus amicus, qui interficio. Sic civis admoneo libertas, et Hippias ago in exilium.

Si callidus æstimator res æstimo pratum et area magnum, quod is genus possessio possum minime lædo; quantum debeo virtus æstimo, qui nec possum eripio nec surripio quisquam?

Post aliquot dies, alius epistola Darius reddo Alexander, in qui matrimonium filia et portio regnum offero is: sed Alexander rescribo suus do sui, et jubeo Darius venio, et permitto arbitrium regnum victor.

Cum Eumenes reverto in castra, litera invenio

found scattered through the camp, in which great rewards were promised to those, that should bring the head of Eumenes to Antigonus. But this project was vain, for none of the soldiers woul betray their general.

abjectus per castra, in qui magnus præmium promitto is, qui defero caput Eumenes ad Antigouus. Sed hic consilium sum irritus, nam nemo miles volo prodo imperator.

He that only pleases himself, does himself no kindness, because he displeases God his creator, who commands us to be kind and good to all men, and to do to others those things, which we incline should be done to ourselves. This precept is delivered to us in the gospel, and comprehends almost the whole duty of a Christian.

Qui tantum placeo sui, non prosum sui, quia displiceo Deus creator suus, qui jubeo ego sum benignus et beneficus omnis, et facio alius is, qui volo fio ego ipse. Hic præceptum trado ego in evangelium, et complector pene totus officium Christianus.

Trajan succeeded him, descended of an ancient rather than an illustrious family; he so managed the government, that he is deservedly preferred to all the emperors. He was a man of unusual moderation and bravery; he extended far and wide the boundaries of the Roman empire, which had been defended rather, after Augustus, than nobly enlarged.

Trajanus succedo is, natus antiquus magis quam clarus familia; ita administro respublica, ut merito præfero omnis princeps. Sum vir inusitatus civilitas et fortitudo: diffundo longe lateque finis Romanus imperium, qui sum defensus magis, post Augustus, quam nobiliter ampliatus.

When Cato was asked his opinion, he made a speech to this purpose: Do you demur, quoth he, what you should determine with respect to the most barbarous parricides? They have conspired to set their country in flames; they solicit to the war the nation of the Gauls, the most spiteful to the Roman state.

Cum Cato rogo sententia, habeo oratio hujuscemodi: Tu cunctor, inquam ille, quis statuo de crudelis parricida? Conjuro incendo patria; arcesso ad bellum gens Gallus, infestus Romanus nomen.

Cicero had been informed of

Cicero edoceo cunctus

every thing by the deputies; wherefore he unfolds the whole affair to the pretors, who immediately beset the Mulvian bridge. The Allobroges without delay surrender themselves to the pretors. All things are instantly notified to the consul by messengers; but a vast concern and joy seized him at once: for glad he was that the city was rescued from danger, but he thought the punishing of the conspirators would be a burdensome task to himself.

per legatus; itaque aperio res omnis prætor, qui statim obsideo Mulvius pons. Allobroges sine mora dedo sui prætor. Omnis propere declaro consul per nuncius, at ingens cura atque lætitia simul occupo ille; nam lætor civitas eripio periculum, credo autem pœna conjuratus fi rem onus sui.

The ambassadors of the Gauls returning, set forth the enemy's wealth and negligence; they said, that their camp was filled with gold and silver; and that they neglected all military duty, as if they did not want the help of the sword, because they abounded in gold.

Legatus Gallus reversus, ostendo hostis opis et negligentia; dico, castra repleo aurum et argentum; et is intermitto omnis militaris officium, quasi non indigeo auxilium ferrum quia abundo aurum.

This place is encompassed on all sides with craggy rocks, that it needs no defenders; and such is the fruitfulness of the adjacent soil, that it is filled with its own riches; and such is the plenty of fountains and woods, that it abounds with water, and wants not the diversion of hunting.

Hic locus cingo undique præruptus rupes, ut egeo nullus defensor: et tantus sum fertilitas circumjacens solum, ut expleo proprius opis; et is sum copia fons et sylva, ut abundo aqua, nec careo voluptas venatio.

Mars was accused of murder and incest, and obliged to undergo a trial before twelve gods as judges; but was acquitted of the crimes. The place of trial, which was near Athens, became afterwards the seat of a court, and was called Areopagus, that is, the hill of Mars. The judges were called Areopagites, who were men of the strictest integrity, and of the most blameless life.

Heaven is the lofty throne of God; but to describe the glory of it, is more than human tongue can do. The grandeur and state we behold on earth cannot be compared with it. It is the abode of the

just, the resting place of the weary, and the reward of the faithful. There are rivers of pleasure, and crowns of glory. Ask, and it shall be given you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.

When Cicero was asked his opinion concerning the immortality of the soul, he replied, for many reasons I persuade myself that the soul is immortal; and if in this I err, I err with pleasure; nor will I ever be forced out of an opinion which yields me so much delight.

In Britain, says Cæsar, there is a vast number of inhabitants: the buildings are numerous, and much like those of Gaul; the country abounds in cattle; instead of money, the Britons make use of brass, or pieces of iron of a certain weight. They do not sow much corn; but live on milk and flesh, and are clothed with skins.

---

§ 2. *The government of impersonal verbs.*

§ 2. Regimen verborum impersonalium.

RULE VIII.

37. AN impersonal verb governs the dative.

REG. VIII.

VERBUM *impersonale regit dativum.*

It happened to me.	*Accidit mihi.*
It is profitable for the state.	*Expedit reipublicæ.*
No man is allowed to sin.	*Licet nemini peccare.*

The impersonal verbs belonging to this general rule, excluding those contained in the following exceptions, are such as "accidit, contingit, evenit, conducit, expedit, lubet, libet, licet, placet, displicet, vacat, restat, præstat, liquet, nocet, dolet, sufficit, apparet," &c. Together with the dative, they have frequently an infinitive after them, which supplies the place of a nominative before them.

Note 1. The dative is often suppressed; as, Cic. *Sexcenta licet ejusmodi proferre*, sc. *nobis*. Ter. *Faciat quod lubet*, sc. *sibi*.

Note 2. Impersonal verbs are sometimes used personally, especially with the pronouns *id, hoc, illud, quod*, and the like; as, Cic. *Si tibi id minus libebit*. Id. *Non idem mihi licet*. Id. *Si habes quod liqueat*. Suet. *Quæ cuique libuissent*. Catul. *Marito ista non licent;*

EXCEPTIONES.

* 38. *Refert* and *interest* require the genitive.

1. Refert *et* interest *genitivum postulant.*

It concerns my father. *Refert patris.*
It is the interest of all. *Interest omnium.*

Note 1. *Refert* and *interest* beside other genitives, admit also of these, *tanti, quanti, magni, parmagni, parvi, pluris ;* as, Cic. *Parvi refert abs te jus dici.* Id. *Magni interest mea una nos esse.*

Note 2. They are sometimes used personally, and admit not only of the nominatives *quid, quod, id, hoc, illud,* &c. but of others also ; as, Ter. *Tua quod nihil refert.* Cic. *Illud mea magni interest.* Id. *Non quo mea interesset loci natura.* Lucr. *Magni refert studium atque voluntas.*

Note 3. The adverbs, *tantum, quantum, multum, plurimum, infinitum, parum, nihil, maxime, minime,* and the like, are often joined with them ; as, Mart. *Multum refert.* Juv. *Plurimum interest,* &c.

Note 4. The construction is elliptical, and may be thus supplied: *Refert patris,* i. e. *refert sc ad negotia patris. Interest omnium,* i. e. *est inter negotia omnium.*

* 39. But *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra,* are put in the accusative plural.

At mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra, *ponuntur in accusativo plurali.*

I am not concerned. *Non mea refert.*
It concerns both you and me. *Et tua et mea interest.*

Note 1. We may say indifferently, *cuja,* or *cujus interest ;* as, Cic. *Detur ei cuja interfuit, non ei cuja nihil interfuit.* Id. *Quis enim est hodie, cujus intersit istam legem manere ?*

Note 2 The construction may be thus supplied ; *Refert mea,* i. e. *refert se ad mea negotia. Interest tua,* i. e. *est inter tua negotia.*

* 40. These five, *miseret, pœnitet, pudet, tædet,* and *piget,* govern

2. *Hæc quinque* miseret, pœnitet, pudet, tædet, *et* pi-

the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing.

get, *regunt accusativum personæ cum genitivo rei.*

I pity you.	*Miseret me tui.*
I repent of my sin.	*Pœnitet me peccati.*
I am weary of my life.	*Tædet me vitæ.*

Note 1. The infinitive frequently supplies the place of the genitive; as, *Pœnitet me peccasse*, for *pœnitet me peccati. Tædet me vivere*, for *tædet me vitæ.*

Note 2. The accusative of the person is often suppressed; as, Hor. *Scelerum si pœnitet*, sc. *nos.*

Note 3. These verbs are sometimes used personally; as, Lucr. *Ipse sui miseret.* Plaut. *Me hæc conditio non pœnitet.* Plaut. *Id quod pudet facilius fertur, quam id quod piget.*

Note 4. The genitive is governed by some substantive understood, such as, *negotium, factum, flatus, fortuna, respectus, cogitatio*, or the like; and the construction may be thus completed; *Miseret me tui*, i. e. *negotium tui mali miseret me*, or *respectus tui miseret me. Pœnitet me peccati*, i. e. *negotium peccati*, or *cogitatio peccati pœnitet me.*

* 41. These four, *decet, delectat, juvat, oportet*, govern the accusative of the person with the infinitive.

3. *Hæc quatuor*, decet, delectat, juvat, oportet, *regunt accusativum personæ cum infinitivo.*

It does not become you to scold.	*Non decet te rixari.*
I delight to study.	*Delectat me studere.*

Note 1. *Decet* instead of the accusative, sometimes takes the dative; as, Ter. *Ita nobis decet.* Gell. *Ætati ejus decebat.*

Note 2. *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the subjunctive mood, *ut* being understood; as, *oportet facias*, for *oportet te facere.*

Note 3. *Fallit, fugit, præterit, latet*, when used impersonally, take also the accusative with the infinitive; as, Cic. *Fugit, me ad te scribere*, &c.

Note 4. *Attinet, pertinet*, and *spectat*, when used impersonally, have the accusatives with *ad;* as, Ter. *Pereat, nihil, ad me attinet.* Cic. *Ad rempublicam pertinet me conservari.* Incert. *Spectat ad omnes bene vivere.*

Note 5. *Decet, delectat*, and *juvat*, are often used personally, and *oportet*, sometimes; as, Hor. *Parvum parva decent.* Cic. *Me status*

hic reipublicæ non delectat. Juv. *Si senem juvat alea.* Ter. *Hæc facta ab illo oportebant.*

37. It happened to the young man, that he was very dear to the senate.

Contingit adolescens, ut sum carus senatus.

It happened ill for them, but very well for us, if you please to hear.

Male evenit ille, at bene ego, si placet tu audio.

It contributes to health to live according to nature, and it is proper for us so to live.

Conducit salus vivo e natura, et expedit ego ita vivo.

They beg that it may be allowed them to pass their days in exile, and it pleases me to allow them.

Peto ut licet ille ago ætas in exilium, et lubet ego sino.

Jove has not leisure to attend on small affairs; but it is better for us to be silent than to speak.

Non vacat Jupiter adsum exiguus res; sed præstat ego taceo quam loquor.

It appears to all that this man aims at sovereignty, nay I am clear to swear it.

Apparet omnis hic homo affecto imperium, imo liquet ego dejuro.

38. It concerns all men to practise virtue, and it concerns all men to pity the miserable.

Refert omnis colo virtus, et interest omnis misereor miser.

39. It concerns me, it concerns you and the commonwealth, that you do your duty.

Refert meus, refert tuus et respublica, ut tu fungor officium.

It concerns thee not to believe rashly, and it concerns thee to know thyself.

Refert tuus non credo temere, et interest tuus nosco tu ipse.

Cæsar used to say, that it did not so much concern him as the state, that he should be preserved.

Cæsar soleo dico, non tam interest suus quam respublica, uti salvus sum.

Caligula suffered the writings of Labienus to be searched for and read, since it very much concerned him that every action should be transmitted to posterity.

Caligula permitto scriptum Labienus requiro et lectito, quando maxime interest suus ut quisque factum trado posteri.

It concerns you who are fa-

Interest vester qui pa-

thers, to take care that your children be well educated, and it concerns children to obey their parents.

Ter sum, curo ut liberi probe instituo, et refert liberi obedio parens.

40. I look for death as the end of my miseries; but I pity you against whom wars and battles are prepared.

Expecto mors ut finis miseria; sed miseret ego tu adversus qui prælium et acies paro.

If thou art sorry for, and ashamed of thy faults, thou wilt take care not to commit any such thing hereafter.

Si pœnitet, ac pudet tu peccatum tuus, caveo ne quis talis posthac committo.

Sulpicius, tribune of the commons, after he had acquired the greatest honour, made many destructive laws, as if he had been sorry for, and weary of his former virtues.

Sulpicius, tribunus plebs, cum quæro magnus dignitas, fero multus perniciosus lex, quasi piget, ac tædet is pristinus virtus.

41. It becomes all men to be free from hatred, love, wrath, and compassion, when they deliberate about doubtful matters.

Decet omnis homo sum vacuus ab odium, amicitia, ira, atque misericordia, cum consulto de res dubius.

There are boys that delight to lead an idle life, and there are boys who take pleasure to ply their studies.

Sum puer qui delectat segnis traduco vita et sum puer qui studium invigilo juvat.

It behooves men to reckon that God sees all things, that all things are full of God.

Oportet homo existimo Deus cerno omnis, omnis & Deus plenus sum.

¶ As soon as Eumenes understood that Perdiccas was slain, himself judged an enemy, and the management of the war committed to Antigonus, he declared those things to the soldiers; and added, moreover, if those things were a terror to any, it was permitted them to depart.

Ut Eumenes cognosco Perdiccas occido, sui judico hostis; et summa bellum committo Antigonus, indico is miles; et addo insuper, si qui is terror sum, licet ille discedo.

The anger of the Almighty God ought to be terrible to all

Ira Deus Omnipotens debeo sum terribilis omnis

men, no less to the highest and haughtiest of the lords of the earth, than the meanest of mortals. He can, if he please, disjoint all the parts of this beautiful structure of the world, and reduce them into one confused mass, like that out of which they were originally formed.

You see, says Eumenes, the dress and ornaments of your general, which not any of my enemies has put upon me, for that would be comfort to me; you have made me of a general a prisoner. One thing I beg, that you would let me die among yourselves; for it signifies nothing to Antigonus, how or where I fall. If I obtain this, I free you from your oath.

Honesty hurts nobody; but knavery, though it seems to profit a man, is very pernicious to a man's credit, which all wise men value more than money; and very often it is hurtful to a man's estate and life, which fools value more than all things else; it therefore concerns all men to beware of and avoid injustice.

God is angry with the wicked, and threatens them with most dreadful torments; not because he hates them, but that they may repent of their sin, and be happy forever in heaven. Do not they, therefore, deserve the punishment of eter-

non minus summus et superbus dominus terra orbis, quam infimus mortalis. Possum, si placet is, divello omnis pars hic pulcher ædificium mundus, et redigo in unus moles indigestus, similis is ex qui primum formo.

Cerno, inquam Eumenes, habitus atque ornamentum dux vester, qui non quisquam hostis impono ego, nam hic forem solatium ego; tu facio ego ex imperator captivus. Unus oro, ut volo ego morior inter tu; nam neque interest Antigonus, quemadmodum aut ubi cado. Si hic impetro, solvo tu jusjurandum.

Probitas, noceo nemo; sed improbitas, etsi videor prosum homo, sum perniciosus existimatio homo, qui omnis sapiens æstimo plus quam pecunia; et sæpe sum perniciosus homo res et vita qui stultus facio plus quam alius omnis; refert igitur omnis caveo et vito injustitia.

Deus irascor impius, et minor ille dirus supplicium; non quod odi, sed ut pœnitet is peccatum, et sum felix in æternum in cœlum. Nonne igitur, mereor pœna æternus mors, qui æstimo æ-

nal death, who value eternal life and happiness at nothing.

You are weary of the patrician, and we of the plebeian magistrates. What do you mean, I beseech you? You desired tribunes of the commons, we granted them; you desired the *decemvirs*, we suffered them to be made; you were weary, of the *decemvirs*, we forced them to lay down their power.

ternus vita et felicitas nihilum.

Tædet tu patricius, ego plebeius magistratus. Quis volo, obsecro tu? Concupio tribunus plebs, ego concedo; desidero decemviri, ego patior creo; tædet tu decemviri, cogo is abdico magistratus.

Wicked men provoke God daily; but he is very merciful; therefore he pities them, and is ready to forgive them their sins, if they repent of them, and are ashamed of their folly, and be willing to obey those precepts which are prescribed to us in the gospel.

Improbus lacesso Deus quotidie, sed sum clemens; itaque miseret is ille, et paratus sum condono is peccatum, si pœnitet is ille, et pudet is stultitia, et volo obtempero lex qui condo ego in evangelium.

King Darius's mother, who till that day had not been weary of her life, when she heard that Alexander was dead, laid violent hands upon herself; not that she preferred an enemy before a son, but because she had experienced the duty of a son in him whom she had feared as an enemy.

Rex Darius mater, qui in is dies non tædet vita, cum audio Alexander morior, infero manus sui ipse; non quod præfero hostis filius, sed quod experior pietas filius in is qui timeo ut hostis.

Julian was a man of great eloquence, of a quick and most tenacious memory, liberal to his friends, as became so great a prince to be; he was greedy of glory; and not unlike Marcus Antonius, whom he made it his business to imitate: he made war upon the Parthians, in which expedition I was likewise present.

Julianus sum vir ingens 6 facundia, promptus et tenax memoria, liberalis in amicus, ut decet tantus princeps sum; sum avidus gloria; et non absimilis Marcus Antonius, qui æmulor studeo; infero bellum Parthus, qui expeditio ego quoque intersum.

We are allowed from reason and scripture to conclude, that part of the pleasure which happy minds shall enjoy in a future state, will arise from an enlarged contemplation of the divine wisdom in the government of the world; and from a discovery of the secret and amazing steps of Providence, from the beginning to the end of time.

It concerns subjects to obey the laws: and it is of great importance to the public that all should follow peace, practise justice, and discharge their duty in that station in civil life, which they hold in society.

Thou owest thy food, thy clothing, thy habitation, and every comfort and pleasure of life, to the labour of others; it concerns thee therefore to be a friend to mankind, as it is thy interest that men should be friendly to thee.

Ceres was ashamed of her fault, and greatly lamented the loss of her honour. She retired into the dark recesses of a cave, where she lay so concealed, that none of the gods knew where she was, till Pan, the god of the woods, discovered her.

Robert Bruce addressed Sir William Wallace thus: What madness hath seized you? King Edward, against whom you carry on a war, is a most powerful monarch; and though you should overcome him, the Scots will never deliver the government up to you. Wallace answered thus; You use me ill, when you say that I aspire to the kingdom. I am not desirous of royal power; the honours of a kingdom neither agree to my fortune nor to my mind. It belongs to the nobles to defend their country. When I saw that our nobles had neglected their duty, I pitied my wretched countrymen, who are destitute of governors, and exposed to the cruelty of barbarous enemies. Our nobles prefer most scandalous slavery to honourable liberty. War is a terror to our nobles. Let them enjoy that fortune which they value so much. I will defend my country.

It becomes us to be kind and courteous to strangers, for we know not to what part of the world we ourselves may go.

If you would have God to hear your prayers, it behooves you to hear the petition of the poor.

APPENDIX.

42. PASSIVE VERBS take after them an ablative of the agent or doer, with the preposition *a*, *ab*, or *abs*.

VERBA PASSIVA *post se habent ablativum agentis aut facientis, cum præpositione*, a, ab, *vel* abs.

The world is governed by God.	*Mundus gubernatur a Deo.*
Virtue is praised by all.	*Virtus laudatur ab omnibus.*
I am glad that my conduct is approved by you.	*Gaudeo meum factum abs te probari.*

Note 1. The preposition is sometimes suppressed ; as, Ovid. *Deseror conjuge.* Id. *Colitur linigera turba.* Senec. *Contra Sertinium quo premebatur.*

Note 2. Passive verbs, instead of the ablative with the preposition, sometimes take the dative ; as, Virg. *Neque cernitur ulli.* Ter. *Meditata mihi sunt incommoda.* Ovid. *Nulla laudetur mihi.*

Note 3. A great many other verbs take also the ablative with *a* or *ab :* such as,

1. Verbs of RECEIVING ; as, *accipio, capio, sumo, mutuor ;* also, *adipiscor, consequor, impetro,* &c. ; as, Cic. *A majoribus morem accepimus.*

2. Verbs of DISTANCE, DIFFERENCE, and DISSENSION ; as, *disto, differo, dissentio, dissideo, discrepo, discordo ;* as, Cic. *Vides quantum distet a veritate.*

3. Verbs of DESIRING, ENTREATING, and ENQUIRING ; as, *peto, expeto, posco, percontor, scitor, sciscitor, rogo, oro, obsecro precor, postulo, flagito, contendo, exigo,* &c. ; as, Cic. *A te opem petimus.*

4. Verbs of CESSATION ; as, *cesso, desisto, quiesco, requiesco, tempero ;* as, Liv. *A prœliis cessare.*

5. Verbs of EXCEPTING ; as, *excepto, spero ;* as, Buchan. *Ab uno expectes, quod a multis sperare nequeas.*

6. Verbs of TAKING AWAY and REMOVING ; as, *aufero, rapio, surripio, furor, tollo ; removeo, arceo, prohibeo, pello, repello, propulso, revoco ;* also, *contineo, conhibeo, refreno ;* also, *defendo, munio, tego, tueor ;* also, *deficio, descisco, degenero,* &c. To these add verbs compounded with *a* or *ab ;* as, *abigo, abstineo, amoveo, abduco, abrado, amitto, avello, avoco,* &c. ; Ter. *Minas triginta ab illo abstuli.*

7. Verbs of DISMISSING, BANISHING, and DISJOINING ; as, *dimitto, relego, disjungo, divello, segrego, separo,* &c. ; as, Cæs. *Eum ab se dimittit.*

8. Verbs of BUYING ; as, *emo, mercor, fœneror, conduco ;* as, V. Max. *A piscatoribus jactum emerat.*

9. Many other verbs of different significations ; as, *caveo, declino, deflecto ; discedo, recedo ; affero, do, reddo, fero, reporto, incipio, ordior ; servo, custodio, vindico ; timeo, metuo, formido,* &c. ; as, Cic. *Regem monuerunt, a veneno, ut caveret.*

Note 4. Verbs of STRIVING ; as, *contendo, certo, bello, pugno ;* and JOINING TOGETHER ; as, *jungo, conjungo, concumbo, coeo, misceo,* take the ablative with *cum ;* as, Ovid. *Mecum certasse feretur.* Id. *Contendite mecum.* Cic. *Bellare cum diis.* Id. *Salutem meam cum communi salute conjungere decrevi.* Tac. *Consilia cum illo non miscuerant.*

Note 5. The verbs *mereor, facio, fit, erit, futurum est,* take the ab-

lative with *de*, as, *Bene vel male de aliquo mereri.* Cic. *Indicum de fide ejus.* Ter. *Quid de me fiet?* &c.

Note 6. Verbs of PERCEIVING and KNOWING; as, *intelligo, sentio, cognosco, conjicio, disco, percipio, colligo, audio,* take the ablative with *e* or *ex*; as, Cic. *Ex gestu, tuo intelligo, quid velis.* Id. *Ex tuis literis statum rerum cognovi.* Id *Hoc ex illo audivi,* &c.

Note 7. Passive IMPERSONALS are either put absolutely; as, *Quid agitur? statur.* Cic. *Ab hora tertia habebatur, ludebatur, vomebatur,* Or they take after them the case of their PERSONALS; as, Cic. *Ut majoribus natu assurgatur, ut supplicium misereatur.* Ovid. *Nec mihi parcatur.* Virg. *Itur in sylvam.* Liv. *Pestilentia laboratum est.*

Note 8. These six verbs, *potest, cœpit, incipit, desinet, debet,* and *solet,* when joined with impersonal verbs, become impersonal themselves; as, Quinct. *Pervenire ad summa nisi ex principiis non potest.* Just. *Pigere cum facti cœpit.* Cic. *Singulis a Deo et provideri solet.* Id. *Negat jucunde posse vivi, nisi cum virtute vivatur.*

He is miserable, who neither loves any one, nor is himself beloved by any one.

Miser sum, qui neque diligo quisquam, nec ipse diligo ab ullus.

The affairs of a good man are never neglected by God.

Res bonus vir nunquam negligo a Deus.

Do not trust to a man by whom thou hast been once deceived.

Ne fido homo a qui semel decipio.

Carthage was destroyed by the famous captain Scipio Africanus.

Carthago deleo a celeber dux Scipio Africanus.

Learning and virtue are sought by few, pleasure by many.

Doctrina et victus appeto a pauci, voluptas a plarimus.

We are so formed by nature that we do not seem made for sport and jest.

Ita genero a natura, ut non videor factus ad ludus jocusque.

¶ For these achievements Codomannus is set over Armenia; and after the death of king Ochus, is made king by the people for his former bravery. He waged war with Alexander the Great: at last, however, he was conquered by Alexander; and being slain by his own

Ob hic decus Codomannus præficio Armenia; et, post mors rex Ochus, constituo rex a populus propter pristinus virtus. Gero bellum cum Alexander Magnus: postremo, tamen, vinco ab Alexander; et occisus a suus, finio vita,

relations, he ended his life, together with the empire of the Persians.

Whilst these things are doing he is acquainted that a plot was laid for him by Alexander, the son-in-law of Antipater, who had been sent over Macedonia; for which reason, fearing lest if he should be slain, some tumult should arise in Macedonia, he kept him in chains. After this he goes to the city Gordium, which is situated betwixt the greater and lesser Phrygia.

Whilst the Gauls plunder the ships, they are cut in pieces by the rowers and a part of the army, which had fled thither with their wives and children; and so great was the slaughter of the Gauls, that the fame of this victory procured Antigonus a peace not only from the Gauls, but from all his neighbours.

Queen Thessalonice, the lady of Cassander, was slain by her son Antipater, though she begged her life by his mother's breasts: the reason of which parricide was, that after the death of her husband, in the division of the kingdom betwixt the brothers, she seemed to have been more favourable to Alexander.

Pluto desired of Jupiter, that Proserpine might be given to him in marriage, by him and her mother Ceres. Jupiter denied that Ceres would suffer her daughter to live in hell; but

pariter cum imperium Persa.

Dum hic ago fio certior insidiæ paro sui ab Alexander gener Antipater, qui præpono Macedonia; ob qui causa, timens ne, si interficio, quis motus orior in Macedonia, habeo is in vinculum. Post hic peto urbs Gordium, qui positus sum inter magnus et parvus Phrygia.

Dum Gallus diripio navis, trucido remex et pars exercitus, qui confugio eo cum conjux et liberi; et tantus sum cædes Gallus, ut opinio hic victoria præsto Antigonus pax, non tantum a Gallus, sed ab omnis finitimus.

Regina Thessalonice, uxor Cassander, occido a filius Antipater, cum deprecor vita per uber maternus: causa qui parricidium sum, quod post mors maritus, in divisio regnum inter frater, videor propensus Alexander.

Pluto peto a Jupiter, ut Proserpina do sui in matrimonium, ab ille et mater Ceres. Jupiter nego Ceres patior filia suus vivo in Tartarus; sed jubeo

he bids him steal her, whilst she gathered flowers upon mount Ætna, which is in Sicily. Afterwards Ceres obtained of Jupiter, that she should be with her sometimes.

is rapio is, dum lego flos in mons Ætna, qui sum in Sicilia. Post ea Ceres impetro a Jupiter, ut sum suicum aliquando.

Perdiccas pretends to desire the daughter of Antipater in marriage, that he might the more easily obtain of him recruits out of Macedonia; but Antipater perceived his cunning, and baulked his hopes. After this a war broke out between Antigonus and Perdiccas, in which Perdiccas was worsted by Antigonus.

Perdiccas simulo peto filia Antipater in matrimonium, ut facile obtineo ab is supplementum ex Macedonia; sed Antipater præsentio dolus, et fallo spes is. Post hic bellum orior inter Antigonus et Perdiccas, in qui Perdiccas supero ab Antigonus.

The Poets say, that the first woman was made by Vulcan, and that every god gave her some present, whence she was called Pandora. Pallas gave her wisdom, Apollo the art of music, Mercury the art of eloquence, and Venus gave her beauty.

Acrisius king of the Argives, shut up his daughter Danae in a strong tower, and suffered none to enter it; because he had heard from the oracle, that he should be killed by his grandson. Jupiter turned himself into a shower of gold, and entered into the tower through the tiles. Thus Danae was got with child by the god. When Acrisius heard that his daughter had brought forth a son, he ordered her and the child to be put into a chest, and thrown into the sea. The chest was found by a fisherman, and given by him to Pilumnus king of the Rutilians, who married Danae. When Perseus the son of Danae was grown up, he slew his grandfather Acrisius, and so fulfilled the oracle.

---

3. *The government of the infinitive, participles, gerunds, and supines.*

RULE IX.

43. ONE verb governs another in the infinitive.

§ 3. Regimen infinitivi, participiorum, gerundiorum, et supinorum.

REG. IX.

UNUM verbum regit aliud in infinitivo.

I desire to learn.	*Cupio discere.*
Thou art glad to be taught.	*Gaudes doceri.*
Mercury is said to have invented the harp.	*Mercurius dicitur invenisse lyram.*

Note 1. The infinitive is frequently governed by adjectives or participles; as, *Dignus legi, cupidus mori, indocilis pauperiem pati, avidi committere pugnam, audax omnia perpeti; cupiens cognoscere, metuens pollui, meritus relinqui. fruges consumere nati.* And sometimes by substantives; as, *Tempus abire, occasio scribere, signa dedi venisse Deum.*

Note 2. The governing word is sometimes suppressed; as, Ter. *Omnes mihi invidere,* sc. *cæperunt.* Virg. *Mene incepto desistere?* sc. *decet* or *par est.* And to these phrases, *videre est, animadvertere est, reperire est,* &c. we may understand *facultas, potestas, copia,* or the like.

Note 3. The infinitive itself is sometimes suppressed; as, Cic. *Socratem fidibus docuit,* sc. *canere.* Sall. *Et provinciam Numidiam populus jussit;* sc. *dari.*

Note 4 The infinitive is a kind of substantive noun, has adjectives sometimes joined with it, and occurs in all cases. In the nominative; as, Pers. *Scire tuum nihil est,* for *scientia tua.* Cic. *Adulterare turpe est,* for *adulterium.* Gen. Virg. *Soli cantare periti,* for *cantandi* or *cantus.* Dat. Sall. *Servire parati,* for *servituti.* Acc. Hor. *Da mihi fallere,* for *artem fallendi.* Voc. *O vivere nostrum,* for *vita nostra.* Abl. Quinct. *Hæc demonstrasse contentus,* for *horum demonstratione facta.*

I desire to know, thou art afraid to tell, he despises to be taught, we are forbid to prate, ye ought to study, they are ordered to write.	*Cupio scio, vereor dico, sperno doceo, veto garrio, debeo studeo, jubeo scribo.*
I will take care to avoid intemperance, thou oughtest to seek wisdom, he endeavours to perform his promise, we have resolved to hear the lesson, ye design to make verses, they seem to have done an injury, learn thou to lay aside pride.	*Curo vito intemperantia, debeo expeto sapientia, conor præsto promissum, statuo audio prælectio, volo compono versus, video facio injuria, disco depono supercilium.*
Money cannot change nature, a soldier always rejoices to recount his dangers, a sailor often uses to relate his losses. Egnatius before this had resolved to kill Cæsar, the general	*Pecunia nescio muto natura, miles semper gaudeo memoro periculum, nauta sæpe soleo refero damnum. Egnatius antea statuo interimo Cæsar, dux jubeo*

ordered his men carefully to keep rank.

¶ He then recites his own services; how he had revenged the revolt of their allies, and quelled the Thessalians; how he had not only defended, but advanced the dignity of the Macedonians; for which if they were sorry he said he laid down his authority, and restored them their present; they might seek a king whom they could govern.

There were besides a great many accomplices of this design, whom the hope of power encouraged, more than want or any necessity. Most of the youth, but especially of the nobility, favoured the designs of Catiline; they chose war rather than peace, who might have lived in peace quietly and splendidly.

miles sedulo servo ordo.

Deinde commemoro suus beneficium; ut vindico defectio socius, et compesco Thessalus; ut non tantum defendo, verum augeo dignitas Macedo; qui si is pœnitet, dico sui depono imperium et reddo ille munus suus; ipse quæro rex qui impero.

Sum præterea complures particeps, hicce consilium, qui spes dominatio hortor, magis quam inopia aut alius necessitudo. Plerique juvenis, sed præsertim nobilis, faveo inceptum Catilina; malo bellum quam pax, qui licet vivo in otium molliter et magnifice.

The minutest plant or animal, if attentively examined, affords a thousand wonders, and obliges us to admire and adore that omnipotent hand which created ourselves, as well as the object we admire.

So great was the impudence of the giants that they strove to turn Jupiter out of heaven; and when they began to fight against the gods, they heaped up mountains upon mountains, and from thence darted trees set on fire. They hurled also massy stones and solid rocks, some of which, falling upon the earth again, became mountains, others fell into the sea, and became islands.

GERUNDS.

44. THE gerund in DUM of the nominative case, with the verbs *est*, governs the dative.

GERUNDIA.

1. GERUNDIUM *in DUM nominativi casus cum verbo* est, *regit dativum.*

I must live well.	*Vivendum est mihi recte.*
All must die.	*Moriendum est omnibus.*

Note 1. This gerund always imports necessity or obligation, and the dative after it is the person on whom the necessity or obligation lies.

Note 2. The dative is often suppressed; as, *Si pereundum sit;* sc. *mihi, tibi, illi, nobis, vobis, illis,* &c.

Note 3. This gerund, when it comes after a verb in the same clause, passes into the accusative, and, with the infinite *esse*, expressed or understood, governs the dative; as, Cic. *Quotidie meditare resistendum esse iracundiæ.* Cæs. *Quibus rebus quam maturime, occurrendum* (esse) *putabat.*

45. The gerund in DI is governed by substantives or adjectives.

2. *Gerundium in* DI *regitur a substantivis vel adjectivis.*

Time of reading.	*Tempus legendi.*
Desirous to learn.	*Cupidus discendi.*

The substantives are such as, "amor, causa, gratia, stu-" dium, tempus, occasio, ars, facultas, otium, cupido, vo-" luntas, consuetudo," &c.

The adjectives are such as, "peritus, imperitus, cupidus, " insuetus, certus, rudis," and others belonging to No. 14.

Note 1. The infinitive is sometimes used for the gerund in D, especially by the poets; as, *Tempus abire, occasio scribere, peritus cantare;* instead of *abeundi, scribendi, cantandi.*

Note 2. The governing substantive is sometimes suppressed; as, Cic. *Cum haberem in animo navigandi,* sc. *propositum.* Plaut. *Huic ducendi interea abscesserit,* sc. *voluntas.*

46. The gerund in DO of the dative case is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness.

3. *Gerundium in* DO *dativi casus regitur ab adjectivis utilitatem vel aptitudinem significantibus.*

Paper useful for writing.	*Charta utilis scribendo.*
Iron fit for beating.	*Ferrum habile tundendo.*

These adjectives are such as, "utilis, inutilis, aptus, inaptus, par, habilis, idoneus, accommodatus, bonus, communis," &c.

Note 1. The adjective is sometimes suppressed; as, Cic. *Cum solvendo civitates non essent*, sc. *pares* vel *habiles*. Plin. *Alexandrinæ ficus non sunt vescendo*, sc. *idoneæ* vel *utiles*.

Note 2. This gerund is sometimes governed by a verb; as, Plaut. *Epidicum quærendo operam dabo*. Cic. *Cum omnes scribendo adessent*. Liv. *Is censendo finis factus est*.

47. The gerund in DUM of the accusative case is governed by the prepositions *ad* or *inter*, and sometimes by *ante*, *circa*, or *ob*.

Ready to hear.
Attentive in time of teaching.
A reward for teaching.

4. *Gerundium in DUM accusativi casus regitur a præpositionibus* ad *vel* inter, *et interdum ad* ante, circa, *vel* ob.

Promptus ad audiendum.
Attentus inter docendum.
Merces ob docendum.

Note 1. This gerund is sometimes governed by the verb *habeo*; as, Plin. *Quum enitendum haberemus*.

Note 2. It frequently supplies the place of the accusative before the infinitive *esse* or *fuisse*, as was already observed in Note 3, on No. 44.

48. The gerund in DO of the ablative case is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*; but if the cause or manner of a thing be signified, the preposition is generally suppressed.

Punishment frightens from sinning.
Pleasure is found in learning.

5. *Gerundium in DO ablativi casus regitur a præpositionibus* a, ab, de, e, ex, *vel* in; *si vero rei causa vel modus significetur, præpositio fere omittitur.*

Pœna a peccando absterret.
Voluptas capitur ex discendo.

I am weary with walking.	*Defessus sum ambulando.*
A wife by obeying governs.	*Uxor parendo imperat.*

Note 1. This gerund is sometimes, though rarely, governed by *pro* or *cum*; as, Plaut. *Pro vapulando abs te mercedem petam.* Quinct. *Ratio recte scribendi juncta cum loquendo est.*

Note 2. Gerunds are substantive nouns, and consequently subject to the same rules of construction with them.

49. Gerunds of verbs governing the accusative, are elegantly turned into the gerundives, or participles in DUS, which agree with their substantives in gender, number and case.

6. *Gerundia verborum accusativum regentium, vertuntur eleganter in gerundiva, seu participia in DUS, quæ cum suis substantivis in genere, numero, et casu, concordant.*

The affair must be managed.	*Curandum est rem.* / *Curanda est res.*
The time of managing the affair.	*Tempus curandi rem.* / *Tempus curandæ rei.*
Fit for managing the affair.	*Idoneus curando rem.* / *Idoneus curandæ rei.*
To manage the affair.	*Ad curandum rem.* / *Ad curandam rem.*
In managing the affair.	*In curando rem.* / *In curanda re.*

To these may be added the gerunds of "utor, abutor, "fruor, fungor, *and* potior: as, Cic, "Ad vitam uten-"dam." Plin. "In fruendis voluptatibus." Cic. "In "munere fungendo." Sall. "Urbis potiundæ cupido eum "invasit."

Note 1. The meaning of the rule is, that the gerunds of active verbs govern the accusative, as will be more fully taught in No. 54, following; but the same sense is more usually and more elegantly expressed by the gerundive joined with the substantive, which the gerund governs. And here observe, that the gerundive, with its substantive, are always put in the case of the gerund.

Note 2. In the plural we likewise say, *curandæ suntres, idoneus curandis rebus, ad curandas res,* and in *curandis rebus,* rather than *curandum est res, idoneus curando res, ad curandoum res, in curando res;* but *tempus curandarum rerum* in the genitive, on account of its harsh sound, is seldom used; *tempus curandi res,* is more usual and more elegant.

Note 3. Though the gerunds of active verbs have generally an active signification; yet sometimes they seem to be used in a passive, sense; as, Just. *Athenas erudiendi gratia missus,* i. e. *ut erudiretur.* Sall. *Cum ipse ad imperandum Tisidium vocaretur,* i. e. *ut ipse imperaretur.* Vell. *Ut cives ad censendum in Italiam revocaverint,* i. e. *ut censeretur, &c.*

SUPINES.

* 50. THE supine in UM is put after a verb of motion.

SUPINA.

1. *SUPINUM in UM ponitur post verbum motus.*

He hath gone to walk. — *Abiit deambulatum.*
They come to see. — *Spectatum veniunt.*

Note 1. This supine is sometimes put after a participle; as, Hor. *Spectatum admissi, risum teneatis amici?*

Note 2. The supine in UM is a substantive noun in the accusative of the fourth declension, and governed by *ad* or *in* understood, or sometimes expressed; as, Var. *Non omnis tempestas apes ad pastum prodire longius patitur* Lucr. *In commutatum veniunt.*

Note 3. This supine with the verb *iri,* constitutes the future of the infinitive passive, and the supine being a substantive never varies its termination; for we do not say, *illos occisos iri,* but *illos occisum iri.*

Note 4. An expression by this supine may be varied several ways. Thus, instead of *Venit oratum opem,* we may say, 1. *Venit ut oret opem.* 2. *Venit opis orandæ causa.* 3. *Venit ad orandam opem.* 4. *Venit opem oraturus.* 5. *Venit opem orandi causa.* 6 *Venit ad orandum opem.* 7. *Venit opi orandæ.* 8 *Venit qui opem oret.* 9. *Venit opem orare.* But of these varieties the first four are usual and elegant; the next four less ornate and more rare: and the last seldom used but by poets.

* 51. The supine in U is put after an adjective noun.

2. *Supinum in U ponitur post nomen adjectivum.*

Easy to tell, or to be told.	*Facile dictu.*
Dreadful to be mentioned.	*Horrendum relatu.*

Note 1. It is also put after these substantives, *fas, nefas, opus;* as, Cic. *Fas dictu.* Id. *Nefas dictu.* Id. *Quod scitu opus est.* It is also put after signifying motion from a place; as, Plaut. *Nunc obsonatu redeo.* Cato, *Primus cubitu surgat.*

Note 2. This supine is a substantive noun in the ablative of the fourth declension, and governed by *in, e,* or *ex,* understood, or sometimes expressed; as, Quinct. *In receptu difficilis.* Virg. *E pastu vitulos ad tecta reducit.*

Note 3. An expression by this supine may be varied several ways. Thus, instead of *Utile cognitu,* we may say, 1. *Cognosci utile.* 2. *Ad cognoscendum utile* 3. *Cognitione utile.*

44. I must ride, but you must walk.

Equitandum sum ego, sed ambulandum sum tu.

We must fight stoutly with our vices.

Pugnandum sum ego fortiter cum vitium noster.

You ought to beware, lest you fall into a distemper.

Cavendum sum tu, ne incido in morbus.

He must fly, but they must fight, that they may be safe.

Fugiendum sum is, at dimicandum sum ille, ut sum salvus.

45. The lust of governing is more violent than all the other passions.

Cupido dominandum sum flagrans cunctus alius affectus.

The gods have given you riches, and the art of enjoying them

Deus do tu divitiæ, arsque fruendum.

In a new kind of war, new methods of carrying on the war are necessary.

In novus genus bellum novus ratio bellandum sum necessarius.

Dionysius obliged the physicians to give his father a sleepy dose, lest Dion should have an opportunity of tampering with him.

Dionysius cogo medicus do pater sopor, ne Dion sum potestas agendum cum is.

This man is courageous in danger, prudent in his conduct, and skilled in carrying on a war.

Hic vir sum fortis ad periculum, prudens ad consilium, et peritus belligerandum.

He acknowledges himself to

Fateor sui sum rudis

be unskilled in pleading, but not unacquainted with war.

A great many young men take pleasure in horses and dogs, and are fond of hunting.

46. Bituminous and nitrous water is good to be drunk.

Nature hath given the frogs legs fit for swimming.

This is common to studying and writing, that good health contributes a great deal to both.

47. Wisdom provides things to us for living happily.

The Parthians are more disposed to act than to speak.

As we walk we will talk together about the great works of God.

Nobody ought to receive a reward for accusing.

48. Lazy boys are soon discouraged from learning.

No question is now made about living well.

Greater glory is required by defending than by accusing.

The spirit of the Cantabrians was obstinate in rebelling.

The dog by barking discovered the thieves.

Scipio reformed the sodiers by exercising rather than by punishing.

Cæsar, by giving, by relieving, and forgiving, acquired great glory.

49. Friends ought to be admonished and chid, and that

dicendum, at non ignarus bellum.

Plurimus adolescens gaudeo equus et canis, et sum studiosus venandum.

Bituminatus et nitrosus aqua sum utilis bibendum.

Natura do rana crus aptus natandum.

Ille sum communis ed is cendum scribendum que, quod bonus valetudo confero plurimum uterque.

Sapientia comparo res ego ad beate vivendum.

Parthi sum promptus ad faciendum quam ad dicendum.

Inter ambulandum confabulor de magnus opus Deus.

Nemo debeo accipio præmium ob accusandum.

Ignavus puer cito detereo a discendum.

Nullus quæstio jam moveo de bene vivendum.

Uber gloria comparo ex defendendum quam ex accusandum.

Animus Cantabrus sum pertinax in rebellandum.

Canis latrandum prodo fur.

Scipio corrigo miles exercendum magis quam puniendum.

Cæsar, dandum, sublevandum, et ignoscendum, magnus gloria adipiscor.

Amicus sum monendus et objurgandus, et is sum

ought to be taken kindly which is done with a good intention.

accipiendus amice qui benevolè fio.

Why do you hesitate? says he; or what place of trying our courage do you expect? This day shall determine concerning our disputes.

Quid dubito? inquam; aut quis locus probandus virtus expecto? Hic dies judico de noster controversia.

Old oil is said to be good for clearing ivory from rottenness.

Vetus oleum dico sum utilis vindicandus ebur a caries.

Claudius was a modest man, tenacious of what was just, and fit for managing the commonwealth.

Claudius sum vir modestus, tenax justum, et idoneus gerendus respublica.

The boy is fit for bearing the burden; but this place is proper for spreading the nets.

Puer sum par ferendus onus; sed hic locus sum habilis pandendus rete.

All the cities of Greece contributed money for equiping a fleet, and raising an army.

Omnis civitas Græcia do pecunia ad ædificandus classis, et comparandus exercitus.

Men use care in purchasing a horse, and are negligent in choosing friends.

Homo adhibeo cura in parandus equus, et sum negligens in deligendus amicus.

50. This man came to Cæsar to entreat that he would pardon him.

Hic homo venio ad Cæsar oratum ut ignosco sui.

Mæcenas went to diversion, I and Virgil went to bed.

Mæcenas eo lusum, ego Virgiliusque eo dormitum.

51. A true friend is a thing hard to be found.

Verus amicus sum res difficilis inventu.

Let nothing filthy to be spoken, or to be seen, touch those doors, within which there is a child.

Nil fœdus dictu visuve tango hic limen intra qui puer sum.

¶ A general must endeavour to accustom his soldiers to observe the tricks, plots, and stratagems of the enemy, and what is proper to pursue, and what to avoid.

Laborandum sum dux ut consuefacio miles cognosco dolus, insidiæ, et artificium hostis, et quis convenit sequor, quisque vito.

After a long series of ages, the birds phœnix came into Egypt, and furnished an occasion to the most learned of the natives and Greeks of making speculations on that prodigy.

Post longus ambitus seculum, avis phœnix venio in Ægyptus, præbeoque materies doctus indigena et Græcus disserendum super is miraculum.

In that battle the general was wounded; who, when he saw his men slaughtered, demanded by a crier the bodies of the slain for burial: for this among the Greeks is a sign of the victory's being yielded up: with which confession the Thebans being content, gave the signal of giving quarter.

In is prælium dux vulnero; qui, cum video suus cædo, posco per præco corpus interfectus ad sepultura; hic enim apud Græcus sum signum victoria traditus: qui confessio Thebanus contentus, do signum parcendum.

While each of the states of Greece are ambitious of domineering, they were all ruined; for Philip king of Macedonia plotted against their common liberty; he fomented the quarrels of the state, gave assistance to the weaker, and at last reduced all, the conquerors and conquered alike, under his power.

Dum singulus civitas Græcia sum cupidus dominandum, omnis pereo; nam Philippus rex Macedonia insidior communis libertas; alo contentio civitas, fero auxilium inferus, et tandem redigo omnis, victor et victus pariter, sub suus potestas.

The Carthaginians attempted to renew the war, and excited the Sardinians, who by an article of the peace were obliged to be subject to the Romans, to rebel; an embassy, however, of the Carthaginians came to Rome and obtained peace.

Carthaginiensis tento reparo bellum, et impello Sardiniensis qui ex conditio pax debeo pareo Romanus, ad rebellandum; legatio, tamen, Carthaginiensis ad Roma venio, et pax impetro.

How desperately the fight was maintained the event showed; none of the enemies survived the battle. The place that every one had received in fighting, that he covered with his body. Catiline was found a great way from his men amongst the carcases of the enemies.

Quam atrociter dimico, exitus doceo; nemo hostis supersum bellum. Qui locus quis in pugnandum capio, is corpus tego. Catilina longe a suus inter hostis cadaver reperio.

Eumenes being thus received by the Argyraspides, by degrees assumes the command; first by admonishing, and then by gently correcting, he brought it to pass that nothing could be done in the camp without him.

Eumenes ita receptus ab Argyraspidæ, paulatim usurpo imperium; primum monendum, mox blande corrigendum, efficio, ut nihil possum ago in castra sine ille.

Clearchus thought the disagreement of the people an opportunity of seizing the government; wherefore he confers first with Mithridates, the enemy of his countrymen, and promises to betray the city to him; but afterwards he turned the plot which he had formed against his countrymen upon Mithridates himself. But faith ought to be kept.

Clearchus existimo dissensio populus occasio invadendus tyrannis; itaque colloquor primo cum Mithridates, civis suus hostis et promitto prodo urbs is; postea autem verto insidiæ qui civis paro in ipse Mithridates. Sed fides sum servandus.

All the sons of Hanno, not only those that appeared fit for assuming the government, but the rest also, and all his relations, are delivered up to punishment; that no one of so wicked a family might be left, either to imitate his villainy, or to revenge his death.

Omnis filius Hanno, non tantum is qui video habilis capessendus respublica, sed cæter quoque omnisque cognatus, trado supplicium; ne quisquam ex tam nefarius domus supersum, aut ad imitandus scelus, aut ad ulciscendus mors.

The Phocensians fly to arms; but there was neither leisure to prepare for war, nor time to get together auxiliaries; they are slaughtered, therefore, every where, and carried off. The miserable people had one comfort, that, as Philip had cheated his allies of their part of the plunder, they saw none of their goods in the hands of their enemies.

Phocensis ad arma confugio; sed neque sum spatium instruendus bellum, neque tempus ad contrahendus auxilium; cædo, igitur, passim, rapioque. Unus solatium miser sum, quod, cum Philippus fraudo socius portio præda, video nihil res suus apud inimicus.

When he came to the admi-

Cum venio ad admini-

nistration of the government, he did not think so much of governing as of increasing his kingdom: wherefore he subdued the Scythians, till that time invincible, who had cut off Sopyrio, a general of Alexander the Great, and had slain Cyrus, king of the Persians, with two hundred thousand.

stratio regnum, non tam cogito de regendum quam de augendus regnum; itaque perdomo Scythæ, usque ad id tempus invictus, qui deleo Sopyrio, dux Alexander Magnus, et trucido Cyrus, rex Persia, cum ducenti mille.

Lysander, when he found by his scouts, that the Athenians were gone ashore to plunder, and that the ships were left almost empty, did not let slip the opportunity of doing his business, and so put an end to the whole war.

Lysander, cum per speculator comperio, Atheniensis exeo prædatum, navisque relictus sum pene inanis, tempus gerendus res non dimitto, atque ita totus bellum deleo.

Whilst these things are doing in Egypt, king Dejoratus comes to Demetrius, to entreat that he would not suffer the lesser Armenia, his kingdom, to be laid waste by Pharnaces.

Dum hic in Ægyptus gero, rex Dejoratus ad Demetrius venio, oratum ne patior Armenia minor, regnum suus, vasto a Pharnaces.

Among the ancient Romans some matron of approved and well known morals was made choice of, to whom was committed all the children of the family, in whose presence it was neither allowable to speak what appeared shameful to be said, nor to do what was indecent to be done.

Apud vetus Romanus aliquis matrona probatus spectatusque 6 mos eligo, qui committo omnis soboles familia, coram qui neque fas sum dico qui video turpis dictu, neque facio qui sum inhonestus factu.

When the enemies saw Alexander alone, they flock together from all quarters; nor did he less courageously resist, and alone fight against so many thousands. It is incredible to be said, that not the multitudes of the enemies nor the vast num-

Cum hostis conspicio Alexander solus, undique concurro nec minus constanter resisto, et unus prælior adversus tot mille Sum incredibilis dictu, ut non multitudo hostis, non vis magnus telum, non

ber of weapons, nor so great shout of those that attacked him should fright him, that he alone should slaughter and put to flight so many thousands.

tantus clamor lacessens terreo, ut solus cædo ac fugo tot mille.

The last and dreadful day will soon approach, when we must all appear before our judge. What consternation will then seize the wicked! That mighty hand, which once opened the windows of heaven and broke up the fountains of the great deep, will then unlock all the magazines of fire, and pour a second deluge on the earth. The everlasting mountains will then melt like the snow which covers their summits, and all nature will be laid in ashes.

Ceres is the goddess of fruits, she first taught the art of ploughing and sowing. Before her time the earth lay rough and uncultivated, covered with briers and full of weeds, and the people lived on acorns.

How wonderful are the birds! A passage through the air, which has been denied to other animals, is open to them. They are capable of soaring up to the clouds; they suspend their bodies and continue motionless in an element lighter than themselves. They remount, and then precipitate themselves to the earth like a descending stone.

Virgil describes the seasons, and gives the sign of the weather proper for sowing, planting, grafting, and reaping.

When men are freed from the business and cares of life, they are generally more inclined to hear and to learn; but they mistake when they consider the knowledge of abstruse and strange things as necessary to living happily.

When Ceres was weary with travelling, and thirsty, she came to a cottage, and begged a little water of an old woman that lived there: The old woman not only gave her water, but also barley broth; which when the goddess supped up greedily, the woman's son Stellio, a saucy boy, mocked her. Ceres being thus provoked, threw some of the broth into the boy's face, and metamorphosed him into an evet.

A good man enjoyeth the tranquillity of his own breast, and rejoiceth in the happiness and prosperity of his neighbour; he openeth not his ear unto slander; the faults and fallings of men give a pain to his heart. His desire is to do good; and in removing the oppression of others, he relieveth himself.

Here is the place whither we are come to bathe, you may walk along the side of the river, I with my maid will repair to the grove, to enjoy the cool shade.

The poets tell many stories hard to be believed: They say, that when Prometheus stole fire from heaven, Jupiter was incensed, and sent Pandora to Prometheus with a sealed box; but Prometheus would not receive it. Jupiter sent her again with the same box to the wife of Epimetheus, the brother of Prometheus; and she being curious, as is natural to her sex, opened it, whereupon all sorts of diseases and evils with which it was filled, flew out amongst mankind, and have infested them ever since.

RULE X. REG. X.

52. PARTICIPLES, gerunds, and supines govern the case of their own verbs.

PARTICIPIA, *gerundia, et supina, regunt casum suorum verborum.*

Loving virtue.	*Amans virtutem.*
Wanting guile.	*Carens fraude.*
Having got riches.	*Nactus divitias.*
Having forgot your own affairs.	*Oblitus rerum tuarum.*
About to write a letter.	*Scripturus literas.*
Going to accuse him of theft.	*Accusatarus eum furti.*
Fond of reading books.	*Cupidus legendi libros.*
We must improve time.	*Utendum est ætate.*
They came to complain of injuries.	*Venerunt questum injurias.*
I shall go to serve the Grecian dames.	*Graiis servitum matribus ibo.*

Note 1. The participle in DUS governs the dative by No. 17.—And the supine in U has no case after it.

Note 2. Participles, gerunds, and supines, partake both of the nature of a noun and of a verb; and accordingly admit of a twofold construction. In the first respect, participles are construed as other adjectives, and the gerunds and supines, like other substantive nouns; but as they partake of the nature of a verb, they govern the case of the verbs from whence they come.

Note 3. VERBAL nouns, as well substantives as adjectives, sometimes govern the case of their verbs; as, Cic. *Justitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus.* Sall. *Insidiæ consuli non procedebant.* Ovid. *Ignis aquæ pugnax.* Just. *Gratulabundus patriæ.* Gall. *Populabundus agros.* Liv. *Vitabundus castra hostium.*

Note 4. *Exosus, perosus,* always, and *pertæsus* often govern the accusative; as, Ovid, *Tædas exosa jugales.* Liv. *Plebs consulum nomen perosa* Suet. *Pertæsus ignaviam suam.* But *pertæsus* sometimes takes the genitive; as, Tac. *Lentitudinis eorum pertæsa.*

Note 5. The gerunds in DI, in imitation of the substantive nouns, instead of the accusative, sometimes governs the genitive plural; as, Plaut. *Nominandi istorum erit copia.* Cic. *Facultas agrorum condemandi.*

Note 6. The verbs *do, reddo, volo, curo, facio, habeo,* with a participle perfect in the accusative, are often used by the way of cir-

cumlocution, instead of the verb of the participle; as, Ter. *Effecium dabo*, i. e. *efficiam*. Id. *Inventas reddam*, i. e. *eas inveniam*. Id. *Vos oratos volo*, i. e. *vos oro*. Id. *Me missum fac*, i. e. *me mitte*.

Note 7. The verbs *curo, habeo, mando, loco, conduco, do, tribuo, accipio, mitto, relinquo*, and some others, instead of the infinitive or subjunctive, are elegantly construed with the participle in DUS, joined with a substantive; as, Cic. *Funus et amplum faciendum curavi;* instead of *fieri*, or *ut fieret*. Id. *Demus nos philosophiæ excolendos, &c.*

The Asiatics, remembering the dignity of Beronice's father, and pitying her hard fortune, sent aid.

Asiatici, recordans 4 *dignitas pater Beronica, et misertus is indignus fortuna, mitto auxilium.*

Perseus, forgetting his father's fortune, bid his soldiers remember the old glory of Alexander.

Perseus, oblitus pater fortuna, jubeo suus miles reminiscor vetus gloria Alexander.

Junius Silanus, being asked his opinion concerning those that were detained in prison, voted that punishment ought to be inflicted.

Junius Silanus, rogatus sententia de hic qui in custodia teneo, decerno supplicium sum sumendus.

Pausanias too, the other general of the Lacedemonians, being accused of treachery went into banishment.

Pausanias quoque, alter dux Lacedæmonius, accusatus proditio, abeo in exilium.

Good magistrates, promoting the public interest, observing the laws, and favouring virtue, are worthy of honour.

Bonus magistratus, serviens communis utilitas, parens lex, et favens virtus, sum dignus honor.

Alexander, king of Egypt, dreading the cruelty of his mother, and preferring a secure and a safe life before a kingdom, left her.

Alexander, rex Ægyptus, timens crudelitas mater, et anteponens securus et tutus vita regnum, relinquo is.

Darius went about encouraging his men, and putting them in mind of the ancient glory of the Persians, and of the perpetual possession of empire given him by the gods.

Darius circumeo hortans suus, et admonens is vetus gloria Persa, et perpetuus possessio imperium datus sui a deus.

Having got Egypt without any contest, he goes into Li-

Potitus Ægyptus sine certamen, pergo in Libya,

bya, designing to visit the temple of Jupiter Hammon, and consult him concerning the event of the war.

Boys are not to be glutted with meat; for we cannot use our reason well, being filled with much meat and drink.

Many men abounding in gold and flowing in wealth, cannot deliver their minds from cares; no possession therefore is to be valued more than virtue.

Tiberius seldom used the Greek language, and abstained from it chiefly in the senate, insomuch that being about to mention the word *monopolium*, he asked pardon because he was obliged to make use of a foreign word.

Sylla for a long time so behaved himself, that he seemed to have no thought of setting up for the consulship.

There will be no other more seasonable time of delivering ourselves from the dread of the Carthaginians than now, whilst they are weak and needy.

After this the Carthaginians sent generals into Sicily, to prosecute the remains of the war, with whom Agathocles made a peace.

It would be tedious to recount what Annibal has done against us, and our armies by plundering our cities, and killing our fellow-soldiers.

The Bituriges sent deputies to Cæsar to complain of injuries,

visurus templum Jupiter Hammon, et consulturus is de eventus bellum.

Puer non sum implendus cibus; non enim possum utor mens recte, completus multus cibus et potio.

Multus homo abundans aurum, et circumfluens divitiæ, non possum libero animus cura; nullus possessio igitur sum plus æstimandus quam virtus.

Tiberius raro utor Græcus sermo, abstineoque maxime in senatus, adeo quidem ut, nominaturus vox monopolium, *postulo venia, quod sui utendum sum verbum peregrinus.*

Sylla diu ita sui gero, ut videor habeo nullus cogitatio petendum consulatus.

Non sum alius opportunus tempus liberandam ego metus Carthaginiensis quam nunc, dum sum infirmus et egenus.

Post hic Pæni mitto dux in Sicilia, ad persequendum reliquiæ bellum, cum qui Agathocles pax facio.

Longus sum recenseo qui Annibal patro in ego exercitusque noster, populandum urbs, et interficiendum commilito.

Bituriges mitto legatus ad Cæsar questum de in-

and to beg assistance against the Carnutes.

Timoleon took Memercus, the Italian general, a warlike man, and of great power, who had come into Sicily to assist the tyrants.

¶ All the soldiers of Alexander, forgetting their wives and children, looked upon the Persian gold, and the riches of all the east as their plunder; nor did they talk of wars and dangers, but the riches which they hoped to obtain.

Lysimachus being wont to hear Callisthenes, and receive precepts of virtue from him, pitying so great a man suffering the punishment not of any crime, but his freedom, gave him poison for a remedy of his misery: which Alexander took so ill, that he ordered him to be delivered to a very fierce lion.

The conditions of peace offered to Antiochus king of Asia were these: That Asia should be the Romans; that he should have the kingdom of Syria; that he should deliver up all his ships, prisoners, and deserters, and restore the Romans the whole charge of the war.

God though angry with sin, invites sinners to repentance; he offers them eternal happiness in heaven; but they despise his mercy, and hearken to the devil, who endeavours to tempt them to wickedness. They re-

juria, et petitum auxilium contra Carnutes.

Timoleon capio Mamercus, Italicus dux, homo bellicosus et potens, qui venio in Sicilia adjutum tyrannus.

Omnis miles Alexander, oblitus conjux et liberi, duco Persicus aurum, et opis totus oriens, ut suus præda; nec memini bellum et periculum, sed divitiæ qui spero obtineo.

Lysimachus solitus audio Callisthenes, et accipio præceptum virtus ab is, misertus tantus vir pendens pœna, non culpa, sed libertas, do is venenum in remedium calamitas; qui Alexander fero tam ægre, ut jubeo is trado ferox leo.

Conditio pax oblatus Antiochus, rex Asia, sum hic: Ut Asia sum Romanus; ut ille habeo regnum Syria; ut trado universus navis, captivus, et transfuga, et restituo totus sumptus bellum Romanus.

Deus, licet iratus peccatum, invito peccator ad pœnitentia: offero ille æternus felicitas in cœlum; sed contemno is misericordia, et pareo diabolus, qui conor pellicio is ad scelus

pent of their sins when it is too late, and their repentance cannot profit them, that is, when they suffer the punishment due to their folly.

Antoninus was a man of an illustrious family, but not very ancient, and who deservedly may be compared with Numa; he was cruel to nobody, kind to all, seeking out the most just men to manage the government, giving honour to the good, detesting the wicked, no less venerable than terrible to kings; he was called pious, on account of his clemency.

It was a thing worth the sight, to see Xerxes lurking in a small vessel, whom a little before the whole sea hardly contained; wanting likewise the attendance of servants, whose army, by reason of their number, were burdensome to the earth.

Epaminondas was modest, prudent, steady, wisely using the times, skilled in war, of a great spirit, a lover of truth, merciful, not only bearing with the injuries of the people, but his friends too; he was exercised very much in running and wrestling, and employed a great deal of his application in arms.

Philip sends deputies to Atheas, king of the Scythians, desiring a part of the expense of the siege. Atheas, blaming the rigour of the climate, and the barrenness of the land, which

Pœnitet is peccatum quando sum sero, et pœnitentia suus non possum prosum is, is sum, cum do pœna debitus stultitia suus.

Antoninus sum vir clarus 6 genus, sed non admodum vetus, et qui merito confero Numa; sum acerbus nullus, benignus cunctus, quærens justus ad administrandus respublica, habens honor bonus, detestans improbus, non minus venerabilis quam terribilis rex; pius propter clementia dico.

Sum res dignus spectaculum video Xerxes latens in exiguus navigium, qui paulo ante vix omnis æquor capio; carens etiam ministerium servus, qui exercitus, propter multitudo, sum gravis terra.

Epaminondas sum modestus, prudens, gravis, sapienter utens tempus, peritus bellum, magnus 6 animus, diligens veritas, clemens, non solum ferens injuria populus, sed etiam amicus; exerceo plurimum currendum et luctandum, et consumo plurimum studium in arma.

Philippus mitto legatus ad Atheas, rex Scythæ, petens portio impensa obsidio. Atheas, causatus inclementia cœlum, et sterilitas terra, qui non dito

did not enrich the Scythians with wealth, replied, That he had no riches wherewith he might satisfy so great a king, and that he thought it more scandalous to do but a little, than to refuse the whole.

Alexander, fond of high titles ordered himself to be adored. The most violent among the recusants was Callisthenes, which thing brought ruin on him, and on many of the great men of Macedonia; for they were all put to death under pretence of a plot. Nevertheless, the custom of saluting their king was retained by the Macedonians.

Many cities of Greece came to complain of the injuries of Philip, king of Macedonia; but such a dispute arose in the senate betwixt Demetrius, Philip's son, whom his father had sent to satisfy the senate, and the deputies of the cities, that, to sooth their minds, and to compose the differences, there was need of threats.

They do not believe there are any gods, and he thinks they are to be saved, to avoid the odium of gods and men. But I think the gods have reduced the Carthaginians to this condition, that they may suffer the punishment of their impiety; who, by breaking the treaties made with us in Sicily, Spain, Italy, and Africa, have brought upon us the heaviest calamities.

When both the prayers and the threats of the deputies were

Scythæ patrimonium, respondeo, Nullus sui opis sum qui expleo tantus rex, et puto turpis defungor parvus, quam abnuo totus.

Alexander, gaudens magnus titulus, jubeo sui adoro. Acer inter recusans sum Callisthenes, qui sum exitium ille, et multus princeps Macedonia: nam omnis interficio, sub species insidiæ. Tamen, mos salutandum rex retineo a Macedo.

Multus civitas Græcia venio questum de injuria Philippus, rex Macedonia; sed tantus disceptatio orior in senatus inter Demetrius, Philippus filius, qui pater mitto ad satisfaciendum senatus, et legatus civitas, ut ad mitigandus animus, et ad componendus lis, opus sum minæ.

Non credo sum deus, et ille censeo is sum servandus ad vitandus invidia deus homoque. At ego puto deus redigo Pœnus in hic status, ut luo pœna impietas; qui, violandum fœdus ictus egocum in Sicilia, Hispania, Italia, et Africa, infero ego gravis calamitas.

Cum et precis et minæ legatus sperno, armatus

slighted, they came armed to the city ; there they called gods and men to witness, that they came not to force but to recover their country ; and would show their countrymen, that not their courage, but fortune, had failed them in the former war.

The Helvetii by this time had carried their forces through the straits and the territories of the Sequani, and had come into the dominions of the Ædui, and were ravaging their country ; the Ædui, as they were not able to defend themselves and their possessions against them, sent deputies to Cæsar to beg assistance.

ad urbs venio ; ibi deus homoque testor, sui venio non expugnatum, sed recuperatum patria ; ostensurusque civis suus, non virtus, sed fortuna, desum sui in prior bellum.

Helvetii jam transduco suus copia per angustia et finis Sequani, et pervenio in finis Ædui, populorque is ager ; Ædui, quum non possum defendo sui suusque ab hic, mitto legatus ad Cæsar rogatum auxilium.

Demetrius compares prosperity to the indulgence of a fond mother, which often ruins the child ; but he compares the affection of the Divine Being to that of a wise father, who would have his sons to labour, to feel disappointment and pain, that they may gather trength and improve their fortitude. There is not on earth, says he, a spectacle more worthy the regard of a Creator intent upon his works, than a brave man superior to his sufferings ; it must be a pleasure to Jupiter himself to look down from heaven, and see Cato, amidst the ruins of his country, preserving his integrity.

Bacchus is said to have taught the art of planting the vine, of making honey, and tilling the ground ; but the ass of Nauplia also deserves praise, who used to gnaw the vines, and so taught men the art of pruning them.

---

§ 4. *The construction of* CIRCUMSTANCES.

1. *The* CAUSE, MANNER, *and* INSTRUMENT.

§ 4. Constructio CIRCUMSTANTIARUM.

1. CAUSA, MODUS. et INSTRUMENTUM.

RULE XI.

* 53. THE cause manner, and in-

REG. XI.

CAUSA, *modus, et instrumentum,*

strument is put in the ablative.

ponuntur in ablativo.

I am pale for fear. *Palleo metu.*
He did it after his own way. *Fecit suo more.*
I write with a pen. *Scribo calamo.*

Note 1. The CAUSE is known by the question *CUR?* or *QUARE? Why? Wherefore?* The MANNER by the question *QUOMODO? How?* And the INSTRUMENT by the question *QUOCUM? Wherewith.*

Note 2. The *cause* sometimes takes the prepositions *per, propter,* or *de, e, ex, præ*; as, Cic. *Legibus propter metum paret.* Id. *Cum e via languerem.* Id. *Nec loqui præ mœrore potuit.*

Note 3. The *manner* frequently admits the preposition *cum,* and sometimes *de, e, ex,* or *per;* as, Cic. *Semper magno cum metu dicere incipio.* Virg *Solito matrum de more locuta est.* Cic. *Quod adeptus est per scelus, id per luxuriam effundit.*

Note 4. The *instrument* seldom or never admits the preposition *cum,* but it is expressed sometimes with *a* or *ab,* by the poets; as, Ovid, *Hi jaculo pisces, illi capiuntur ab hamo.* But here observe, that *cum* is generally expressed with the *ablative of concomitancy,* which signifies something to be in company with another thing; as, *Ingressus est cum gladio.* He entered with a sword, *i. e.* having a sword with him, or about him. In like manner, Cic. *Desinant obsidere cum gladiis curiam.* Id. *Ut Vettius in foro cum pugione comprehenderetur.*

Note 5. To the *cause* may be referred the *matter* of which any thing is made; as, Liv. *Capitolium saxo quadrato substructum.* Virg. *Ære cavo clypeus.* But the preposition is more frequently expressed; as, Cic. *Pocula ex auro.* Virg. *Templum de marmore.* Cæs. *Naves factæ ex robore.* Cic. *Candelabrum factum e gemmis.*

Note 6. To the *manner* may be referred *the means by which;* as, Cic. *Amicos observantia rem parsimonia retinuit.* Sall. *Hanc quia bonæ artes desunt, dolis atque fallaciis contendit:* and *the respect wherein;* as, Cic. *Floruit cum acumine ingenii, tum admirabili quodam lepore dicendi.* Id. *Scipio omnes sale facetiisque superabat.* Cæs *Fama nobiles potentesque bello.* These also sometimes have the preposition expressed.

1. Cæsar was esteemed great for his favours and generosity, Cato for the integrity of his life.

Cæsar habeo magnus beneficium ac munificientia Cato integritas vita.

Clay hardens and wax softens by one and the same fire.

Limus duresco et cera liquesco unus idemque ignis.

Wrong nobody for thy own

Nemo violo tuus commo-

interest's sake ; men were born for the sake of men.

2. Pausanias feasted after the manner of the Persians, more luxuriously than them that were with him could endure.

Xerxes was conquered more by the contrivance of Themistocles, than the arms of Greece.

Syria was desolated by an earthquake, wherein a hundred and seventy thousand men and many cities perished.

Mithridates was a man very brisk in war, extraordinary for courage, a general for conduct, a soldier in action, a Hannibal for spite against the Romans.

3. Alexander stabbed his most dear friend Clitus with a sword.

They cut down the wood, which hung over the way, with hatchets.

Nero fished with golden nets, which he drew with chords of purple silk.

The Metapontini show, in the temple of Minerva, the iron tools with which Epeus made the Trojan horse.

Antonius fills the houses nigh the walls with the bravest of the soldiers, who forced away the defenders with trees, cudgels, tiles, and torches.

Fulvius surrounded the lurking places of the enemy with fire, Posthumius so disarmed them, that he scarce left them iron wherewith the ground might be tilled.

dum gratia ; homo homo causa genero.

Pausanias epulor, mos Persæ, luxuriose quam qui adsum possum perpetior.

Xerxes vinco magis consilium Themistocles, quam arma Græcia.

Syria vasto terra motus, qui centum et septuaginta mille homo et multus urbs pereo.

Mithridates sum vir acer bellum, eximius virtus, dux consilium, miles manus, Hannibal odium in Romanus.

Alexander transfodio carus suus amicus Clitus gladius.

Excido sylva, qui immineo via, securis.

Nero piscor aureus rete, qui extraho blatteus funis.

Metapontini ostento, in templum Minerva, ferramentum, qui Epeus fabrico Trojanus equus.

Antonius compleo tectum propinquus murus fortis miles, qui deturbo propugnator trabs, fustis, tegula, et fax.

Fulvius sepio latebra hostis ignis, Posthumius ita exarmo, ut vix relinquo ferrum qui terra colo.

¶ The contest was dubious till his army broke into the town. In that battle, being wounded under the breast, he began to faint through loss of blood, yet fought upon his knees, till he killed him by whom he had been wounded. The dressing of the wound was more painful than the wound itself.

Certamen sum ancèps donec exercitus irrumpo in oppidum. In is prælium trajectus sub mammam, cœpi deficio fluxus sanguis, tamen prælior genu, donec occido is a qui vulnero. Cunatio vulnus sum gravis ipse vulnus.

The Lacedemonians, as they observed the excellent conduct of Alcibiades in all things, were afraid, lest tempted by the love of his country, he should revolt from them, and return to a good understanding with his countrymen: wherefore they resolved to seek an opportunity of cutting him off.

Lacedæmonii, quum cognosco præstans prudentia Alcibiades in omnis res, pertimesco, ne ductus amor patria descisco ab ipse, et redeo in gratia cum suus; itaque instituo quæro tempus interficiendus is.

The shepherd, wearied by his wife's entreaties, returned into the wood, and found a bitch by the infant giving her dugs to the little one, and defending it from the wild beasts, and birds; and being moved with pity, with which he saw the bitch moved, he carried it to his cottage, whilst the same bitch followed.

Pastor fatigatus precis uxor, revertor in sylva et invenio canis fœmina juxta infans, præbens uber parvulus, et defendens a fera alesque; et motus misericordia, qui video canus motus, defero ad stabulum, dum idem canis persequor.

After this Alexander goes for India, that he might bound his empire with the ocean; to which glory, that the ornaments of his army might agree, he covers the horses' trappings and his soldiers arms with silver, and called his army, from their silver shields, Argyraspides.

Post hic Alexander ad India pergo, ut finio imperium oceanus; qui gloria, ut ornamentum exercitus convenio, induco equus phaleræ et miles arma argentum, et voco exercitus suus, ab argenteus clypeus Argyraspides.

When Alexander was come to the Guphites, where the e-

Cum Alexander venio ad Cuphites, ubi hostis op-

nemy waited his coming with two hundred thousand horse, the whole army being wearied, no less with the number of their victories, than the fatigue of the war, intreats him with tears, that he would make an end of the war, remember his country, and regard the years of his soldiers.

perior is adventus cum duceni mille eques, omnis exercitus fessus, non minus numerus victoria, quam labor bellum, deprecor is lacryma, ut facio finis bellum, memini patria, et respicio annus miles.

Annibal got Marcellus's ring together with his body. Crispinus fearing some trick would be played with it by the Carthaginian, sent messengers about the neighbouring cities that his colleague was slain, and the enemy had got his ring; that they should not believe any letters writ in the name of Marcellus.

Annibal potior annulus Marcellus, simul cum corpus Crispinus metuens nequid dolus necto a Pœnus, mitto nuncius circa proximus civitas, collega occido, et hostes potior annulus is; ne qui litera credo compositus nomen Marcellus.

After Seleucus was recalled into Asia by new commotions, Arsacus settles the kingdom of the Parthians, raises soldiers, fortifies castles, and strengthens the towns; he builds likewise a city, by name Dera, upon a mountain which is called Zapaortenon, of which place the nature is such, that nothing can be stronger or more pleasant than that mountain.

Postquam Seleucus revoco in Asia novus motus, Arsaces forma regnum Parthicus, lego miles, munio castellum, et firmo civitas; condo quoque urbs, nomen Dera, in mons qui appello Zapaortenon, qui locus conditio sum is, ut nihil possum sum munitus aut amœnus is mons.

He has shown above that avarice is worse than ambition, because among ambitious men are found some good and some bad; for almost all men are desirous of praise, glory and power; but seem to differ in this, that the good men attains to honour by the true way of

*Ostendo superius, avaritia sum deterior ambitio, propterea quod inter ambitiosus tam bonus quam malus invenio: nam omnis ferme sum cupidus laus, gloria et imperium; tamen video in hic differo, quod bonus accedo ad hono*r

virtue, but the bad by deceit and fraud.

Philip said, that he saw a cloud of terrible and bloody war rising in Italy; that he saw the storm roaring and thundering from the west, which, into whatever part of the earth the tempest of victory should drive it, would stain all places with a vast shower of blood.

After Alexander had received the cup at the feast to which Medius Thessalus invited him, he groaned in the middle of his draught, as if stabbed with a dart; and being carried out of the feast half alive, he was racked with so much pain that he called for his sword to kill himself with.

Whilst the rest flattered Alexander one of the old men, Clitus by name, in confidence of the king's friendship, of which he held the first place, defended the memory of Philip, and commended his exploits: but he so displeased the king, that he slew him in the entertainment with a spear, which he took from a lifeguard man.

Gallæcia, is very fruitful in brass and lead, and very rich in gold too, so that often with the plough they tear up golden sods. On the confines of this nation there is a sacred mountain, which it is reckoned a heinous crime to open with an iron tool; but if at any time the earth is

verus via virtus, malus autem dolus et fraus.

Philippus dico, sui video nubes trux et cruentus bellum consurgens in Italia; video procella tonans ac fulminans ab occasus, qui, in quicunque pars terra tempestas victoria defero, fœdaturus omnis magnus imber cruor.

Post quam Alexander accipio poculum in convivium ad qui Medius Thessalus voco is, ingemo in medius potio, velut confixus telum; elatusque e convivium semianimis, crucio tantus dolor, ut posco ferrum qui sui interficio.

Dum cæter adulor Alexander, unus ex senex, Clitus nomen, fiducia rex amicitia, qui primus locus teneo, tueor memoria Philippus, et laudo is res gestus; sed adeo displiceo rex, ut trucido is in convivium telum, qui aufero satellcs.

Gallæcia sum uber æs ac plumbum, dives quoque & aurum, adeo ut frequenter aratrum exscindo aureus gleba. In finis hic gens sum sacer mons, qui habeo nefas violo ferrum; sed si quando terra proscindo fulgor, permitto colligo

rent with lightning it is allowed to pick up the gold thus uncovered as a present from the god.

aurum sic detectus velut deus munus.

The glory of Cynægirus too, an Athenian soldier, is celebrated by mighty commendations of historians, who after innumerable slaughters, when he had driven the flying enemy to their ships, seized a loaded ship with his right hand, nor did he let it go till he lost his hand; then too he took hold of the ship with his left; which when he had likewise lost, he seized the ship with his teeth.

Gloria Cynægirus quoque, Atheniensis miles, celebro magnus laus scriptor qui post innumerus cædes, cum ago fugiens hostis ad navis, teneo onustus navis dexter manus, nec dimitto priusquam amitto manus; tum quoque comprehendo navis sinister; qui cum etiam amitto, detineo navis morsus.

Chabrias being surrounded by a concourse of the enemy, fought very bravely; but his ship being struck with a rostrum, began to sink. Though he might have escaped by swimming, if he would have thrown himself into the sea, because the fleet of the Athenians was at hand, he chose rather to perish than to quit the ship in which he had sailed; wherefore he was slain by the enemies' weapons, fighting hand to hand.

Chabrias circumfusus coneursus hostis, fortiter pugno; sed navis percussus rostrum, cæpi sido. Cum possum refugio nandum, si dejicio sui in mare, quod classis Atheniensis subsum, malo pereo quam relinquo navis in qui veho: itaque interficio hostis telum cominus pugnans.

When Helena, the mother of Constantine the Great, came to visit Judea, she found Jerusalem, and the country about, in a forlorn, ruinous condition; but, being animated with a noble zeal of adorning the theatre of the world's redemption, she caused, with a great deal of cost and labour the place where our Saviour had suffered to be cleared of rubbish, and a magnificent church to be built, which should inclose as many of the scenes of his sufferings as possible; which stately edifice is still standing, and is kept in good repair by the generous offerings of a constant concourse of Pilgrims, who annually resort to it. The walls of it are of stone, the roof of cedar, The east end incloses Mount Calvary, and the west the holy sepulchre.

To God, who is supreme, most wise and benificent, and to him alone, belong worship, adoration, thanksgiving, and praise; who

hath stretched forth the heavens with his hand, who setteth bounds to the ocean that it cannot pass, and saith unto the stormy winds, Be still; who shaketh the earth, and the nations tremble; who darteth his lightnings, and the wicked are dismayed; who calleth forth worlds by the word of his mouth; who smiteth with his arm, and they sink into nothing.

---

2. PLACE.

RULE XII.

* 54. THE name of a town of the first and second declension, and singular number, is put in the genitive, when the question is made by *UBI? Where?*

He lived at Rome.
He died at London.

2. LOCUS.

REG. XII.

1. *NOMEN oppidi primæ aut secundæ declinationis, et singularis numeri, ponitur in genitivo cum quæstio fit per* UBI?

Vixit Romæ.
Mortuus est Londini

Note 1. When the name of a town is put in the genitive, *in urbe*, or *in oppido* is understood; and therefore we cannot say, *Natusiest Romæ urbis celebris*, but *Romæ celebri urbe*, or *in Romæ celebri urbe*, or *in Roma celebri urbe*.

Note 2. *Humi, militiæ*, and *belli*, are also construed in the genitive, when the question is made by *ubi?* as, Ovid. *Procumbit humi* sup. *in terra* vel. *solo*. Id. *Prosternite humi juvenem*, sc. *ad terram*. Cic. *Cujus laudem domi defenderis*, sc. *in ædibus*. Ter. *Domi militiæque una fuimus*. And Sall. *Belli domique agitabatur*, sc. *in loco*.

Note 3. The names of towns belonging to this rule, are sometimes, though rarely, expressed in the ablative; as, Vitruv. *Hujus exemplar. Roma nullum habemus*, for *Romæ*. Just. *Rex Tyro decedit*, for *Tyri*.

* 55. The name of a town, of the third declension, or of the plural number, is expressed in the

2. *Nomen oppidi, tertiæ declinationis, aut pluralis numeri, in ablativo effertur,*

ablative, when the question is made by *UBI?*

cum quæstio fit per UBI?

He dwells at Carthage.	*Habitat Carthagine.*
He studied at Athens.	*Studuit Athenis.*
The oracles are silent at Delphi.	*Delphis oracula cessant.*

Note. Some names of towns of the third declension seem to be put in the dative; as, Plaut. *In Græcia et Carthagini.* Cic. *Convento Antonio Tiburi.* Nep. *Nulla Lacedæmoni tam est Nobilis vidua,* &c. But these are old ablatives instead of *Carthagine, Tibure, Lacedemone.* To which add *ruri* for *rure.*

* 56. When the question is made by *Quo?* [*Whither?*] the name of a town is governed in the accusative.

3. *Cum quæstio fit per* QUO? *nomen oppidi in accusativo regitur.*

I will send a letter to Syracuse.	*Epistolam Syracusas mittam.*
He went to Corinth.	*Profectus est Corinthum.*
He returned to Babylon.	*Rediit Babylonem.*

Note. We sometimes, though rarely, find the names of towns in the dative, instead of the accusative; as, Hor. *Carthagini nuncios mittam superbos.*

* 57. If the question is made by *UNDE?* [*Whence?*] or *QUA?* [*By or through what place?*] the name of a town is put in the ablative.

4. *Si quæratur per* UNDE? *vel* QUA? *nomen oppidi ponitur in ablativo.*

He departed from Athens.	*Discessit Athenis.*
He came from Corinth.	*Venit Corintho.*
I was passing through Laodicea.	*Iter Laodicea faciebam.*

Note 1. When the question is made by *QUA?* the preposition *per*. to subvert ambiguity, is generally added; as, Cor. *Cum iter per Thebas faceret.*

Note 2. These rules concerning the names of towns may be thus expressed; the name of a town after IN or AT is put in the genitive; unless it be of the third declension, or of the plural number, and then it is expressed in the ablative. The name of a town after TO or UNTO is put in the accusative; after FROM or THROUGH in the ablative.

* 58. *Domus* and *rus* are construed the same way as names of towns.

5. Domus *et* rus *eodem modo quo oppidorum nomina construuntur.*

He stays at home.	*Manet domi.*
He returns home.	*Domum revertitur.*
I am called from home.	*Domo accercius sum,*
He lives in the country.	*Vivit rure* vel *ruri.*
He hath gone to the country.	*Abiit rus.*
He returns from the country.	*Redit rure.*

Note. 1. The preposition is frequently expressed with *domus* and *rus*; as, Ter. *In domo* Sall. *In domum Bruti perducit.* Ascon. in Cic. *Ex rure in urbem revertebatur.*

Note 2. *Domus*, with the pronouns *meas tuas*, &c. often occurs in the accusative plural without a preposition; as, Sall. *Alius alium domos suas invitant.* But *rura* has the preposition always expressed; as, Varro. *Que inducuntur in rura.*

59. To the names of countries, provinces, and other places not mentioned, the preposition is generally added.

6. *Nominibus regionum, provinciarum et aliorum locorum non dictis, præpositio fere additur.*

He married a wife in Lemnos.	*In Lemno uxorem duxit.*
He came into Epire.	*Venit in Epirum.*
From Asia he went over to Europe.	*Ex Asia transit in Europam.*
I pass through Greece to Italy.	*Iter per Græciam in Italiam facio.*

Note 1. The preposition is frequently added to names of towns; as, Suet. *In Stymphalo mortuus est Terentius*, Sall. *Dum apud Zamam sic certatur.* Cic *Profectus sum ad Capuam.* Id. *A Brundusio nulla adhuc fama venerat.* And sometimes omitted to names of countries, &c. which in this case, are construed as names of towns; as, V. Max. *Filios Ægypti occisos cognovit.* Cic. *Sardiniam cum classe venit.* Liv. *Literæ Macedonia ablatæ.* Cic. *Nunc tota Asia vagatur.* Hor. *Ibam forte via sacra.* Liv. *Seu terra seu mari obviam eundum hosti foret.*

Note 2. With respect to names of towns, observe more particularly, 1. If an appellative or adjective be added, the preposition is generally expressed; as, Plin. *In Hispali oppido.* Propert. *Ad doctas proficisci Athenas.* Mart. *Hæc de vilifera venisse Vienna.* 2. When *nigh to* or *about a place*, is signified, the preposition, *ad* or *apud* is always added; as, Virg. *Bellum quod ad Trojam gesserat.* Cic. *Nos apud Alyziam unum diem commorati sumus.*

Note 3. *Peto*, when it signifies *to go*, governs the name of any place in the accusative without a preposition; as, Ovid. *Lacedæmona classe petebat.* Curt. *Ægyptum petere decrevit.*

Note 4. The adverb *versus*, when used, is always put after the names of places, sometimes with, but oftener without the preposition *ad* or *in*; as, Cic. *In Italiam versus navigaturus.* Id. *Amanum versus profecti.*

Note 5. The adverb *usque* is often joined to names of places, the prepositions *ad, a, ab, e, ex, de,* being sometimes expressed and sometimes understood; as, Cic. *Usque ad Numantium.* Id. *Usque Ennam profecti.* Plaut. *Usque e Persia.* Cic. *Usque Timoleo petivit.* Instead of *usque ad, usque ab,* the poets sometimes say *adusque, abusque*; as, Virg. *Adusque columnas, abusque Pachyno.*

ANNOTATIO.

***60. The distance of one place from another is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative.**

Distantia unius loci ab alio ponitur in accusativo, interdum et in ablativo.

The farm is distant from the city one day's journey. — *Villa distat ab urbe iter unius diei.*

The tower is twenty furlongs on this side the river. — *Turris est vigintia stadia citra fluvium.*

I will not stir a foot from you. — *A te pedem non discedam.*

He is at the distance of two day's journey. — *Bidui spatio abest.*

The king's army is thirty miles distance from ours.

Regis copiæ a nostris millibus passuum triginta absunt.

Note 1. One of the substantives expressing the distance, is sometimes suppressed; as, Cic. *Castra aberant bidui*, sc. *spatium, iter, viam*; or, *spatio, itinere, via.*

Note 2. When the place where a thing is done is signified, the word denoting the distance is either expressed in the ablative; as, Cæs. *Millibus passuum duobus ultra eum castra fecit*: Or in the accusative with *ad*; as, Cic. *Ad tertium milliarium consedit.* Nep. *Sepultus est ad quintum lapidem.*

Note 3. The EXCESS of measure or distance is always put in the ablative; as, *Hoc lignum excedit illud digito. Britanniæ longitudo ejus latitudinem quadraginta milliaribus superat.*

Note 4. The word of *distance* is governed in the accusative by *ad* or *per* understood, and in the ablative by *a* or *ab*.

54. My brother was born at London, studied at Geneva, and died at Marseilles.

Meus frater nascor Londinum, studeo Geneva, et morior Massilia.

55. Old age was no where more honoured than at Lacedemon, and servants were no where better treated than at Athens.

Senectus nusquam sum honoratus quam Lacedæmon, et servus nusquam bene habeo quam Athenæ.

Pyrrhus was slain at Delphi, and Philip was slain at Agæ, as he was going to see the public games.

Pyrrhus occido Delphi, et Philippus interficio Agæ, cum eo spectatum ludus publicus.

56. He led his army to Corinth, and immediately after to Megara, and from thence to Athens.

Duco exercitus Corinthus, ac protinus Megara, et inde Athenæ.

Annibal sent three bushels of gold rings to Carthage, which he had taken from the hands of the Romans slain at Cannæ.

Annibal mitto tres modius aureus annulus Carthago, qui detraho e manus Romanus occisus Connæ.

57. Cæsar setting out from Rome, came to Geneva; and Quintius going from Corinth, came to Philippi.

Cæsar profectus Roma, venio Geneva: et Quintius, profectus Corinthus, venio Philippi.

Dionysius sent for Plato from

Dionysius arcesso Plato

Athens, and at the same time brought back Philistus the historian to Syracuse.

Athenæ, simulque reduco Philistus historicus Syracusæ.

58. I used to be frequently in the country, but I was at home yesterday, and I will go home again to-morrow.

Soleo sum rus crebro, sed sum domus heri, et revertor domus cras.

All whom disgrace or villainy had chased from home, had flocked to Rome, as to a common sewer.

Omnis qui flagitium aut facinus expello domus, Roma, sicut in sentina, confluo.

The old fellow just now came out of the country, I will drive him into the country again.

Senex modo redeo rus, rus abigo is denuo.

59. Hannibal sent one army into Africa, left another in Spain, and carried a third along with him into Italy.

Hannibal mitto unus exercitus in Africa, relinquo alter in Hispania, et duco tertius suicum in Italia.

Cæsar gave up the kingdom of Egypt to Cleopatra, and from Alexandria he passed over to Syria, and from thence to Pontus.

Cæsar regnum Ægyptus Cleopatra permitto, et ab Alexandria transeo in Syria, et inde in Pontus.

Cato, returning from Africa brought the poet Ennius from Sardinia to Rome, whom we value very much.

Cato rediens ex Africa, deduco poeta. Ennius ex Sardinia Roma, qui plurimum æstimo.

Then Pyrrhus came into Campania, and encamped at the river Allia; but being soon forced to retire from Italy, he went into Sicily.

Tum Pyrrhus venio in Campania, et consideo ad flumen Allia; sed, mox coactus recedo ex Italia, proficiscor in Sicilia.

The Athenians taking this thing ill, removed the money, that had been contributed by all Greece for the expense of the Persian war, from Delos to Athens.

Atheniensis graviter hic res ferens, transfero pecunia, qui confero ab universus Græcia in stipendium Persicus bellum, a Delos Athenæ.

60. The Persian gulf is distant an hundred and fifteen miles from the Red Sea.

Sinus Persicus disto centum et quindecim millepassus a Mare Ruber.

Cæsar was patient of fatigue beyond belief, he made very long journies with incredible expedition, a hundred miles generally every day.

He pitched his camp six miles from the enemy, and he was at that time three day's journey from Tarentum.

¶ Cæsar divided his army into five parts, and left one at Brundusium, and another at Hydruntum, and another at Tarentum: Q. Valerius, being sent with another, seized Sardinia, very fruitful in corn; by his order Asinius Pollio went for Sicily, which Cato governed.

Whilst these things are done, it is told at Lacedemon, that a new war was broke out at Athens. King Pausanias is sent thither; who, being moved with pity of the exiled people, restored their country to the miserable citizens, and ordered the ten tyrants to remove to Eleusis.

It is reported that a remarkable thing happened at Gomphi: That twenty old noblemen were found in a physician's house, lying on the ground with cups in their hands, without any wound, like drunken men, and one as a physician, sitting in a chair, administering physic to the rest.

After that the ambassadors came to Marseilles, where they found that the affections of the Gauls had been already gained

Cæsar sum patiens labor ultra fides, conficio longus via incredibilis celeritas, centeni mille passus fere in singulus dies.

Pono castra sex 6 mille passus ab hostis, et tum absum 6 via triduum a Tarentum.

Cæsar divido copiæ in quinque pars, et relinquo unus Brundusium, alius Hydruntum, alius Tarentum; Q. Valerius, missus cum alius, occupo Sardinia, ferax frumentum; is jussu Asinius Pollio peto Sicilia, qui Cato præsum.

Dum hic ago, nuncio Lacedæmon, novus bellum exardeo Athenæ. Rex Pausanias eo mitto: qui, permotus misericordia exul populus, restituo patria miser civis, et jubeo decem tyrannus migro Eleusis.

Fero quidam memorabilis accido Gomphi: Viginti Senex nobilis reperio in ædes Medicus, jacens humus cum calix in manus, sine vulnus, similis ebrius, et unus seu medicus, sedens in sella, porrigens potio reliquus.

Deinde legatus venio Massilia, ubi cognosco animus Galli jam præoccupo ab Annibal; sed vix fu-

by Annibal, but that they would hardly be very faithful to him, their temper was so wild and savage, unless the affections of the great men were secured now and then by gold of which the nation was very greedy.

turus sum satis fidus, ingenium sum adeo ferox et indomitus, ni animus princeps concilio subinde aurum, qui gens sum avidus.

Whilst these things are doing ambassadors came from Darius, king of the Persians, to Carthage, bringing an edict, by which the Carthaginians were forbid to offer human sacrifices, and eat dog's flesh, and were commanded to burn the bodies of the dead rather than bury them in the earth; begging, at the same time, assistance against Greece, upon which Darius was about to make war.

Dum hic ago, legatus venio a Darius, rex Persa, Carthago, afferens edictum, qui Pœni prohibeo immolo humanus hostia, et vescor caninus; jubeoque cremo corpus mortuus, potius quam obruo terra; petens simul auxilium adversus Græcia, qui Darius bellum infero.

Before this engagement at sea, Xerxes had sent four thousand armed men to Delphi, to plunder the temple of Apollo as if he carried on the war, not with the Greeks only, but also with the immortal gods; which detachment was all destroyed with rains and thunder, that he might understand how vain the strength of men is against the gods.

Ante navalis prælium, Xerxes mitto quatuor mille armatus Delphi, ad templum Apollo diripiendus, quasi gero bellum, non cum Græci tantum, sed et cum deus immortalis; qui manus totus deleo imber et fulmen, ut intelligo quam nullus vires homo sum adversus deus.

The Athenians, as they had first revolted, so did they first begin to repent, turning their contempt of the enemy into admiration, and extolling the youth of Alexander above the conduct of old generals. Then he turns his army toward Thebes, intending to use the same kindness, if he had found

Atheniensis, sicut primus deficio, ita primus pœnitet cœpi, vertens contemptus hostis in admiratio, extollensque pueritia Alexander supra virtus vetus dux. Inde converto exercitus Thebæ, usurus idem indulgentia, si invenio par pœnitentia;

the same repentance; but the Thebans made use of arms, not prayers nor entreaty.

sed Thebani utor armâ, non precis nec deprecatio.

The first field of the civil war was Italy, the first signal sounded from Ariminum; then Libo was forced from Etruria, Thermis from Umbria, Domitius from Corfinium; and the war had been ended without bloodshed, if he could have mastered Pompey at Brundusium; but he got off through the barricade of the besieged harbour: scandalous to be said!

Primus arena civilis bellum Italia sum, primus signum Ariminum cano; tum Libo pello Etruria, Thermus Umbria, Domitius Corfinium; et bellum perago sine sanguis si possum opprimo Pompeius Brundusium; sed ille evado per claustrum obsessus portus: turpis dictu!

But at Carthage, as so many commanders were dangerous to a free state, an hundred judges are chosen out of the number of the senators, who upon the return of the generals from the war, should demand an account of things transacted: that upon this awe, they might so consider their command in the war, as to have a regard to the judicatures and laws at home.

Carthago autem, cum tot imperator sum gravis liber civitas, centum judex deligo ex numerus senator, qui reversus e bellum dux exigo ratio res gestus; ut, hic metus, ita cogito imperium in bellum, ut judicium lexque domus respicio.

The king of Persia's commanders sent messengers, to Athens to complain, that Chabrias made war with the Egyptians against the king. The Athenians fixed Chabrias a certain day, before which, if he did not return home, they declared they would condemn him to die. Upon this he returned to Athens.

Præfectus rex Persia mitto legatus Athenæ questum, quod Chabrias gero bellum cum Egyptius adversus rex. Atheniensis præstituo Chabrias certus dies, ante qui, nisi redeo domus, denuncio sui condemno ille caput. Tum ille Athenæ redeo.

They brought Cornelius, our consul, deceived by an oath, to their general, as it were for the sake of seeking him, who was at that time sick, and presently

Adduco Cornelius, consul noster deceptus jusjurandum ad dux suus quasi gratia visendum is, qui cum ægroto, et mox ab-

after carried him away prisoner out of Sicily into Africa, with twenty ships. They put our general Regulus likewise to death.

When these things were told Marcellus, he sent ambassadors immediately to Syracuse, to complain of the violation of the treaty: the ambassadors said, that there would never be wanting an occasion of war, unless Hyppocrates and Epycides were banished not only from Syracuse, but far from Sicily. Upon this Epycides persuades the Leontini to revolt from the Syracusans.

Darius, that he might reduce Greece under his authority, fitted out a fleet of five hundred ships, and set Datis and Artaphernes over it; who came to Attica, and drew out their troops into the plain of Marathon, that is distant about ten miles from the city Athens. The Athenians, being very much startled at this alarm, sought for assistance no where but from the Lacedemonians: but at home ten officers were chosen to command the army.

After this Tullus Hostilius, Ancus Martius, the grandson of Numa by a daughter, took upon him the goverment; he fought against the Latins, added mount Aventine and Janiculum to the city: he built the city Ostia upon the sea, at the six-

duco captivus e Sicilia in Africa, cum viginti navis. Interimo quoque dux noster Regulus.

Quum hic nuncio Marcellus, mitto legatus extemplo Syracusæ, qui expostulo de violatio fœdus: legatus dico, nunquam desum causa bellum nisi Hyppocrates atque Epycides ablego, non modo ab Syracusæ, sed procul a Sicilia. Deinde Epycides persuadeo Leontini deficio a Syracusani.

Darius ut redigo Græcia in suus potestas, comparo classis quingenti navis, præfacioque is Datis et Artaphernes; qui ad Attica accedo, ac deduco suus copiæ in campus Marathon is absum ab oppidum Athenæ circiter decem mille passus, Atheniensis, permotus hic tumultus, peto auxilium nusquam nisi a Lacedæmoni: domus autem decem prætor creo qui præsum exercitus.

Post Tullus Hostilius, Ancus Martius, nepos Numa ex filia, suscipio imperium; contra Latini dimico, adjicio mons Aventinus et Janiculus civitus; condo civitas Ostiæ supra mare, sextus deci-

teenth mile from the city Rome.

mus 6 milliarium ab urbe Roma.

Diana had a most magnificent temple at Ephesus. It was supported by 127 pillars, which were built by 127 kings. Each of the pillars was 60 feet high. The statue of the goddess was of ebony.

The father of Pomponius was a lover of learning, and taught his son every thing that a boy could be taught at Rome. Afterwards Pomponius went to Athens. The most noble university of the world was at Athens. Young noblemen and the sons of kings were sent from all parts to Athens.

Cicero, the greatest of the Roman orators, was born at Arpinum, Cicero removed from Arpinum to Rome. The excellent endowments of his mind soon made him famous at Rome. After he had discharged several other offices of the Roman republic, at last he was made consul. Cicero discharged the consulship with so great watchfulness and industry, that he was called the father of his country. That honour was given to none before Cicero.

The nation of the Seuvi is the greatest and most warlike of all the Germans. The Seuvi are said to have an hundred cantons, from which they bring forth many thousands of armed men yearly to fight. The rest stay at home. They live upon milk and flesh, and exercise themselves in hunting.

When Arion the Lyric poet was sailing from Lesbos to Italy, the sailors resolved to throw him into the sea, that they might get his money; but Arion entreated that they would suffer him first to play a tune upon his harp; which was granted. Upon this Arion tuned his harp, and played so artfully, that by the sweetness of his music, he drew the dolphins round the ship, who, when he was cast into the sea, received him on their backs, and carried him to Tenedos.

They say, that the famous oracle of Apollo, at Delphi in Bœtia became dumb, when Christ our Saviour came into the world; and that when Augustus, who was the great votary of Apollo, desired to know the reason of its silence, the oracle answered him, That in Judea a child was born, who was the supreme God, and had commanded him to depart and return no more answers.

Mount Vesuvius is distant about seven miles from Naples, rising in the middle of a large plain, above four miles off the sea: from which it is seen gradually to increase in height, till it is half a mile perpendicular above the level of the sea; when it becomes almost circular, being about five miles diameter. This is the basis of the mountain, out of which arises a smaller mount, called Mount Vecchio, four hundred paces high, and at top near two miles in circumference.

3. TIME.

RULE XIII.

*61. TIME is put in the ablative, when the question is made by *QUANDO? When?*

He died the twentieth year of his age.	*Vigesimo anno ætatis obiit.*
In what period did he live?	*Quo tempore vixit?*
Many years ago.	*Multis abhinc annis.*

3. TEMPUS.

REG. XIII.

1. *TEMPUS ponitur in ablativo, cum quæstio fit per* QUANDO?

Note 1. To this rule belong *mane, diluculo, sero, raro, noctu, quotannis*, which are commonly esteemed adverbs; as also, the old ablatives *luci, tempori, vesperi*, used instead of *luce, tempore, vespere*.

Note 2. The phrases *id temporis, isthuc ætatis, hoc ætatis, illud horæ*, and the like, have *circa* or *ad* understood, and are put for *eo tempore, isthac ætate, hac ætate illa hora*.

*62. When the question is made by *QUAMDIU? How long?* time is put in the accusative or ablative, but oftener in the accusative.

Ennius lived seventy years.	*Annos septuaginta vixit Ennius.*
Pluto's gate is open night and day.	*Noctes atque dies patet janua Ditis.*
Caligula reigned three years, ten months and eight days.	*Caligula imperavit triennio, decem mensibus, diebus octo.*

2. *Cum quæstio fit per* QUAMDIU? *tempus ponitur in accusativo vel ablativo, sed sæpius in accusativo.*

These two rules may be thus expressed:

Time WHEN, is put in the ablative; *Time* HOW LONG, or CONTINUANCE *of Time*, is put sometimes in the ablative, but oftener in the accusative.

Note 1. Both *time* WHEN and HOW LONG are governed by a preposition expressed. 1. *Time* WHEN, as Ter *In tempore ad eam veni.* Hor. *Surgunt de nocte latrones.* Cic. *præsto fuit ad horam.* Id. *Te penitus rogo, ne te tam longæ viæ per hyemem committas.* Liv. *Consul intra paucos dies moritur.* 2. *Time* HOW LONG; *as,* Cic. *Sero resistimus ei, quem per annos decem aluimus contra nos.* Id. *Bestiæ ex se natos amant ad quoddam tempus.* Id. *Habebit senatus in hunc annum quem sequatur.* Cæs. *Qui intra annos quatuordecem tectum non subierunt.* Cic. *Quæ inter decem annos facta sunt.*

Note 2. The way of supplying the following and like expressions ought carefully to be studied; as, Cic. *Annos natus unum et viginti,* sup. *ante* Curt. *Tyrus septimo mense, quam oppugnari cœpta erat, capta est,* i. e. *postquam.* Cic. *Septigentos jam annos amplius unis moribus vivunt.* sc. *quam per.* Nep. *Minus diebus triginta in Asiam reversus est,* sup. *quam in.*

61. Hannibal returned to Africa the third year after he had fled from home.

Hannibal ad Africa redeo tertius annus postquam profugio domus.

Tiberius died in the seventieth and eighth year of his age, and twenty-third of his reign.

Tiberius obeo septuagesimus et octavus annus ætas, et vigesimus tertius imperium.

Constantius died in Britain at York, in the thirteenth year of his reign.

Constantius obeo in Britannia Eborocum, tertius decimus annus principatus.

Bocchus, at the beginning of the war, had sent ambassadors to Rome to desire a league and alliance.

Bocchus, initium bellum, mitto legatus Roma petitum fœdus et amicitia.

Aulus called out his soldiers in the month of January, from winter-quarters, upon an expedition.

Aulus evoco miles mensis Januarius ex hyberna, in expeditio.

The usurer calls in all his money on the Ides, and seeks to lay it out on the Kalends.

Fœnerator relego omnis pecunia Idus, et quæro Kalendæ pono.

In the same year there was an earthquake betwixt the islands of Thera and Therasia, and on a sudden an island rose out of the deep.

Idem annus sum terra motus inter insula Thera et Therasia, et repente insula emergo ex profundum.

In Asia too, the same day, the same earthquake shattered

In Asia quoque, idem dies, idem motus terra con-

Rhodes, and many other cities.

62. Homer and Hesiod lived about an hundred and fifty years before the building of Rome.

Mithridates reigned sixty years, lived seventy-two, and had a war with the Romans forty years.

Pythagoras, after he had lived twenty years at Crotona, removed to Metapontum, and there he died.

Caligula lived twenty-nine years; he reigned three years, ten months, and eight days.

Agamemnon with much ado took one city in ten years, Epaminondas in one day delivered all Greece.

The labours of many months and years may perish in a moment of time.

¶ When this was told to the senate, immediately the consul set out with an army, and took a place for his camp three miles from the enemy. About the fourth watch he marched out of the camp, and the work was carried on so fast, that the Volsci found themselves surrounded by a strong intrenchment at sunrise.

Whilst the works go on more diligently in the day than they are guarded in the night a great multitude coming out of the town armed chiefly with

cutio Rhodus, multusque alius civitas.

Homerus et Hesiodus vivo circiter centum et quinquaginta annus antè Roma conditus.

Mithridates regno sexaginta annus, vivo septuaginta duo, et habeo bellum contra Romanus quadraginta annus.

Pythagoras, cum annus viginti Crotona ago, Metapontum migro, ibique decedo.

Caligula vivo 6 *annus viginti novem ; impero* 6 *triennium, decem* 6 *mensis,* 6 *diesque octo.*

Agamemnon vix capio unus urbs decem 6 *annus, Epaminondas unus* 6 *dies libero totus Græcia.*

Labor multus mensis et annus intereo possum 6 *punctum tempus.*

Cum hic nuncio senatus, extemplo consul proficiscor cum exercitus, et capio locus castra, tres mille passus ab hostis. Quartus vigilia egredior e castra, et opus adeo appropero, ut Volsci video sui circumvallatus firmus munimentum sol ortus.

Dum opus fio diligenter dies, quam custodio nox, magnus multitudo egressus ex urbs, armatus præcipue fax, conjicio ignis,

torches, threw fire about, and in a minute of time the fire consumed the mole and the vineæ, a work of so long a time; and a great many men, bringing aid in vain, perished by fire and sword.

Datames took Thyus alive, a man of a huge body, and a terrible countenance, because he was black, of long hair, and a long beard; whom the day after he clothed in a fine robe, which the king's viceroys used to wear; he dressed him up likewise in a collar, and bracelets of gold, and other royal apparel, and brought him to the king of Persia.

In the wings likewise two young men of an extraordinary bigness were seen to fight, nor did they appear any longer than the battle lasted. The incredible swiftness of fame increased this admiration; for the same day that the battle was fought in Italy, the news of the victory was told in Corinth, Athens, and Lacedemon.

In that battle, Astyages is taken, from whom Cyrus took nothing else but his kingdom, and acted the grandson towards him, rather than the conpueror, and set him over the great nation of the Hyrcanians. This was the end of the empire of the Medes; they enjoyed the enpire three hundred and fifty years.

About the same time there was an earthquake in the parts

et momentum hora, incendium haurio agger et vinea opus tam longus tempus; et multus mortalis, ferens opis frustra, absumo ignis ferrumque.

Datames capio Thyus vivus, homo magnus corpus, terribilisque 6 *facies, quod sum niger, longus* 6 *capillus,* 6 *barbaque promissus; qui posterus dies bonus vestis tego, qui satrapa rex gero consuesco; orno etiam torquis, et armilla aureus, cæterque regius cultus, et ad rex Persia adduco.*

In cornu quoque duo juvenis, eximius 6 *magnitudo, video r pugno. nec ultra appareo quam pugnatur. Incredibilis velocitas fama augeo hic admiratio; nam idem dies qui in Italia pugnatur, nuncio victoria Corinthus, Athenæ, et Lacedæmon.*

In is prælium Astyages capio, qui Cyrus adimo nihil alius quam regnum, et ago nepos in is, magis quam victor, et præpono is magnus gens Hyrcani. Hic sum finis imperium Medi; potior imperium trecenti et quinquaginta annus.

Idem fere tempus sum terra motus in regio Hel-

of the Hellespont and the Chersonese, by which the city Lysimachia, built two and twenty years before by Lysimachus, was ruined, which foreboded dreadful things to Lysimachus and his family, and the ruin of his kingdom, with the desolation of the harassed provinces.

The Phenicians built Carthage in Africa, fifty years before the taking of Troy. The founders of it were Xorus and Charcedon: but as the Romans, and Carthaginians themselves believe, Dido, a woman who had come from Tyre into those parts, whose husband Pygmalion, who ruled at Tyre, had slain.

The Spartans at that time had so far degenerated from their ancestors, that whereas the bravery of the citizens had been for several ages a wall to the city, the citizens then thought they could not be secure, unless they lay lurking within walls. But much about the same time the troubled state of Macedonia recalled home Cassander from Greece.

Hiero, being born of a maid-servant, was exposed by his father, as the disgrace of his family; but bees for several days fed the infant, destitute of human assistance, with honey. For which reason the father, being encouraged to it by the answer of the Haruspices, takes home the child, and with the

lespoutus et Chersonesus, qui urbs Lysimachia, conditus duo et viginti annus ante a Lysimachus, everto, qui portendo dirus Lysimachus et stirps is, et ruina regnum, cum cladēs regio vexatus.

Phœnices condo Carthago in Africa, quinquaginta annus ante captus Ilium. Conditor sum Xorus et Charcedon: sed, ut Romani, et Carthaginienses ipse existimo, Dido, mulier qui venio Tyrus in is locus, qui maritus Pygmalion, qui potior res Tyrus, interficio.

Spartani is tempus tantum degenero a majores, ut cum virtus civis multus 6 seculum sum murus urbs, civis tunc existimo sui non forem salvus, nisi intra murus lateo. Sed idem fere tempus turbatus status Macedonia revoco domus Cassander a Græcia.

Hiero, ex ancilla natus, a pater expono, velut de honestamentum genus; sed apis multus 6 dies alo parvulus, humanus opis egens, mel. Ob qui res pater, admonitus responsum Aruspex, recolligo parvulus, omnisque stu-

utmost care educates him for the hopes of the majesty that was promised.

dium instituo ad spes majestas qui promitto.

Prodigies in the heavens had foretold the future greatness of Mithridates: for both the year he was born, and that wherein he first began to reign, a comet both times shone so for seventy days together, that all the heavens seemed to be on fire: for it took up a fourth part of the heavens by its bulk, and with its brightness outshone the splendour of the sun, and whilst it was rising and setting, took up the space of four hours.

Cœlestis ostentum prædico futurus magnitudo Mithridates: nam et is annus qui gigno, et is qui primum cœpi regno, cometes per uterque tempus ita luceo, septuaginta 6 dies, ut cœlum omnis flagro video; nam magnitudo suus quartus pars cœlum occupo, et fulgor sui nitor sol vinco, et cum orior occumboque consumo spatium quatuor hora.

Virgil died at Brundusium in the fifty-first year of his age, and was buried at Naples, eighteen years before the Christian æra.

Whilst Sir William Wallace was besieging the castle of Cupar in Fife, he was informed that the English were advancing to cross the river Forth; wherefore he led his army from Cupar to Stirling. There was a wooden bridge over the Forth at Stirling. When Cressingham, general of the English, had passed the Forth with the greatest part of his army, the bridge broke, and the passage of the rest was stopt. Wallace attacked those who had passed the river, made great slaughter, killed Cressingham their general, and drove the rest back into the river. So great was the overthrow, that all the English were either slain, or swallowed up by the river. This signal victory was gained by Wallace in the year 1297.

Circe, the daughter of Sol, was the most skilful of all the sorceresses. The proud woman poisoned her husband, king of the Sarmatæ, that she herself might reign alone. For this heinous crime, being shut out of her kingdom by her subjects, she fled into Italy, and there fixed her seat on a certain promontory in Etruria. There she changed Scylla, the daughter of Phorcus, into a sea monster. Ulysses, returning from Troy, was driven by the violence of storms on the promontory of Circe; who entertained him at her house twelve months, and restored to their former shapes his companions, whom she had formerly metamorphosed into hogs, bears, and wolves.

The industrious woman is up with the sun; she waketh at the crowing of the cock, and walketh abroad to taste the sweetness of the morning. Her garment sweepeth the dew drop from the new stubble and the green grass. Her house is elegant, and plenty smileth at her table. Her work is done at the evening; but the work of the slothful is put off till to-morrow.

Of the Ablative of Price.

RULE XIV.

* 63. THE price of a thing is put in the ablative.

De Ablativo Pretii.

REG. XIV.

PRETIUM rei in ablativo ponitur.

I bought a book for two shillings. — *Emi librum duobus assibus.*

This man sold his country for gold. — *Vendidit hic auro patriam.*

Demosthenes taught for a talent. — *Demosthenes docuit talento.*

Note 1. The ablative of PRICE is found often annexed to verbs of buying and selling: such as, *emo, mercor, vendo, veneo, sto, consto, liceor, licitor, addico, &c.* But is not confined to these: For it is subjoined to any sort of verb; as, Cic. *Triginta millibus dixistis eum habitare.* Ter. *Vix drachmis est obsonatum decem.* And to the adjectives; as, Senec. *Quod non opus est, asse carum est.* Plaut. *Vile est viginti minis.* Propert. *Auro venalia jura.* This ablative, however, depends neither on the verb nor adjective, but is governed by the preposition *pro* understood; which too is sometimes, though more rarely expressed; as, Liv. *Dum pro argenteis decem aureus unus valeret* Lucil. *Vendunt te quod pro minore emptum* To the genitives *tanti, quanti,* &c. in No. 64, following, we may understand *pro æris pretio, seu pondere;* or *pro pretii, vel ponderis ære.*

Note 2. To the verb *valeo* is sometimes subjoined an accusative of price, the preposition *ad* being understood; as, Varr. *Denarii dicti quod denos æris valebant.*

Note 3. These ablatives, *magno, permagno, parvo, paululo, minimo, plurimo,* often occur without any substantive; as, Senec. *Parvo fames constat, magno fastidium.* Cic. *Permagno decumas vendidisti.*

* 64. These genitives, *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris,* are excepted.

Excipiuntur hi genitivi, tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris.

How much cost it? — *Quanti constitit?*

A shilling and more. — *Asse et pluris.*

Note 1. To these adjectives add their compounds, *quanticunque, quantiquanti, tantidem;* as. Senec. *Non concupisces ad libertatem quanticunque pervenire.* Cic. *Quantiquanti bene emitur quod necesse est.* Id. *Ibi tantidem frumentum emeret, quanti domi vendi-*

disset. To which add *majoris;* as, Phæd. *Multo majoris alapæ mecum veneunt.*

Note 2. If the substantive be expressed, these genitives are turned into the ablative; as, Cic. *Authepsa illa, quam tanto pretio mercatus est.* Juv. *Quanto metiris pretio?* Gall. *Mercatur libros minore pretio.* Liv. *Nec majore pretio redimi possumus.*

63. Isocrates sold one oration for twenty talents.

Isocrates vendo unus oratio viginti talentum.

Nothing costs dearer than that which is bought with prayers.

Nullus res care consto quam qui precis emo.

That victory cost the Carthaginians much blood and wounds.

Is victoria sto Pæni multus sanguis ac vulnus.

Despise pleasure; pleasure hurts when bought with pain.

Sperno voluptas; voluptas emptus dolor noceo.

A great many posts are sold for gold, but wise men do not buy hope at a great price.

Plurimus honor veneo aurum, sed sapiens non emo spes magnus pretium.

Fish-ponds are built at a great expence, filled at a great expence, and maintained at a great expence.

Piscina ædifico magnum impleo magnum, et alo magnum.

64. Merchants use to sell their goods at as high a rate as they can.

Mercator soleo vendo res suus tantum quantum possum.

Those things please more, which are bought at a dearer rate.

Magis ille juvo, qui plus emo.

The fisher may be bought sometimes for less than his fish.

Piscator interdum possum emo minus quam piscis.

Nothing shall cost a father less than his son: but Demosthenes taught nobody for less than a talent.

Res nullus minus consto pater quam filius; sed Demosthenes doceo nemo minus talentum.

¶ I have Virgil, with *notæ variorum,* which cost me five shillings; besides Horace, with notes for the use of the Dauphin, which cost me five shillings and sixpence; I have likewise Cicero's select orations, with notes for the use of the

Sum ego Virgilius, cum nota varius, qui consto ego quinque solidus; præterea Horatius, cum nota in usus Delphinus, qui consto ego quinque solidus et sex as; habeo etiam Cicero selectus oratio, cum

Dauphin, which I bought for four shillings.

Whilst these things are doing, one of Alexander's friends, whose name was Ephæstion, died; he was very dear to Alexander, who lamented his death above measure, and made him a monument that cost ten thousand talents, and ordered him to be worshipped as a god after his death.

nota in usus Delphinus, qui emo quatuor solidus.

Dum hic ago, unus amicus Alexander, qui nomen sum Ephæstion, decedo; sum percarus Alexander, qui lugeo is mors supra modus, et facio is monumentum, qui consto decem mille talentum, et jubeo is colo ut deus post mors.

Lycurgus, the brother of Eunomus, who reigned at Lacedemon, was a famous lawgiver. He ordered every thing to be purchased, not with money, but with exchanges of merchandise. He abolished the use of gold and silver, as the occasion of all wickedness. He divided the administration of the commonwealth among the states; to the king he granted the power of war, to the senate the guard of the laws.

Lycurgus, frater Eunomus, qui regno Lacedæmon, sum inclytus legislator. Jubeo siuguli emo, non pecunia, sed compensatio merx. Tollo usus aurum argentumque, velut materia omnis scelus. Divido administratio respublica per ordo; rex potestas bellum permitto, senatus custodia lex.

Whilst Alexander, the following year, enters upon the Persian war, that had been begun by his father, he is informed, that the Thebans and Athenians had revolted from him to the Persians, and that the author of that revolt was Demosthenes the orator, having been bribed by the Persians with a great sum of gold, namely, with two hundred talents and more.

Dum Alexander, posterus annus, aggredior Persicus bellum inchoatus a pater, certior fio, Thebani et Atheniensis deficio a sui ad Persæ, auctorque is defectio existo Demosthenes orator, corruptus a Persæ magnus pondus aurum, nempe, ducenti talentum et plus.

The Gauls, when the country that had produced them, could not contain them, sent

Galli, cum terra qui gigno is non capio, mitto, initium æstas, trecenti mil-

out, in the beginning of summer, three hundred thousand men to seek new habitations; who passed the insuperable summits of the Alps; and such was the terror of the Gallic name, that kings not attacked, did of their own accord purchase, peace with a large sum.

Parmenio, ignorant of Alexander's illness, had written to him, to beware of his physician, that he was corrupted by Darius with a great sum of money; Alexander however thought it safer to trust the doubtful faith of the physician than perish; he therefore took the cup, delivered the letter to the doctor, and, as he drank, he fixed his eyes on his countenance as he read.

le homo, ad quærendus novus sedes; qui transcendo invictus jugum Alpes; tantusque sum terror Gallicus nomen, ut rex non lacessitus ultro mercor pax ingens pecunia.

Parmenio, ignarus Alexander infirmitas, scribo ad is, ut caveo a medicus, ille corrumpo a Darius ingens pecunia; Alexander tamen reor tutus credo dubius fides medicus quam pereo; accipio igitur poculum, trado epistola medicus, et, inter bibendum, intendo oculus in vultus legens.

In the island of Rhodes, Apollo had a statue called Colossus 70 cubits high, which was erected at the mouth of the harbour. One man could scarcely grasp its thumb. The distance between its legs was 15 or 20 cubits at least; for a large ship with tall masts, could easily pass betwixt its shanks. This statue cost 300 talents and more.

Sarah, Abraham's wife, died at Kirjatharba in the land of Canaan, being 127 years old. As Abraham at this time was a stranger in that country, he applied to Ephron the Hittite, begging that he would allow him a piece of ground for a burial-place. Ephron answered Abraham, saying, The cave of Macpelah, and the field wherein it is, are mine: I compliment you both with the field and the cave; bury thy dead. Abraham bowed down himself before Ephron, returned him thanks, and said, I rather chuse to purchase the field for as much as it is worth; I pray thee accept of a price. Ephron replied, The field is worth 400 shekels of silver, but what is that betwixt me and thee? Abraham paid down the money to Ephron, and then buried Sarah his wife.

Of the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

RULE XV.

* 65 A SUBSTANTIVE with a participle, whose case depends upon no other word, are put in the ablative absolute.

The sun rising [or, while the sun riseth] darkness flies away.

Our work being finished [or when our work is finished] we will play.

DE ABLATIVO ABSOLUTO.

REG. XV.

SUBSTANTIVUM cum participio, quorum casus a nulla alia dictione pendet, ponuntur in ablativo absoluto.

Sole oriente fugiunt tenebræ.

Opere peracto ludemus.

Note 1. *Whilst, when, after, having, being,* or a word ending in *ing,* are the usual signs of this ablative; which generally takes place when two parts of a sentence respect different persons or things; as, Ovid. *Me duce, carpe viam.* Id. *Et fugiunt, fræno non remorante, dies.* Where the persons *ego* and *tu,* and the things *dies* and *frænum* are different.

Note 2 The participle *existente* is frequently understood; as, Plaut. *Me suasore hoc factum,* i. e. *me existente suasore,* Liv. *Sylvam vendas, nobis consulibus,* sc. *existentibus.* Virg *Rege Latino.* Hor. *Jove æquo.* In like manner, *Fatis auctoribus, Deo duce, comite fortuna, invita Minerva, me ignaro, cælo sereno, aspera hyeme, me puero, Saturno rege, civitate nondum libera, cæteris paribus, &c.*

Note 3. Sometimes the participle only is expressed; in which case *negotio* is understood, or the sentence supplies the place of the substantive; as, Hor. *Excepto quod non simul esses, cætera lætus.* Liv. *Nondum comperto quam regionem hostes petissent.*

Note 4. The participles meant in this rule are chiefly the participle present, and the participle perfect of passive verbs. Some few examples indeed occur of the future in *RUS;* as, Mart. *Cæsare venturo, Phosphore, redde diem.* But the future in *DUS* is seldom or never thus used.

Note 5. In using the participle perfect, the learner ought carefully to observe, whether it be passive or deponent: for we do not say *Jacobus his locutis abiit,* but we say *Jacobus hæc locutus abiit.*

Note 6. This ablative may be resolved into the nominative, with

cum, dum, quando, postquam, si, quoniam, or the like ; as, Cic. *Pythagoras, Superbo regnante, in Italiam, venit* i. e. *cum, dum,* vel *quando Superbus regnabat.*

Note 7. This ablative, though it be called *absolute,* is however governed by *sub, cum, a* or *ab,* understood; which sometimes seem to be expressed ; as, Virg. *Sole sub ardenti.* Cato. *Cum dis volentibus,* Lucan. *Positis repetistis ab armis.*

Note 8. In some old authors we meet with *nobis præsente, absente nobis, præsente testibus,* instead of *nobis præsentibus, &c.*

Whilst our cavalry were coming up, the enemy all on a sudden showed their foot, which they had planted in ambuscade.

Noster equitatus adventans, hostis subito ostendo pedestris copia, qui colloco in insidiæ.

When these things were told at Rome, the senate gave the command of the Achaian war to the consul.

Hic res nunciatus Roma, senatus decerno summa Achaicus bellum consul.

The enemy, after they knew of his coming, having raised great forces, attacked our army in their march.

Hostis cognitus is adventus, coactus magnus copiæ, adorior noster agmen in iter.

Lævinus, after having recovered all Sicily, after having humbled Macedonia, returned with great glory to Rome.

Lævinus, omnis Sicilia receptus, Macedonia fractus, cum ingens gloria Roma regredior.

This matter being proposed to a council, when he found they all thought the same thing, he appoints the next day for the battle.

Hic res delatus ad concilium, cum cognosco omnis sentio idem, constituo proximus dies pugna.

Drawing out his forces about break of day, and having formed them into two lines, he waited to see what measures the enemy would take.

Productus copiæ primus lux, et duplex acies institutus, expecto quid consilium hostis capio.

Nero committed many parricides ; after putting to death his brother, wife, and mother, he fired the city of Rome.

Nero multus parricidium committo ; frater, uxor, et mater interfectus, urbs Roma incendo.

In the room of Æneas, Ascanius his son succeeded ; who leaving Lavinium, built Longa

In locus Æneas, Ascanius filius succedo ; qui, relictus Lavinium, condo

Alba Longa, which was the metropolis of the kingdom for three hundred years.

¶ Alexander, when he had over-run India, came to a rock of wonderful ruggedness and height into which many people had fled; and when he understood that Hercules had been restrained by an earthquake from the taking of that rock, being seized with a desire of outdoing the actions of Hercules, he made himself master of the rock with the utmost fatigue and danger.

The Roman people, after Cæsar and Pompey were slain, seemed to have returned to their former state of liberty; and they would have returned, had not Pompey left children or Cæsar an heir, or, which was more fatal than either, had not Antony, the rival of Cæsar's power, the incendiary and firebrand of the following age, survived.

Hannibal being called home to defend his country, was desirous to make an end of the war by treaty, the wealth of his country being now exhausted; but the articles were not agreed to. A few days after this he engaged with Scipio at Zama, and being routed, (incredible to be said,) in two days and two nights he came to Adrumetum, which is about three hundred miles distant from Zama.

Galba, having fought some successful skirmishes, and hav-

Alba Longa, qui sum caput regnum trecenti 6 annus.

Alexander, peragratus India, pervenio ad saxum mirus asperitas et altitudo in qui multus populus confugio; et ubi cognosco Hercules prohibitus terra motus ab expugnatio idem saxum, captus cupido superandum factum Hercules, potior suxum cum summus labor ac periculum.

Populus Romanus, Cæsar et Pompeius, trucidatus, videor redeo in pristinus status libertas; et redeo, nisi Pompeius relinquo liberi, aut Cæsar hæres, vel, qui, sum perniciosus uterque, si non Antonius, æmulus Cæsarianus potentia, fax et turbo sequens seculum, supersum.

Hannibal revocatus defensum patria, cupio compono bellum, facultas patria jam exhaustus; sed conditio non convenio. Pauci dies post is confligo cum Scipio apud Zama, et pulsus (incredibilis dictu,) 6 biduum et duo 6 nox Adrumetum pervenio, qui absum circiter trecenti mille passus a Zama.

Galba, secundus aliquot vrælium factus. expug-

ing taken several of their forts, deputies too being sent to him from all parts, and a peace concluded, resolves to quarter two cohorts among the Nantuates, and to winter himself with the other cohorts of that legion, in a village of the Veragri, which is called Octodurus: and as it was divided into two parts by a torrent, one part of the village he assigned to the Gauls, the other he allotted for the cohorts to winter in.

tusque complures is castellum, legatus quoque missus ad is undique, et pax factus constituo colloco duo cohors in Nantuates, et hiemo ipse cum reliquus is legio cohors, in Vicus Veragri, qui appello Octodurus; et quam in hic duo pars flumen divido, alter pars is vicus Gallus concedo, alter cohors ad hiemandum attribuo.

The state of the Juhones in alliance with us was afflicted with a sudden calamity; for fires issuing from the earth, every where, seized their towns, farms, and dwellings, nor could they be extinguished. During the same year too, the tree Ruminalis, that, eight hundred and forty years ago, had sheltered the infancy of Remus and Romulus, was broken down, its branches being dead, and its trunk withered.

Civitas Juhones socius ego affligo improvisus malum; nam ignis terra editus, passim corripio villa, arvum, et vicus, neque extinguo possum. Idem quoque annus, arbor Ruminalis, qui, octingenti et quadraginta annus ante, tego infantia Remus Romulusque, diminuo, mortuus ramale, et arescens truncus.

Alexander died three and thirty years and a month old; a man endowed with a greatness of soul above human power. Some omens of his future greatness appeared at his birth; for the day on which he was born two eagles sat all day upon the top of his father's house; the same day too his father received the news of two victories. After the time of his boyship was over, he grew up under Aristotle, the famous teacher of

Alexander decedo tres et triginta annus et unus mensis natus; vir præditus magnitudo animus supra humanus potentia. Nonnullus prodigium futurus magnitudo in ipse ortus appareo; nam is dies qui nascor, duo aquila sedeo totus 6 dies supra culmen domus pater is; idem quoque dies pater accipio nuncius duo victoria. Exactus pueritia, cresco sub

all the philosophers. Upon his coming to the kingdom, he ordered himself to be called the king of all the earth and the world. When he was present, his soldiers feared the arms of no enemy.

The Carthaginians, upon hearing this answer, sent for Hannibal home. He, as soon as he returned, was made prætor, in the two and twentieth year after he had been king. For at Carthage every year two kings were made, as consuls are at Rome. The year after his Prætorship, when M. Claudius and L. Furius were consuls, ambassadors came from Rome to Carthage; and Hannibal, supposing they were sent on account of demanding him, goes aboard a ship, and fled into Syria to Antiochus.

The Gauls did so abound with numbers of people, that they filled all Asia as it were with a swarm; at last they resolved to turn their arms against Antiochus; upon information whereof, he redeems himself from them with gold, as from robbers; and claps up an alliance with his hirelings.

Aristoteles, inclytus doctor omnis philosophus. Acceptus imperium, jubeo sui appello rex omnis terra ac mundus. Ille præsens, miles timeo arma nullus hostis.

Carthaginiensis, hic responsum cognitus, revoco Hannibal domus. Hic, ut redeo, prætor fio, annus secundus et vicesimus postquam rex sum. Carthago enim quotannis binus rex creo, ut consul Roma. Annus post prætura, M Claudius et S Furius consul, legatus Roma Carthago venio; et Hannibal, hic sui exposcendus gratia missus ratus, conscendo navis, atque profugio in Syria ad Antiochus.

Gallus adeo abundo multitudo, ut impleo omnis Asia velut examen; tandem statuo verto arma in Antiochus; qui cognitus, redimo sui ab hic aurum velut a prædo; societasque cum mercenarius suus jungo.

Cyrus having subdued the Lesser Asia, as likewise Syria and Arabia, entered Assyria, and bent his march towards Babylon. The siege of this important place was no easy enterprise. The walls were of a prodigious height, the number of men to defend them very great, and the city stored with all sorts of povisions for twenty years. However, these difficulties did not discourage Cyrus from prosecuting his design, who after spending two entire years before the place, became master of it by a stratagem upon a festival night, which the Babylonians were accustomed to spend in drinking and debauchery, he ordered the bank

of the canal above the city, leading to the great lake, that had been lately dug by the Nitocris, to be broken down; and having thus diverted the course of the river, by turning the whole current into the lake, he caused his troops to march in by the bed of the river, who now penetrated into the heart of the city without opposition, surprised the guards of the palace, and cut them to pieces. The taking of Babylon put an end to the Babylonian empire, and fulfilled the predictions which the prophets Isaiah, Jeremiah, and Daniel, had uttered against that proud metropolis.

III. *The construction of words indeclinable.*

III. Constructio vocum indeclinabilium.

1. Of ADVERBS

1. ADVERBIORUM.

* 66. SOME adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive.

1. *ADVERBIA quædam temporis, loci, et quantitatis, regunt genitivum.*

In the mean time.	*Interea loci.*
At that time.	*Tunc temporis.*
Where in the world?	*Ubi terrarum?*
To what nation?	*Quo gentium?*
Abundance of power.	*Abunde potentiæ.*
Enough of words.	*Satis verborum.*

1. The adverbs of time are, "interea, postea, inde, tunc."

2. The adverbs of place are *ubi* and *quo*, with their compounds, "ubique, ubicunque, ubiubi, ubinam, ubivis, alibi, "alicubi, quocunque, quovis, aliquo, quoquo;" also "eo, "huc, huccine, unde, usquam, nusquam, longe, ibidem."

3. The adverbs of quantity are, "abunde, affatim, largi- "ter, nimis, quoad, satis, parum, minime."

The words *ergo for the sake*, *instar*, and *partim*, usually added here, are real substantives.

Note 1. *Pridie* and *postridie* govern the genitive or the accusative; as, Cic. *Pridie ejus diei. Cæs. Postridie ejus diei.* Cic. *Pridie quinquatrus.* Id. *Postridie ludos Apollinares.* Thus, *pridie, postridie, Kalendas, Nonas, Idus,* seldom *Kalendarum, &c.*

Note 2. The adverbs, *en, ecce,* take the nominative or the accusative; as, Cic. *En causa, cur dominum servus accuset* Senec. *En Paridis hostem.* Cic. *Ecce multa major dissensio.* Plaut. *Ecce rem.*

Note 3. To these constructions the words *negotium, res, locus, tempus,* or the like, with some preposition, is understood. Thus, *Interea loci,* i. e. *interea negotia loci. Ubi terrarum,* i. e. *ubi in negotio terrarum. Quo gentium* i. e. *cui negotio* vel *loco gentium. Abunde potentiæ, i. e. abunde de re potentiæ.* And *pridie ejus die,* i. e. *pridie ante tempus ejus diei.* To *en* and *ecce,* some verb is understood; as, *En Priamus,* sc. *adest. Ecce duas aras,* sc. *videtis.*

* 67. Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives.

2. *Quædam adverbia derivata regunt casum primitivorum.*

Most elegantly of all.	*Elegantissime omnium.*
Agreeably to nature.	*Congruenter naturæ.*
A foot high.	*Alte pedem.*
Beyond expectation.	*Amplius opinione.*

Note. These adverbs require the same supplies to complete the construction, as the adjectives from which they are formed.

66. 1. Whilst I wandering about and deprived of my country, you in the mean time have made yourself rich.

After this, the consul, now unquestionable conqueror, came to the town of Cirta.

The strength of the Athenians at that time was small, their fleet being sent into Egypt.

2. What you were doing, or where in the world you were, I could not so much as guess.

He came to that height of

Dum ego errans patria careo, tu interea locus tu locupleto.

Postea locus consul, haud dubie jam victor, pervenio in oppidum Cirta.

Vires Athenienses tunc tempus sum parvus, classis in Ægytus missus.

Quis ago, aut ubi terra sum, ne suspicior quidem.

Eo vecordiu procedo, ut

madness, that what I should do, or to what part of the world I should fly, I knew not.

quis ago, aut quo gens fugio nescio.

Where in the world are we? Are we come to this pass? Are we come to this pitch of misery?

Ubinam gens sum? Huccine res venio? Eone miseria venitur?

I can find my brother no where; but in whatever part of the world he may be, he will be beloved by good men.

Frater nusquam gens invenio; sed ubicunque terra sum, diligo a bonus vir.

Let him go to any part of the world, the affair will be in the same condition: virtue every where will find friends.

Abeo quovis gens, res ibidem locus sum: virtus ubique locus invenio amicus.

3. Cæsar said that he had got abundance of power and glory, and plenty of wealth.

Cæsar dico sui adipiscor potentia gloriaque abunde, et divitiæ affatim.

Let him have plenty of old wine, that he may drink day and night.

Habeo vetus vinum largiter, ut dies noxque poto.

Too much artifice seems to have been used for charming the ears; he that behaves right will have plenty of applauders.

Nimis insidiæ capiendus auris adhibeo videor; qui recte facio habeo satis laudator.

Will he become an excellent poet, who has no courage to dash the words that have little beauty? By no means.

Fione ille egregius poeta, qui non audeo expungo verbum qui parum splendor habeo? Minime gens.

67. The lynx is said to see the most clearly of all quadrupeds.

Lynx dico cerno clare omnis quadrupes.

I do not ask what he says, but what he can say agreeably to reason.

Non quæro quis dico, sed quis possum dico convenienter ratio.

The Sulmonenses opened the gates, and all went out to meet Antony.

Sulmonenses porta aperio, et omnis obviam Antonius exeo.

The ground being covered with dung a foot thick, must be formed into beds before you begin to sow.

Terra stercoratus pes alte, in pulvinus redigendus sum antequam sero incipio.

The Numidians possess the

Numidæ teneo cæter lo-

other parts as far as Mauritania; the Mauri are next to Spain.

cus usque ad Mauritania; proxime Hispania Mauri sum.

The beauty of Glycera, shining more bright than Parian, marble, consumes me.

Nitor Glycera, splendens pure Parius marmor, uro ego.

Thus speaks Neptune, and swifter than speech he smooths the swelling seas, disperses the collected clouds, and brings back the day.

Sic aio Neptunus, et dictum cito placo tumidus æquor fugo collectus nubes solque reduco.

¶ Astyages, being frighted at this answer, gave his daughter in marriage neither to a famous man, nor to one of that country, but to Cambyses, a mean man of the nation of the Persians, at that time obscure. And the fear of the dream not being laid aside even thus, he sends for his daughter big with child, that the infant might be slain under the eye of his grandfather.

Astyages, exterritus hic responsum, trado filia in matrimonium neque clarus vir, neque civis, sed Cambyses, mediocris vir ex gens Persæ, tunc tempus obscurus. Ac ne sic quidem somnium metus depositus, arcesso filia gravidus, ut sub avus oculus partus neco.

The Lacedemonians, having consulted the oracle at Delphos concerning the event of the war, are ordered to seek a general from the Athenians: But the Athenians, when they understood the answer, in contempt of the Spartans, sent Tyrtæus, a poet, lame of a foot; who being routed in three battles, reduced the Spartans to that despair, that they manumitted their slaves for the recruiting of their army.

Lacedæmonii, oraculum Delphi consultus de bellum eventus, jubeo peto dux ab Athenienses: Porro Athenienses, cum cognosco responsum, in contemptus Spartani, mitto Tyrtæus, poeta claudus pes; qui tres prælium fusus, eo desperatio Spartani adduco, ut manumitto servus ad supplementum exercitus.

I know not whether it would not have been better for the Roman people to have been content with Sicily and Africa, or

Nescio an satius sum populus Romanus sum contentus Sicilia et Africa, aut etiam hic careo, quam

even to have wanted these, than to grow to that bigness as to be destroyed by their own strength: for what thing else produced intestine distractions, than excessive good fortune? and whence came that desire of superiority and domineering, but from excessive wealth?

Cyrus, the day following, forsook his camp; but left plenty of wine, and those things that were necessary for a feast. The queen sends her son with a third part of her forces to pursue Cyrus. When they were come to Cyrus's camp, the young man ignorant of military affairs, as if he was come to a feast, not to a battle, letting the enemy alone, suffers the barbarians to load themselves with wine; and the Scythians are conquered by drunkenness.

He is an orator, who, on every question, can speak finely and ornately, and in a manner fit for persuading, but in these times of ours, neither sufficient pain is bestowed in reading authors, nor in searching into antiquity, nor upon the knowledge either of things or of men, or of the times.

Diomedon came to Thebes with a vast quantity of gold, and drew over Micythus, a young man, by five talents to his lure. Micythus went to Epaminondas, and tells him the occasion of Diomedon's coming; but he, in the presence of Diomedon,

eo magnitudo cresco, ut vires suus conficio; quis enim res alius furor civilis pario, quam nimius felicitas? et unde venio ille cupido principatus et dominandum nisi ex nimius opes?

Cyrus, dies posterus, desero castra; at relinquo vinum affatim, et is qui epulum necessarius sum. Regina mitto filius cum tertius pars copiæ ad insequendus Cyrus. Cum venitur ad Cyrus castra, adolescens, ignarus res militaris, veluti ad epulæ, non ad prælium venio, omissus hostis, patior barbarus onero sui vinum; et Scythæ ebrietas vinco.

Is sum orator, qui, de omnis quæstio possum dico pulchre et ornate, et apte ad persuadendum: sed hic noster tempus, nec satis opera insumo in cognoscendus auctor, nec in evolvendus antiquitas, nec in notia vel res, vel homo, vel tempus.

Diomedon venio Thebæ cum magnus pondus aurum et perduco Micythus, adolescentulus, quinque talentum, ad suus voluntas, Micithus Epaminondas convenio, et ostendo causa Diomedon adventus: at

said, There is no need of money; for if the king desire those things that are expedient for the Thebans, I am ready to do them for nothing; but if the contrary, he has not gold and silver enough.

ille, Diomedon coram, inquam, Nihil opus sum pecunia; nam si rex is volo qui Thebani sum utilis, gratis facio sum paratus; sin autem contrarius, non habeo aurum atque argentum satis.

Next day Cæsar, before the enemy could recover themselves from their consternation and flight, led his army into the country of the Suessiones, who are next to the Remi; and, having performed a great march, he came to the city Noviodunum. After fortifying his camp having reared the vineæ, having cast up a mount, and erected turrets, he began to storm the town.

Postridie eis dies Cæsar, priusquam hostis recipio sui ex terror ac fuga, duco exercitus in finis Suessiones, qui sum proximus Remi; et, magnus iter confectus, ad oppidum Noviodunum pervenio. Castra munitus, vineæ actus, agger jactus, turrisque constitutus, oppidum oppugno cæpi.

Micipsa, as Jugurtha was fond of Military glory, resolves to expose him to dangers, hoping he would fall, either in making a show of his bravery or by the fury of the enemy. But that matter fell out quite otherwise than he imagined; for Jugurtha, as he was of an enterprising and penetrating genius, after he came to know the general's temper, by much pains and much diligence, and by often exposing himself to dangers, came in a short time to so great reputation, that he was a very great terror to the enemy.

Micipsa, quod Jugurtha sum appetens gloria militaris, statuo objecto is periculum, sperans occasurus, vel ostendandum virtus, vel sævitia hostis. Sed is res longe aliter evenio ac reor, nam Jugurtha, ut sum impiger atque acris 6 ingenium, ubi cognosco natura imperator, multus labor multusque cura, et sæpe eundum obviam priculum brevi pervenio in tantus claritudo, ut sum magnus terror hostis.

Lycurgus suffered the young men to use no more than one coat in a whole year, nor any

Lycurgus permitto juvenis utor non ample unus vestis totus 6 annus, nec

one to go finer than another, nor fare more sumptuously. He ordered young women to be married without fortunes, that wives might be chosen, not money. He ordered the greatest respect should belong, not to the rich and powerful, but to old men, according to the degree of their age; nor indeed has old age any where on earth a more respectful habitation than at Lacedæmon.

quisquam progredior cultè quam alter, nec epulor opulenter. Jubeo virgo nubo sine dos, ut uxor eligo non pecunia. Volo magnus honor sum, non dives et potens, sed senex, pro gradus ætas; nec sane usquam terra senectus locus honoratus habeo quam Lacedæmon.

Cotta being asked his opinion, spoke to this purpose: It is the part of wise men to do nothing rashly. I do not think that we ought to remove from our winter-quarters without the order of Cæsar. Our winter-quarters being fortified, we shall easily withstand the forces of the Germans. You see, that we have bravely withstood the first assault of our enemies. Our enemies, after receiving many wounds, have desisted from the siege. We have enough of corn. Cæsar will not forget his faithful soldiers. What is more foolish, what is more disgraceful, than to listen to the advice of an enemy in so important an affair? It becomes us to remember that we are Romans.

The Tyrians sent ambassadors to meet Alexander, with presents for himself, and provisions for his army. But when he desired to enter the city, under pretence of offering sacrifice to Hercules, they refused him admittance; which provoked Alexander, now flushed with so many victories, to such a degree of resentment, that he resolved to storm the city and enter it by force. The city then stood on an island half a mile distant from the shore, was surrounded with a strong wall 150 feet high; the inhabitants had plenty of provisions, and were stored with all sorts of warlike machines. Alexander, however, by carrying a mole or causey 200 feet broad, from the continent to the island, transported his army, and after a siege of seven months, battered down the walls, took the city by storm, and fully executed upon that wealthy and wicked city, the judgments long before denounced by the prophets.

Of Prepositions.

2. Præpositionum.

68. THE prepositions *ad*, *apud*, *ante*,

1. *PRÆPOSITIONES ad, a*

&c. govern the accusative.

pud, ante, &c. *accusativum regunt.*

To the Father.

Ad patrem.

Note. To the prepositions governing the accusative, some add *circiter, prope, usque,* and *versus:* but these are real adverbs, having the prepositions *ad* understood; which, with the last three, is sometimes expressed.

69. The prepositions *a, ab, abs,* &c. govern the ablative.

2. *Præpositiones* a, ab, abs, &c. *regunt ablativum,*

From the Father.

A patre.

Note 1. To the prepositions governing the ablative, some add *procul;* but this is an adverb, having *a* or *ab* understood, or sometimes expressed; as, Virg. *Procul a patria.*

Note 2. *Tenus* is put after its case, and when the noun is plural, usually governs the genitive; as, Virg. *Crurum tenus a mento palearia pendent.* Cic. *Lumborum tenus.* But sometimes the ablative; as, Ovid, *Pectoribus tenus.*

Note 3. That *a* and *e* are put before consonants, *ab* and *ex* before vowels or consonants, *abs* before *q* and *t;* as, *a patre, e regione; ab initio, ab rege; ex urbe, ex parte; abs quovis homine, abs te.*

70. The prepositions *in, sub, super,* and *subter,* govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified.

3. *Præpositiones* in, sub, super, *et* subter, *regunt accusativum, cum motus ad locum significatur.*

I go into the school.
He shall go under the earth.
It fell upon the troops.
He brings him under the roof.

Eo in scholam.
Ibit sub terras.
Incidit super agmina.
Ducit subter fastigia.

71. But if motion or rest in a place be signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ab-

At si motus vel quies in loco significetur, in et sub *regunt ablati-*

lative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

vum; super *et* subter *vel accusativum vel ablativum.*

I run or sit in the school. *Discurro vel sedeo in schola*

I lie or walk under the shade. *Ambulo vel recubo sub umbra.*

He pitched his camp beyond the river. *Posuit castra super amnem.*

He sits upon the grass. *Sedet super fronde.*

The veins are dispersed under the skin. *Venæ subter cutem dispergiuntur.*

They continue under the target-fence. *Subter testudine manent.*

Note 1. *In*, signifying *to, into, toward, against, till, until, over, after, for, upon, by*, or *between*, governs the accusative; but when it signifies *in* or *among*, it generally takes the ablative.

Note 2. *Sub*, signifying *at* or *about such a time*, generally governs the accusative. But when it signifies *nigh to*, or *near a place*, it commonly takes the ablative.

Note 3. *Super*, signifying *beyond, above, besides, upon, at*, or *in time of*, governs the accusative; but when it signifies *about, concerning, for*, or *because of*, it takes the ablative.

Note 4. *Subter* takes very rarely the ablative, and only among poets.

GENERAL NOTES.

1. The word governed by the preposition is sometimes suppressed; as, *ad Opis, ad Dianæ;* supply *ædem. A Vestæ*, supply *æde.*

2. The preposition itself is frequently suppressed: as, Cæs. *Circiter meridiem.* Cic. *Prope muros.* Curt. *Usque pedes.* Plin. *Orientem versus.* Virg. *Devenere locos.* Cic. *Magnam partem ex Iambis constat oratio*, sup. *ad.* Ter. *Nunc id prodeo, ire inficias, suppetias, exsequias.* sup. *ab* or *propter.* Virg. *Maria aspera, juro*, sup. *per.* Liv. *Procul seditione*, sup. *a.* Cæs. *Se loco movere*, sup. *e.* Hor. *Vina promens dolio*, sup. *ex.* Ter. *Quid illo facias*, sup. *de*, Vitruv. *Aliud alius loco nascitur*, sup. *in.* Juv. *Fallit nos vitium specie virtutis*, sup. *sub.*

72. A preposition often governs the same case in composition that it does without it.

4. *Præpositio in compositione eundem sæpe casum regit quem extra.*

Let us go to the school.	*Adeamus scholam.*
He speaks to his brother.	*Alloquitur fratrem.*
He carried the army over the river.	*Exercitum fluvium transduxit.*
They go out of the church.	*Exeunt templo.*
He departed from the city.	*Decessit urbe.*
They engage in battle.	*Ineunt prælium.*
They come up to the walls.	*Subeunt muros.*
He excels all.	*Supereminet omnes.*
He is carried round the fort.	*Circumvehitur arcem.*

Note 1. This rule takes place only when the preposition may be dissolved from the verb, and put before the case by itself; as Virg. *Alloquor patrem*, i. e. *loquor ad patrem*, Liv. *Circumvehitur arcem*, i. e. *vehitur circum arcem.*

Note 2. The preposition is frequently repeated; as, Cic. *ad nos adeunt.* Cæs. *Exire e finibus suis.* Cic. *In rempublicam invasit.*

Note 3. Some verbs compounded with *e* or *ex* govern the ablative, or the accusative, *extra* being understood; as, Virg. *Exire septis. Stat. Exire campum*, sc. *extra campum.* Ovid. *Portubus egredior.* Plin. *Egredi veritatem*, sc. *extra veritatem.* Virg. *Excedere terra.* Lucan. *Excedere muros*, sc. *extra muros.* Virg. *Erumpunt portis.* Id. *Erumpere nubem*, sc. *extra nubem.* In like manner, *Prævehi littus, prælabi mœnia*, sc. *præter littus, præter mœnia.*

68. After they came to a conference, peace was concluded between them.	*Postquam venio ad colloquium, pax ordino inter is.*
The swallows come before summer, they take pleasure to fly through the air.	*Hirundo venio ante æstas, gaudeo volito per aura.*
The boy practises piety towards God, reverence towards men.	*Puer exerceo pietas adversus Deus, reverentia erga homo.*
The general drew up his army on this side the Alps, nobody ever fought more stoutly against an enemy.	*Dux instruo acies cis Alpes, nemo unquam pugno fortiter contra hostis.*
He takes the towns about Capua, he rewards the soldiers according to their bravery.	*Occupo urbs circa Capua, remuneror miles secundum virtus.*
The moon drives her chariot beneath the sun, the heaven is stretched out above the clouds.	*Luna ago currus infra sol, cælum porrigo supra nubes.*

69. The boy is praised by us, he is approved by you, he is blamed by others without reason.

Friends are changed with fortune, hatred is often repaid for favour, a tree is known by its fruit.

After the battle, the general began to treat about a peace without delay.

Whilst he was sailing across the river, the boat began to sink, he is wet up to the chin.

70. Showers are poured down into the valleys, whilst snow falls upon the hills.

The shepherds came under the mountains with their flocks, at length they were forced by the rain to drive them into folds under the ground.

71. Whilst Peter was sitting in the parlour, the boys were playing in the porch, the girls were dancing under a tree.

The soldiers sat down upon the grass nigh the shore, where they dined in presence of their general.

Phaeton for fear fell from heaven into the Po in Italy; his sisters bewailed his death till they were all changed into poplar trees.

Whilst the war is carried on in Numidia against Jugurtha, the Romans were defeated by the Gauls nigh the Rhone.

Towards the evening, the nobility fled out of the city, passed over into Greece, levied war in Epire against Cæsar.

Puer laudo a ego, probo abs tu, culpo ab alius absque causa.

Amicus muto cum fortuna, odium sæpe reddo pro gratia, arbor dignosco ex fructus.

Post pugna, dux cæpi ago de pax sine mora.

Dum veho trans fluvius, cymba cæpi sido, madefio mentum tenus.

Imber fundo in vallis, dum nix cado super mons.

Pastor venio sub mons cum grex, tandem cogo ab imber ago is in septum subter terra.

Dum Petrus sedeo in cænaculum, puer colludo in vestibulum, puella salto sub arbor.

Miles discumbo super gramen, subter littus, ubi prandeo coram dux.

Phaeton præ timor cado de cælum in Padus in Italia; soror lugeo mors, donec omnis muto in populus.

Dum bellum gero in Numidia contra Jugurtha, Romanus vinco a Gallus juxta Rhodanus.

Sub vesperus. nobilitas fugio ex urbs, transeo in Græcia, paro bellum apud Epirus contra Cæsar.

Cæsar is sent into Germany, he marches with his army beyond the Rhine, lays waste the country, returns with glory to winter quarters.

Cæsar mitto in Germania, pergo cum exercitus ultra Rhenus, vasto ager, revertor cum gloria in hyberna.

72. The shepherd passes by the village, goes to the city, where he stays a long time: he is ordered to depart from the town, to return to his flocks; but he would not desist from his purpose.

Pastor prætereo villa, adeo urbs, ubi diu commoror; jubeo decedo oppidum, redeo ad grex; at nolo absisto inceptum.

¶ Mardonius accosts Xerxes affrighted at his defeat, and doubtful what course to take: he advises him to go away into his kingdom, lest the fame of this unfortunate war should occasion any sedition. His advice being approved, an army is delivered to Mardonius; the king himself prepares to draw back the rest of the troops into his kingdom: but the Greeks, having heard of the king's flight, enter into a design of breaking down the bridge which he had made at Abydos.

Mardonius aggredior Xerxes perculsus hic clades et dubius consilium: hortor ut in regnum abeo, ne quid seditio fama adversus bellum moveo. Probatus consilium, exercitus trado Mardonius; rex ipse paro reliquus copiæ in regnum: sed Græci, auditus rex fuga, ineo consilium interrumpendus pons qui ille Abydus facio.

Thus after Atticus had abstained from food for two days, on a sudden his fever went off, and the distemper began to be more easy; he died, however, the fifth day after, the day before the Kalends of April, when Cn. Domitius and C. Socius were consuls. He was carried to his funeral upon a little couch, as he himself had ordered, without any pomp of funeral, all good people attending

Sic, cum Atticus abstineo cibus biduum, subito, febris decedo, morbusque cæpi sum levis; decedo tamen quintus exinde dies pridie Kalendæ Aprilis, Cn. Domitius C. Sosius consul. Effero in lecticula, ut ipse præscribo, sine ullus pompa funus, omnis bonus comitans Sepelio juxta via Appius, ad quintus lapis, in mo-

him. He was buried near the Appian way, at the fifth milestone, in the monument of Q. Cæcilius his uncle.

numentum Q. Cæcilius avunculus suus.

In the mean time, the Romans sending the Scipios into Spain, first drove the Carthaginians out of the province; afterwards they carried on terrible wars with the Spaniards themselves; nor would the Spaniards receive the yoke till Cæsar Augustus, after he had conquered the world, carried his victorious arms to them, and reduced the barbarous and savage people into the form of a province.

Interea, Romani, missus in Hispania Scipio, primo Pæni provincia expello; postea cum ipse Hispani gravis bellum gero; nec prius Jugum Hispani accipio volo, quam Cæsar Augustus, perdomitus orbis, victrix ad is arma transfero, populusque barbarus ac ferus in forma provincia redigo.

The Dorians consulted the oracle about the event of the contest; answer was made them, That they should be superior, unless they killed the king of the Athenians. Codrus was king of the Athenians at that time; who having got notice of the answer of the god, changing his royal habit, entered the enemy's camp, he is slain by a soldier, whom he had wounded with a cutting-knife. The king's body being known, the Dorians march off without fighting: and thus the Athenians are delivered from the war, by the bravery of their Prince, offering himself to death for the safety of his country.

Dorienses de eventus prælium oraculum consulo; respondetur, is superior forem, ni rex Athenienses occido. Athenienses is tempus rex Codrus sum; qui responsum deus cognitus, permutatus regius habitus, castra hostis ingredior, interficio a miles, qui falx vulnero. Rex corpus cognitus, Dorienses sine prælium discedo; atque ita Athenienses, virtus dux, pro salus patria mors sui offerens, bellum libero.

A desire of visiting the sacred residence of the god Serapis, whom Egypt, a nation devoted to superstition, adores

Cupido adeundum sacer sedes deus Serapis, qui Ægyptus, gens deditus superstitio, colo anti om-

beyond all other, seized Vespasian, that he might consult him about affairs of the empire: and having entered the temple, and being intent upon the deity, behind his own back he perceived Basilides, whom he knew to be several days journey from Alexandria. He examines the priests, whether Basilides that day had entered the temple? he asks, whether he had been seen in the city? At last, dispatching horsemen, he learns, that he was at that instant eight miles from thence.

nis alius, capio Vespasianus, ut consulo is super res imperium: atque ingressus templum, intentusque numen, pone tergum suus respicio Basilides, qui nosco plus dies 6 iter absum Alexandria. Percontor sacerdos, num ille dies Basilides templum ineo? percontor, num in urbs video? Denique missus eques, exploro, is ille tempus momentum octoginta 6 mille passus absum.

Neptune, Vulcan, and Minerva, disputed which of them was the most skilful artificer; whereupon Neptune made a bull, Minerva a house, and Vulcan a man; and they chose Momus judge. But Momus chid them all three. He accused Neptune of imprudence, because he had not placed the bull's horns in his forehead between his eyes; for then the bull might have a stronger and surer blow. He accused Minerva of folly, because her house was immoveable, and could not be carried away if it happened to be placed among ill neighbours. But he said Vulcan was the most imprudent of them all, because he had not made a window in the man's breast, that he might see what his thoughts were.

Merchants are of great benefit to the public. They knit mankind together in a mutual intercourse of good offices; they distribute the gifts of nature, find work to the poor, add wealth to the rich, and magnificence to the great. Our fleets of British merchantmen are so many squadrons of floating shops, that vend our wares and manufactures in all the markets of the world; and with dangerous industry, find out chapmen under both tropics. Our British merchant converts the tin of his own country into gold, and exchanges his wool for rubies. The Mahometans are clothed in our British manufactures, and the inhabitants of the frozen zone are warmed with the fleeces of our sheep.

Robert Bruce, the son of that Robert Bruce, who, in the year 1285, had contended with Baliol about the succession, was crowned king of the Scots at Scoon in the year 1306. He was a man of great bravery in war, and of great moderation in peace. The strength of his mind in adversity was wonderful. Though his wife was taken prisoner, though his four brothers, all brave men, were cruelly butchered; and though he himself was stripped not only of his paternal estate, but of his kingdom, by Edward king of England:

yet his mind was so far from sinking under the load of affliction, that he never lost hopes of recovering his kingdom. Few of the ancients may be compared to Robert Bruce. Cato and Brutus laid violent hands on themselves; Marius, thirsting after revenge, entered into wicked and cruel measures against his country. Robert after recovering his kingdom, forgot the ill usage of his enemies.

---

3. Of Interjections.

*73. THE interjections, *O*, *heu*, and *proh*, govern the nominative or vocative, and sometimes the accusative.

Nom. O what a face!
Ah ignorant souls,
Oh the pain!
Voc. O my father!
Ah wretched boy!
Oh awful Jove!
Acc. O distressed old age!
Ah unhappy creature that I am!
O the faith of gods and men!

1. Interjectionum.

1. *INTERJECTIONES*, O, heu, & proh, *regunt nominativum aut vocativum, interdum & accusativum.*

O qualis facies!
Heu ignaræ mentes!
Proh dolor!
O mi pater!
Heu miserande puer!
Proh sancte Jupiter!
O calamitosam senectutem!
Heu me infelicem!
Proh deum hominumque fidem!

Note 1. *O* before the vocative is often suppressed; as, Virg. *Musa mihi causas memora;* and indeed, strictly speaking, the vocative is always absolute, being governed by no word whatever.

Note 2. These, or the like constructions, may be thus supplied; *O qualis facies huic! Heu mentes ignaræ sunt! Proh quantus est dolor! O quam calamitosam senectutem experior! Heu quam me infelicem sentio! Proh deum atque hominum fidem imploro vel obtestor!* The word *fidem* is sometimes suppressed.

74. *Hei* and *væ* govern the dative.

2 Hei & væ *regunt dativum.*

Ah me !	*Hei mihi !*
Wo unto you !	*Væ tibi !*

Note 1. *Heus* and *ohe* take the vocative only; as, Ter. *Heus Syre !* Mart *Ohe libelle !*

Note 2. *Ah* and *Vah* take the accusative or vocative; as, Ter. *Ah me miserum !* Virg. *Ah virgo infelix !* Lucret. *Vah inconstantiam !* Plaut. *Vah salus mea !*

Note 3. *Hem* takes the dative, accusative, or vocative; as, Ter. *Hem tibi !* Id. *Hem astutias !* Id. *Hem Davum tibi !* Cic. *Hem mea lux !*

Note 4. Most of the other interjections, and frequently also these mentioned, are thrown into discourse without any case subjoined to them.

Note 5. The dative is fitly joined to the interjections, as well as to other parts of speech; the vocative is absolute; and the accusative may be thus supplied; *Ah me miseram sentio ! Vah quam inconstantiam narras ! Hem astutias videte ! Hem Davum obviam tibi vide !*

73. O man valiant and friendly ! O joyful day !

Ah the piety ! Ah the faith of ancient times ! Ah the vanity of men !

Oh the pain ! Oh the wickedness ! Oh the manners ! We degenerate from our parents.

O Davus ! am I thus despised by you ? Ah wretched boy !

Ah fortune ! what god is more cruel than you ? you always take pleasure to sport with the designs of men.

O awful Jove ! what greater thing has been done on earth ?

O the times ! O the fashions ! O the wretched minds of men ! O blind souls !

Ah wretch that I am ! why am I forced to this ?

By the faith of gods and

O 1 *vir fortis atque amicus ! O festus* 1 *dies !*

Heu 1 *pietas ! Heu* 1 *fides priscus ! Heu* 1 *vanitas humanus !*

Proh 1 *dolor ! Proh* 1 *scelus ! Proh* 1 *mos ! Degenero a parens noster.*

O Davus ! itane contemnor abs tu ? Heu miserandus puer !

Heu fortuna ! quis deus sum crudelis tu ? semper gaudeo illudo res humanus.

Proh sanctus Jupiter ! qui res magnus gero in terra ?

O 4 *tempus ! O* 4 *mos ! O miser homo* 4 *mens ! O* 4 *pectus cæcus !*

Heu 4 *ego miser ! cur cogo hic facio ?*

Proh deus atque homo

men, the victory is in our hands.

74. Ah me! woes me! love is curable by no herbs.

¶ When Titus one day recollected, at supper, that he had done nothing for any one that day, he said, O friends! to-day I have lost a day. He was a prince of so much easiness and generosity, that he denied no man any thing, and when he was blamed for it by his friends, he replied, that no man ought to go away sorrowful from any emperor.

To you, says Alexander, O most faithful and most affectionate of countrymen and friends! I do give thanks, not only because to-day you have preferred my life to your own, but because, since the beginning of the war, you have omitted no token or expression of kindness towards me.

This was another occasion of making war against Jugurtha; wherefore the following revenge is committed to Albinus: but O shameful! the Numidian so corrupted his army, that he prevailed by the voluntary flight of our men, and took our camp; and a scandalous treaty being added for the purchase of their security, he dismissed the army which he had before bought.

O dreadful assurance in the midst of so much adversity! O

4 fides, victoria ego in manus sum.

Hei ego! væ ego! nullus amor sum medicabilis herba.

Cum Titus quidam dies recordor, in cœna, sui nihil, quisquam præsto ilie dies, dico, O amicus! hodie dies perdo. Sum princeps tantus facilitas et liberalitas, ut nullus quisquam nego; et cum ab amicus reprehendo, respondeo nullus tristis debeo ab imperator discedo.

Tu, inquam Alexander O fidus piusque civis atque amicus! grates ago, non solum quod hodie salus meus vester præpono, sed quod, a primordium bellum, nullus erga ego benevolentia pignus aut indicium omitto.

Hic sum alter causa bellandum contra Jugurtha; igiur sequens ultio mando Albinus: sed pro dedecus! Numidia ita corrumpo hic exercitus, ut vinco voluntarius fuga noster, castraque potior; et turpis fœdus, additus in pretium salus, dimitto exercitus qui prius emo.

O horribilis in tot adversus 4 fiducia! O sin-

the singular courage and spirit of the Roman people ! Whilst Annibal was flying over their throat through Campania and Apulia, at the same time they both withstood him, and sent their arms into Sicily, Sardinia, and Spain. O people worthy of the empire of the world ! worthy of the favour and admiration of gods and men !

gulares 4 animus ac 4 spiritus populus Romanus ! Cum Annibal in jugulum per Campania Apuliaque volito, idem tempus ad hic sustineo, et in Sicilia, Sardinia, Hispaniaque arma mitto. O 4 populus dignus orbis imperium ! dignus favor et admiratio deus ac homo !

The Lord is just and righteous, and will judge the earth with equity and truth. Think not, O bold man ! because thy punishment is delayed, that the arm of the Lord is weakened; neither flatter thyself with the hopes that he winketh at thy doings. The high and the low, the rich and the poor, the wise and the ignorant, when the soul hath shaken off the cumbrous shackles of this mortal life, shall equally receive from the sentence of God a just and everlasting retribution, according to their works. Then shall the wicked tremble and be afraid, but the heart of the righteous shall rejoice in his judgments.

The thoughtless man bridleth not his tongue; woe be to him, he speaketh at random, and is entangled in the foolishness of his own words. Hearken therefore, O young man, unto the voice of consideration; her words are the words of wisdom, and her paths shall lead thee to safety and truth.

---

4. *Of* Conjunctions.

*75. THE conjunctions, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *neque*, *aut*, *vel*, and some others, couple like cases and moods.

Honour your father and mother.
He neither writes nor reads.

4. Conjunctionum.

1. *CONJUNCTIONES*, et ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, *et quædam aliæ, connectunt similes casus et modus.*

Honora patrem et matrem.
Nec scribit nec legit.

Note 1. To these add, *quam, nisi, prælerquam, an;* also *nempe, licet, quamvis, quantumvis, nedum, sed, verum,* &c. And adverbs of likeness; as, *ceu, tanquam, quasi, ut, velut,* &c.

Note 2. If the words or clauses in a sentence require or admit of a different construction, this rule does not take place; as, Cic. *Mea et reipublicæ interest.* Juv. *Sexcentis et pluris empta.* Boet. *Mulier colore vivido atque inexhausti vigoris.* Sall. *Ubi videt neque per vim, neque insidiis, opprimi posse hominem.* Pers. *Tecum habito, et noris quam sit tibi curta supellex.*

76. *Ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam,* and *dummodo,* are for the most part joined with the subjunctive mood.

2. Ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam, *et* dummodo, *subjunctivo modo fere semper adhærunt.*

I read that I may learn. *Lego ut discam.*
I wish that you were wise. *Utinam saperes.*

Note 1. To these add all interrogatives, when taken indefinitely, whether they be nouns; as, *quantus, qualis, quotus, quotuplex, uter:* or pronouns; as, *quis, cujus:* or adverbs; as, *ubi, quo, unde, qua, quorsum, quando, quamdiu, quoties, cur, quare, quamobrem, quomodo, qui,* &c. or conjunctions; as, *ne, an, anne, annon.* These when used interrogatively, stand first in a sentence, and take the indicative; but when a word goes before them in a sentence, such as, *scio, nescio, video, intelligo, rogo, peto, cedo, dico, dubito,* or, *incertus, dubius, ignarus,* and the like, they generally become indefinite, and take the subjunctive; as, Hor. *Quæ virtus, et quanta, boni, sit vivere parvo, discite.* Cic. *Ut sciam quid agas, ubi quoque, et maxime quando Romæ futurus sis.* Ovid. *Nescit vitane fruatur, an sit apud manes.*

Note 2. *Ne* takes the imperative or subjunctive; as, *ne time* or *ne timens.* After the verb *cave* it is often suppressed; as, *care facias.*

Note 3. *Ut,* after these verbs, *volo nolo, malo, rogo, precor, censeo, suadeo, licet, oportet, necesse est,* and the like; also after these imperatives, *sine, fac,* or *facito,* is elegantly suppressed; as, Ter. *Ducas, volo hodie uxorem.* Id. *Fac te patrem esse sentiat.*

Note 4. *Utinam* is the same as, *ut* or *uti,* and has *opto* understood; as, *Utinam saperes,* i. e. *opto ut saperes.*

Note 5. *Ut* and *quod* are thus distinguished; *ut* denotes the final cause, and generally respects what is future; or, after *adeo, ita, sic, tam, talis, tantus, tot,* and the like, it signifies the manner; but *quod* denotes the motive or efficient cause, and commonly relates to what is past.

Note 6. *Ne* after *timeo, metuo, vereor, pareo,* is used affirmatively; as, Ter. *Timet ne se deseras.* But, *ut* after these verbs is put for *ne, non,*

or used negatively; as, Cic. *Videris vereri ut epistolas illas accepe-rim*, i. e. *ne non acceperim*.

75. Riches breed pride and insolence.

Divitiæ pario superbia et arrogantia.

Scipio took and destroyed Carthage.

Scipio capio ac diruo Carthago.

Drunkenness impairs wealth and reputation.

Ebrietas minuo opes atque honor.

Time consumes iron and stones.

Vetustas consumo ferrum lapisque.

The man does wickedly: he neither fears God nor honours the king.

Homo ago improbe; nec timeo Deus nec honoro rex.

Covetousness is never satisfied nor satiated.

Cupiditas nunquam expleo neque satio.

A soldier, according to his bravery, is praised or dispraised.

Miles, pro virtus, laudo aut vitupero.

The p ets design either to profit or to please.

Poeta volo vel prosum vel delecto.

Whether I be silent or speak, he goes on to provoke.

Sive ego taceo sive loquor, ille pergo lacesso.

I would more willingly receive than do an injury.

Libenter accipio quam facio injuria.

When a man fears nothing but a witness and a judge, what will he not do in the dark?

Cum homo timeo nihil nisi testis ac judex, quis non facio in tenebræ?

Nothing can be taken from us except liberty or life.

Nihil possum eripio a ego præterquam libertas aut vita.

Avoid idleness as a plague; glory attends virtue as a shadow.

Fugio desidia ceu pestis; gloria sequor virtus tanquam umbra.

Honour, like the rainbow, flies the pursuer, and pursues the flier.

Honos, ut iris, fugio sequens, et sequor fugiens.

76. God did not send his Son into the world, that he might condemn the world, but that the world might be saved through him.

Deus non mitto Filius in mundus, ut condemno mundus, sed ut mundus servo per is.

I did this that I might escape the more quickly; but do you

Facio hic quo evado ce-

assist me, that it may be done the more easily.

I will discover the theft, though he threaten arms and death.

Be not hasty to speak, take care you do not stammer, take care you do not lose your courage.

Virtue procures and preserves friendship. I wish you may do your duty carefully.

I will come to a conference, provided there be a wall betwixt you and me.

¶ In the five hundred and fifty-first year from the building of the city, T. Quintius Flaminius is sent against Philip king of Macedon; he managed his affairs successfully; a peace was granted to the king upon these terms, that he should not make war upon the cities of Greece which the Romans had defended against him; that he should restore the prisoners and deserters.

Pompey restored the hostages to the Antiochians, gave some land to the Daphnensians, that the grove there might be made more spacious, being mightily taken with the pleasantness of the place, and the plenty of water. Going from thence to Judea, he took Jerusalem, the metropolis of the nation, in three months, killing twelve thousand of the Jews, the rest being admitted to quarter.

Titus succeeded Vespasian, a man admirable for all sorts of virtues, so that he was called the darling and delight of mankind.

leriter; sed tu adjuto ego quo is fio facile.

Detego furtum, licet arma morsque minor.

Ne festino loquor, caveo ne titubo, caveo ne perdo animus.

Virtus concilio et conservo amicitia. Utinam facio officium diligenter.

Venio ad colloquium, dummodo murus sum inter tu et ego.

Quingentesimus et quinquagesimus primus annus ab urbs conditus, T. Quintius Flaminius adversus Philippus rex Macedonia mitto; res prospere gero; pax rex do hic lex, ne Græcia civitas qui Romanus contra is defendo bellum infero; ut captivus et transfuga reddo.

Pompeius Antiochenses obses reddo, aliquantum ager Daphnenses do, quo lucus ibi spatiosus fio, delectatus amœnitas locus, et aqua abundantia. Inde ad Judæa transgressus, Hierosolyma, caput gens, tertius mensis, capio, duodecim mille Judæi occisus, cæter in fides acceptus.

Vespasianus Titus succedo, vir omnis virtus genus mirabilis, adeo ut amor et deliciæ humanus

He was a man of so much moderation in his government at Rome, that he punished nobody at all, and so dismissed those convicted of conspiring against him, that he kept them in the same familiarity as before. He was very eloquent too; he pleaded causes in Latin; he composed poems and tragedies in Greek.

genus dico. Sum vir tantus civilitas in imperium Roma, ut nullus omnino punio, atque convictus adversum sui conjuratio ita dimitto, ut in idem familiaritas qui antea habeo. Sum etiam facundus; causa Latine ago; poema et tragœdia Græce compono.

Germanicus, when his end approached, turning to his wife, besought her, by the memory of himself, by their common children, that she would lay aside her haughty spirit, that she would submit her mind to fortune; and not long after he expires. Foreign nations and kings lamented him, strangers bewailed Germanicus; his funeral without images was grand by the praises and memory of his virtues.

Germanicus, ubi finis adsum, ad uxor versus, per memoria sui, per communis liberi oro, ut exuo ferocia, ut fortuna submitto animus; neque multo post extinguo. Indoleo exterus natio rexque, Germanicus ignotus fleo; funus sine imago per laus et memoria virtus celebris sum.

One of the Magi warned Alexander, as he was hastening to Babylon, not to enter the city, declaring that this place would be fatal to him; for this reason, waving Babylon, he went to Borsippa, a city beyond the Euphrates: there he was engaged again by Anaxarchus the philosopher to slight the predictions of the Magi as false and uncertain; wherefore he returned to Babylon.

Alexander Babylon festinans, quidam ex Magus prædico, ne urbs introeo, testatus hic locus is fatalis forem; ob hic causa omissus Babylon, in Borsippa, urbs trans Euphrates, concedo: ibi ab Anaxarchus philosophus compellor rursum Magus prædictum contemno, ut falsus et incertus; revertor igitur Babylon.

All nations in the west and the south being conquered, the Scythians and Samaritans sent ambassadors to Rome, begging

Omnis ad occasus et meredies pacatus gens, scythæ et Samaritæ mitto Roma legatus, amicitia

an alliance; the Seres, and the Indians, that live under the sun, with jewels and pearls, brought elephants too amongst their presents, the length of their journey was so great, that they scarce finished it in four years. Thus every where there was peace, insomuch that Cæsar Augustus at last ventured, in the seven hundredth year from the building of the city, to shut the double-faced Janus. Augustus, for his great actions, was called the FATHER of his COUNTRY.

petens; Seres, habitansque sub ipse sol Indi, cum gemma et margarita, elephas quoque inter munus traho: longinquitas via tantus sum, ut vix 6 quadriennium impleo. Sic ubique pax sum, adeo ut Cæsar Augustus audeo tandem, septingentesimus ab urbs conditus annus, Janus geminus claudo. Augustus, ab fac um ingens, PATER PATRIA *dico.*

By a virtuous emulation, the spirit of a man is exalted within him; he panteth after fame, and rejoiceth as a racer to run his course. He riseth like the palm-tree, in spite of oppression; and as an eagle in the firmament of heaven, he soareth aloft, and fixeth his eye upon the glories of the sun. The example of eminent men are in his visions by night; and his delight is to follow them all the day long.

A famous critic, having gathered all the faults of an eminent poet, made a present of them to Apollo; who received them very graciously, and resolved to make the author a suitable return for the trouble he had been at in collecting them. In order to this, he set before him a sack of wheat as it had been threshed out of the sheaf. He then bid him pick out the chaff from among the corn, and lay it aside by itself. The critic applied himself to the task with great industry and pleasure; and after having made the due separation, was presented by Apollo with the chaff for his pains.

Mankind seems to be no less accountable for the ill usage of their dominion over creatures of the lower rank, than for the exercise of tyranny over their own species. The more entirely the inferior creation is submitted to our power, the more tenderly we ought to use it. It is certainly the part of a good man, to take care of his horses and dogs, not only in expectation of their labour, while they are foals and whelps, but even when their old age has made them incapable of service. There is a passage in the book of Jonas, where God declares his aversion to destroy Nineveh, where that compassion of the Creator, which extends to the meanest rank of his creatures, is expressed with wonderful tenderness:—Should I not spare Nineveh, that great city, wherein are more than six score thousand persons, and also much cattle? And in the book of Deuteronomy, we have a precept to this purpose, with a blessing annexed to it, in these words:—If thou shalt find a bird's nest in the way, thou shalt not take the dam with the young. But thou shalt in any wise let the dam go; that it may be well with thee, and that thou mayest prolong thy days.

The end of the INTRODUCTION.

ANCIENT HISTORY

EPITOMIZED;

OR,

A short View of the principal transactions and events that occur in HISTORY, from the Creation of the World to the birth of Christ.

Digested Chronologically, and adapted to the method of the *Introduction to Latin Syntax*, the English being in one column, and the Latin words in another.

Intended as a proper mean to initiate boys in the useful study of HISTORY, at the same time that it serves to improve them in the knowledge of the LATIN TONGUE.

TO WHICH IS ADDED,

A proper Collection of HISTORICAL and CHRONOLOGICAL QUESTIONS, with a copious INDEX.

ANCIENT HISTORY

EPITOMIZED.

CHAP. I.

From the creation to the Deluge, which includes 1556 *years.*

IN the beginning God created the heaven and the earth, and curiously finished them in the space of six days. To Adam, the first of the human race, he gave command over all the other creatures. Adam, by his wife Eve, begat Cain and Abel; the former of whom was a tiller of the ground, and the latter a shepherd. But wickedness soon breaking out in his family, Cain slew Abel. Cain's posterity invented music, the working of iron, and other arts. The descendants of Seth, who was born to Adam after the murder of Abel, proved virtuous; those of Cain vicious. The world was created 4004 years before the Christian æra.

PRINCIPIUM creo Deus cælum et terra, idemque sex dies exorno spatium. Adamus, humanus genus princeps, creatura cæteri præpono. Adamus, ex uxor Eva, Cainus et Abel gigno: qui ille agricola, hic pastor sum. Sed cito domesticus malum subortus, Abel Cainus interficio. Cainus posteri, musica, ferraria, aliusque ars invenio. Impius Cainus; pius Sethus, qui post interemptus Abel Adamus nascor, progenies existo. Creo mundus annus ante æra Christianus 4004.

2. Enoch, the fifth in descent from Seth, about a thousand years after the creation of the world, was taken up from the society and converse of men,

Enochus, Sethus trinepos, annus post mundus conditus prope millesimus, ob summus Deus familiaritas divinitus sum ex ho-

into heaven, on account of his intimate familiarity with God. His son Methuselah died a natural death, after he had lived near a thousand years. But men, generally unmindful of death, began to abuse longevity; for most of them lived full 900 years. Moreover the family of Seth intermarrying with that of Cain, gave birth to a gigantic race of men, and degenerating into heathenish practices, broke through all the restraints of modesty and duty.

3. Wherefore, 1656 years after the world was created, and 2348 before the birth of Christ, God, provoked with the wickedness of men, determines to drown the whole world by a deluge. Forty days the waters increased exceedingly, and rose fifteen cubits above the highest mountains; no living creature any where remained, except those which Noah, a good man, saved by the direction of God in a certain large vessel or ark. After the flood, the measure of man's strength and life was lessened. From the three sons of Noah, Shem, Ham, and Japheth, all the families of the earth have gradually been propagated.

mo cætus atque oculus raptus. Hic filius Methusales, cum annus fere mille vivo, fatum fungor. Vulgo autem mortalis, mors oblitus, vita longitudo (plerique enim annus expleo nonagesimus) abutor cœpi. Sethus porro gens connubium cum Cainus gens junctus, gigas progigno; et in externus lapsus mos, omnis pudor atque officium repagulum perfringo.

Itaque annus post mundus conditus 1656, *et ante natus Christus* 2348, *Deus, homo nequitia iratus, totus terra orbis diluvium submergo statuo. Aqua* 40 *dies vehementer inundo, et mons altus* 15 *cubitus transcendo: animans nihil uspiam reliquus fio, præter is qui Noes, vir bonus, Deus monitus, in arca, seu navis quidam ingens, asservo. Sub eluvie, vis et vita homo imminuo. A tres Noes filius, Semus, Chamus, et Japhetus, gens omnis totus terra orbis paulatim sum propagatus.*

CHAP. II.

From the Deluge to the vocation of Abraham, containing 427 years.

THE posterity of Noah, about 101 years after the flood, before their dispersion, entered upon a project of building a city and a tower, whose top might reach to heaven. But the divine power checked the insolent attempts of mortals. They all then used the same language which on a sudden was miraculously divided into a multiplicity of tongues. Accordingly the intercourse of speech being cut off, the building was laid aside. After this the earth began to be peopled. The city thus began, from the confusion of languages, was first called Babel, and afterwards Babylon. Nimrod having subdued some neighbouring people by force of arms, reigned in it the first after the flood.

NOES posteri, annus post diluvium circiter centesimus primus, ante digressus, ineo consilium extruo urbs et turris, qui fastigium ad cælum pertingo. Cæterum superbus mortalis conatus divinus obsto numen. Repente unus, qui tum utor omnis, lingua in multifarius divinitus dispersio. Sublatus igitur sermo commercium, ædificatio abjicio. Ex is terra orbis frequento cæpi. Urbs sic inchoatus, ex lingua confusio, Babel primum, deinde Babylon appello. In is primus post diluvium imperito Nimbrothus, vicinus quidam gens vis et arma subactus.

2. About the time of Nimrod, Egypt seems to have been divided into four dynasties, or principalities; Thebes, Thin, Memphis, and Tanis. From this period, also, the Egyptian laws and policy take their rise. Already they began to make a figure in the knowledge of astronomy, they first adjusted the year to the annual revolution of

Sub tempus Nimbrothus, quatuor in dynastia, seu principatus, Ægyptus divido videor; Thebæ, Thinus, Memphis, Tanisque. Ex is quoque tempus, Ægyptius lex politiaque ortus suus duco. Astronomia scientia jam cæpi enitco; ad cursus sol hic primus annus describo. Hicce reg-

the sun. The inhabitants of this country were renowned for their wisdom and learning, even in the earliest times. Their Hermis or Mercury Trismegistus, filled all Egypt with useful inventions. He, according to them, first taught men music, letters, religion, eloquence, statuary, and other arts besides. Most historians say, that Æsculapius, or Tosorthus, king of Memphis, first discovered physic and anatomy. In fine, the ancient Egyptians, as to arts and sciences, and the illustrious monuments of wealth and grandeur, have deservedly obtained the preference among all nations of the world. Every body owns, that Menes was the first mortal who reigned over Egypt. But the most famous amongst their princes was Sesostris; who with amazing rapidity over-ran and conquered Asia, and, subduing the countries beyond the Ganges, advanced eastward as far as the ocean. At last losing his sight, he laid violent hands on himself. The kings of that part of Egypt, whereof Tanis was the capital, took all the name of Pharaoh.

3 Belus is said to have reigned at Babylon; whose son Ninus caused his father's image to be worshipped as a god. This is remarked to have been the origin of idols. Ninus, fired with the lust of sovereignty, be-

io incola, sapientia literæque, primus etiam tempus sum celeber. Hermes ipse, vel Mercurius Trismegistus, bonus ars Ægyptus totus compleo. Hic secundum ille, literæ, musica, rhetorica, statuaria, aliusque præterea ars, mortalis primus instituo. Physica ac anatomice auctor, Æsculapius, vel Tosorthus, Memphis rex plerique sum volo. Vetus denique Ægyptius, quo ad scientiaque, ac præclarus opes magnificentiaque monumentum, apud cunctus terra orbis gens, palma merito sum potitus. Menes, mortalis primus, Ægyptus impero, nemo sum qui nego. Inclytus vero inter ille rex sum Sesostris, qui mirus celeritas Asia victor peragro, populusque extra Ganges perdomitus, oriens versus ad oceanus usque progredior. Tandem cæcitas laborans, mors sui conscisco. Rex iste Ægyptus pars, qui caput sum Tanis, Pharao cognomen cunctus usurpo.

Belus Babylon regno dico; qui filius Ninus parens suus simulacrum colo jubeo pro deus. Is idolum origo noto. Ninus, impero studium flagrans, imperium arma propago

gan to extend his empire by arms. He reduced Asia under his dominion; made himself master of Bactria, by vanquishing Oxyartes king of the Bactrians, and the inventor of magic. He enlarged the city Nineveh that had been built by Ashur; and founded the empire of the Assyrians. He himself reigned 54 years.

instituo. Asia in suus redigo ditio; Oxyartes Bactrianus rex, idemque magica inventor, debellatus, Bactria potior. Idem Nineve urbs ab Ashur conditus amplio; Assyrius imperium constituo. Ipse regno 54 annus.

4. Semiramis, the wife of Ninus, a woman of a masculine spirit, transferred the crown to herself in prejudice of her son, who was yet a minor. By her was Babylon adorned in a most magnificent manner; Asia, Media, Persia, Egypt, overrun with mighty armies; a great part of Libya and Ethiopia conquered. At last she voluntarily resigned the sceptre, after she had swayed it 42 years. But Justin says she was murdered by her son Ninyas.

Semiramis virago, Ninus conjux, elusus filius, ætas minor, regnum ad sui transfero. Ab is Babylon magnificenter sum extructus; Asia, Media, Persia, Ægyptus, ingens cum exercitus peragratus; magnus Libya Æthiopiaque pars subactus. Tandem imperium sponte suus depono, postquam annus 42 teneo, At Justinus scribo is a filius Ninyas trucido.

5. Ninyas degenerated quite from both his parents, and giving up the management of his kingdom to lieutenants, he shut himself up in his palace, entirely abandoned to his pleasures. He had thirty or more of the Assyrian monarchs that successively followed his worthless example, the following ones being always worse than the former, the last of whom was Sardanapalus, a man more effeminate than a woman. He being defeated by Arbaces, governor of the Medes, betook himself

Ninyas ab uterque parens penitus degenero, regnumque administratio præfectus commissus, totus voluptas suus deditus regia sui contineo. Nequitia suus imitator triginta aut plus, deinceps Assyrius rex habeo, alius alius nequam; qui ultimus Sardanapalus sum vir mulier corruptus. Is ab Arbactus, Medus præfectus prælium victus, in regia sui rescipio, ubi, rogus extructus, sui cum conjux, divitiæque suus

into his palace, where, erecting a funeral pile, he burnt himself, his wives, and all his wealth. Thus Arbaces transferred the empire from the Assyrians to the Medes, after it had lasted, as some say, 1300 years. But this whole account of the Assyrian empire is rejected by very good authors, as false and fictitious. The history of this monarchy that appears rational, and agreeable to scripture, is related chap. vii. 2.

6. Abraham, the father of the Hebrews, by nation a Chaldean, descended from Heber, is called by God, in the year of the flood 428 and before Christ 1920. Whilst he sojourned in Palestine, the seat promised to his posterity, being pinched by a famine, he went down into Egypt. Returning from thence he delivered Lot, his brother's son, who had been carried off prisoner from Sodom. After this he paid tithes to the priest Melchisedeck. Moreover, being now 100 years old, having at the divine command, circumcised himself and his family, he had, by his wife Sarah, Isaac, the son promised him by God. Isaac was not yet born, when Abraham, by his prevailing intercession with God, rescued Lot, together with his wife and children, from the burning of Sodom. But Lot's wife for looking back, was turned into a pillar of salt. Furthur, Abraham's

concremo. Ita imperium, ab Assyrius ad Medes, Arbactus transfero, postquam, ut nonnullus volo, annus 1300 *duro. Sed totus hic Assyrius imperium descriptio ab optimus scriptor ut falsus et fictus rejicio. Historia hic imperium, qui verisimilis, et sacer literæ consentaneus video, caput* vii. 2 *enarro.*

Abrahamus, Hebræus parens, genus Chaldæus, ab Heberus origo traho, a Deus evoco, annus a diluvium 428, *et ante Christus natus* 1920. *Palestina, sedes posteri suus promissus, cum peragro, annona inopia coactus, descendo in Ægyptus. Inde reversus, Lotus, frater filius, Sodoma abductus, libero. Deinde Melchizedecus sacerdos decumæ persolvo. Porro, jam centenarius, cum sui ac suus, Deus jussu, præputium circumcido, e Sara conjux, divinitus promissus Isaacus, filius gigno. Nondum nascor Isaacus, cum Arahamus Lotus, una cum is uxor ac liberi, (Deus exoratus,) Sodoma incendium eximo. Sed Lotus uxor, quod respicio, in sal sum versus. Abrahamus, porro, fides divinitus tentatus,*

faith being tried by God, became eminently illustrious; for God commanding him to sacrifice with his own hand, his only son Isaac, the sole hope of any progeny, he scrupled not to obey. His readiness to comply was accepted instead of actual performance.

mire eniteo; nam imperans Deus, ut Isaacus, unicus filius, spes stirps, suus manus immolo, pareo non dubito. Conatus pro factum sum.

7. About the same time, as Eusebius supposes, lived the Titans in Crete, the eldest of whom was Saturn, who is said to be the father of Jupiter. Jupiter was regarded as a god, on account of his fatherly affection towards his people. His brothers were Neptune and Pluto the one admiral of the king's fleet, the other inventor of funeral ceremonies in Greece. Which circumstances, amongst the foolish ancients, procured the empire of the sea to the former as a divinity, and to the latter the sovereignty of hell as a god.

Idem fere tempus, ut Eusebius videor, Titan existo in Creta; qui natu maximus Saturnus sum, qui pater perhibeo Jupiter. Jupiter, propter paternus in populus charitas, deus sum habitus. Is frater sum Neptunus et Pluto, alter regius classis præfectus, alter funus inventor in Græcia. Qui res ille mare, hic inferi imperium ac numen pario, apud stultus antiquitas.

CHAP. III.

From the vocation of Abraham to the departure of the Israelites out of Egypt, comprehending 430 years.

ISAAC, the son of Abraham, born about the year after the flood 457, had, by his wife Rebecca, Esau and Jacob. Of

ISAACUS, Abrahamus filius, a diluvium annus circiter 457 natus, Esaus et Jacobus e Rebecca uxor

Leah, Rachel, and his other wives Jacob begat the patriarchs, heads of the 12 tribes. He was called Israel by God; hence the Israelites derived their name. Joseph, one of the patriarchs, was sold by his brothers out of envy, and sent into Egypt. Afterwards Joseph forgave his brethren this ill usage, though an opportunity of revenging it offered. He prevails with his father to come down into Egypt with all his family, where in a short time the Israelites multiply in a surprising manner. This removal happened in the year of the world 2298, and before Christ 1706.

2. Almost cotemporary with Isaac was Inachus, first king of the Argives; whose son Phoroneus is recorded to have collected his wandering and scattered people into one body, and to have secured them by cities and laws. But Apollo, Mars, Vulcan, Venus, Minerva, children of Jupiter, the principal deities of Greece, and the great founders of superstition, fell in with the age of the patriarchs: as also Ogyges, the first king of Attica, under whose reign happened that remarkable inundation of Attica, called the deluge of Ogyges. Eusebius places Spartus, the son of Phoroneus who built Sparta, almost cotemporary with Joseph. Argus, the grandson of Phoroneus, who, on

gigno, Jacobus e Lea, Rachel, aliusque uxor, patriarcha gigno 12 tribus auctor. Israel a Deus appello; hinc Israelita nomen fio. Josephus, unus e patriarcha, a frater in Ægyptus, per invidia amandatus ac venditus sum. Josephus postea frater injuria, ulciscor oblatus occasio condono. Pater persuadeo, uti cum stirps universus demigro in Ægyptus, ubi brevi Israelitæ mirus in modus augeo. Hic demigratio factus sum annus mundus 2298, et ante Christus 1706.

Isaacus fere æqualis Argivus rex primus Inachus existo; qui filius Phoroneus vagus homo ac dispersus in unus cogo locus, ac mœnia lexque sepio memoro. At in patriarcha ætas, Apollo, Mars, Vulcanus, Venus, Minerva, Jupiter liberi præcipuus Græcia numen, et superstitio patriarcha, incido: itemque Ogyges, primus rex Attica, qui regnans memorabilis ille Attica, qui regnans memorabilis ille Attica inundatio, Ogyges diluvium dictus, accido. Josephus pene æqualis, statuo Eusebius Sparta, Phoroneus filius, qui Sparta condo. Argus, Phoroneus nepos, qui, ob prudentia incredibilis cent-

account of his wonderful sagacity, was said to have an hundred eyes, built Argos. Hieronymus too makes Job, so much famed for patience, coeval with Joseph; but others place him much later.

oculus dictus sum, Argos condo. Jobus, quoque patientia nobilitatus, Josephus suppar, facio Hieronymus; alius tamen multum junior.

3. About the same time, lived Prometheus and Atlas, two eminent astronomers, celebrated in the fabulous poems of the Greeks. Prometheus the son of Japetus, one of the Titans, is represented by the poets, as having made a man of clay, because he formed men that were ignorant and savage, to a civilized way of living; as chained to Caucasus, because he diligently observed the courses of the stars upon Caucasus, a mountain in Scythia; as having stolen fire from the gods, because he invented the method of striking fire from flint. And his brother Atlas, on account of his great skill in astronomy, is reported to have sustained heaven upon his shoulders; and gave name to Atlas, a mountain of Mauritania.

Per idem tempus, Prometheus et Atlas, egregius astronomus, existo, fabulosus Græcus carmen inclytus. Prometheus, Japetus (is unus e Titan sum) natus, quod ignarus rudisque homo ad humanitas informo, homo e lutum fingo; quod in Caucasus, Scythia mons, sidus cursus observo assidue, Caucasus affixus; quod ignis elicio e silex ratio invenio, ignis deus surripio, dictus sum a poeta. Atlas autem, is frater, propter summus astronomia scientia, cœlum humerus sustineo perhibeo; et Atlas Mauritania mons facio nomen.

4. Moses, the great grandson of Jacob, born about 60 years after the death of Joseph, and 1571 before Christ, was brought up by Pharaoh's daughter, and well instructed in the Egyptian learning. At eighty years of age, admonished of God, and assisted by his brother Aaron, he attempts to deliver the nation of the Israelites from the

Moses, Jacobus abnepos, 60 circiter annus post Josephus mors natus, et ante Christus 1571, a Pharao filia educatus sum literæque excultus Ægyptius, Octogenarius, auctor Deus, adjutor Aaron frater, Israelita gens ab Ægyptius servitus vindico aggredior. Denique, Pharao plurimus

slavery of the Egyptians. In fine, having struck a mighty terror into Pharaoh, by many very great miracles, he brings forth the Israelites, loaded with the spoils of the Egyptians, in the year after the flood 857, and before Christ 1491.

maximusque prodigium perculsus annus post diluvium circiter 857, *et ante Christus* 1491, *Israelita Ægpptius spolium onustus, educo.*

5. The Red sea being divided, the Israelites pass over into the deserts of Arabia: provisions were furnished to them in a miraculous manner; water gushed out of the rocks, and manna descended from heaven At mount Sinai, the law was given to them by Moses, their sacrifices and ceremonies instituted, and Aaron consecrated high priest. After this, in the 40th year of their journeying, their number being taken at Jordan, the sum of those that were able to bear arms, was above 600 thousand; among whom there was not one of those who had come out of Egypt, except Joshua and Caleb: for Moses, after having taken a prospect of the promised settlements from mount Pisgah died; Joshua being appointed his successor.

Ruber mare divisus, in solitudo Arabia Israelita transeo; commeatus is divinitus suppeto; manna de cælum, aqua e saxum, defluo. Ad Sina mons lex is per Moses datus, sacra et ceremonia institutus, Aaron summus sacerdos consecratus. Inde 40 *peregrinatio annus, ad Jordanis census habitus, summa is qui arma fero possum, amplius* 600 *mille sum; in qui nemo omnino ex is qui ex Ægyptus venio, præter Josues Calebusque; nam Moses, ex Pisga mons promissus sedes cum prospicio, intereo; Josues successor designatus.*

6. Much about the same time that Moses delivered to the Hebrews their religious ceremonies, Cecrops too, founder of Athens, introduced images and sacrifices into Greece. In the reign of Cecrops flourished Mercury, the grandson of Atlas, the son of Jupiter and Maia, and the author of eloquence, and many

Idem fere tempus sacra et ceremonia Moses trado Hebræus, et Cecrops, Athenæ conditor, simulacrum et sacrificium induco in Græcia. Cecrops regnans, Mercurius, Atlas nepos, Jupiter et Maia filius, idemque eloquentia et multus res inventor

other discoveries. Deucalion, upon Thessaly's being overflowed by an inundation, saved several persons on the tops of Parnassus, where he reigned; and, by means of his wife Pyrrha, brought them over from a savage and rustic life, to an humane and civilized behaviour. Hence rise was given to a number of fables.

7. At the same time, as if the fire had conspired with the water for the destruction of men, a mighty conflagration, in the time of Phaeton's reign, broke out in Italy, near the river Po; which proved no small matter of fiction to the luxuriant fancy of the poets. Oenotrus too, the son of Lycaon, having brought over a colony of Arcadians into Italy, settled near the Tuscan sea, and, dispossessing the native Umbrians, peopled Italy. These, called at first Aborigines, from their uncertain extraction, afterwards Italians, from their king Italus, gave name to the country of Italy.

existo. Deucalion obrutus eluvio Thessalia, mortalis complures in Parnassus jugum, ubi imperito, conservo; isque Pyrrha conjux opera, durus agrestisque vita, ad humanus cultus civilisque traduco. Hinc locus multiplex fabula datus.

Idem tempestas, perinde ac si ad homo pernicies ignis cum aqua conjuro, Phaeton rex, maximus in Italia ad Eridanus flumen exardeo incendium; qui poeta licentia haud parvus, fingo materies existo. Oenotrus porro, Lycaon prognatus, Arcas colonia in Italia deductus, ad mare inferus consido, Umbrique indigenæ repulsus, frequento Italia. Hic Aborigines primum ab incertus origo, inde, ab Italus rex, Italus appellatus, regio Italia nomen facio.

CHAP. IV.

From the departure of the Israelites out of Egypt, to the destruction of Troy, containing 307 years.

JOSHUA having miraculously dried up the river

JOSUES Jordanis flumen divinitus siccatus,

Jordan, brought over the Israelites. After this he overturns the walls of the city Jericho, by the ark of the covenant carried seven times round it, by the sound of trumpets, and the shouts of his army. He utterly destroys the Amorites, the sun and moon standing still at his command for the space of one day, as spectators of the victory. At last, after conquering thirty kings, and all the nations of Palestine, he settled the Israelites in the country promised to their ancestors, in the year of the creation 2560, and before Christ 1444.

2. About the same time Danaus, causing his fifty sons-in-law to be murdered by his daughters of whom there was the like number, makes himself master of the kingdom of Egypt. But being deposed by Linus his son-in-law, he seizes upon Argos. Orcus king of the Molossi, carries off Proserpina, the daughter of Ceres, out of Sicily. Europa, ravished by Jupiter, brought forth Minos and Rhadamanthus, and gave name to the third part of the earth; a large field for fable to the poets. Much about this time flourished the court of the Areopagites at Athens. Upon the Nile too, Busiris, the son of Neptune and Libya, violating the most sacred laws of hospitality, is said to have exercised violence upon his guests. About the same

traduco Israelita. Hierichus inde oppidum murus, arca fœdus septies circumlatus, tuba clangor, atque exercitus clamor disturbo. Amorhæus, sol ac luna, is jussu per unus dies spatium, tanquam spectator victoria subsistens, occidio occido. Demum triginta rex omnisque Palestina gens debellatus, Israelita in promissus majores sedes colloco, annus post mundus conditus 2560, *et ante Christus* 1444.

Sub idem tempus Danaus quinquaginta gener per totidem filia contrucidatus, Ægyptus regnum potior. Sed a Linus gener pulsus, Argos occupo. Orcus, Molossus rex, Proserpina, Ceres filia, e Sicilia abripio. Europa, a Jupiter raptus, Minos ac Rhadamanthus pario, tertiusque orbis terra pars nomen do; ingens poeta materies fabula. Per idem fere tempus Athenæ consilium Areopagita existo. Busiris quoque Neptunus et Libya filius, ad Nilus in hospes sævio dico, sanctus hospitium jus violatus. Haud multum humanius, sub is tempus a rex Mesopotamia acceptus sum Israelita; sed ad is deinceps liberan-

time the Israelites were treated in a way not much kinder by the king of Mesopotamia; but judges, by the divine favour, were raised up from time to time for their relief.

3. Othniel, the first of the Hebrew judges, delivers his people, by slaying the king of Mesopotamia, in the year before Christ 1405. Othniel's successor was Ehud, who killed Eglon, king of the Moabites. Ehud was succeeded by Deborah, a woman of more than masculine courage. She attended Barak, general of the army, to the war, and obtained a signal victory over the enemy. Jael, a woman too, had a hand in this victory; she completed the enemy's overthrow by the slaughter of their general Sisera in the year before Christ 1285.

4. Whilst in Palestine even women make a figure in the achievements of war, in other nations men became illustrious generally for the arts of peace. In Egypt, Trismegistus, the grandson of Mercury, excelled in reputation for learning. Janus reigned in Latium. Cadmus, the Brother of Europa, brought over letters from Phœnicia into Greece, and built Thebes in Bœotia. Rhadamanthus reigned in Lycia, and Minos in Crete, with the highest characters of strict impartiality. Acrisius, king of the Argives, instituted or new mo-

dus judex divinus munus concessus.

Othniel, primus Hebræus judex, annus ante Christus 1405, *populus, Mesopotamia rex cæsus, in libertas vindico. Othniel Ehudus, qui Eglon Moabita rex interficio, succedo. Ehudus, Debora excipio, mulier virtus plusquam virilis. Hic Barachus dux exercitus ad bellum comitatus, insignis de hostis victoria pario. Jael, mulier quoque, hic victoria particeps sum, qui hostis clades Sisera dux cædes cumulo, annus ante Christus* 1285.

Dum in Palestina etiam mulier bellicus laus floreo, apud cæter natio vir pax fere ars vigeo. Trismegistus, Mercurius nepos, in Ægyptus, doctrina gloria præsto. Janus in Latium imperito. Cadmus, Europa frater, litera e Phœnicia deporto in Græcia, et Thebæ in Bœotia condo. Rhadamanthus in Lycia, Minos in Creta insula, summus cum severitas laus, regno. Acrisius, Argivus rex, Amphictyones, gravis Græcia consilium, instituo vel even-

delled the Amphictyones, the most august council of Greece; he erected the temple and oracle of Apollo at Delphos.

5. In the mean time Amphion, cotemporary with Linus, expelling Cadmus, and building the citadel of Thebes, occasioned abundant matter of fiction to the poets. Liber, or Bacchus, built the city Nysa, near the river Indus. He conquered India with an army of Bacchæ. Perseus, the son of Jupiter and Danae, took off the head of Gorgon, a courtesan of exquisite beauty. Pelops too, the son of Tantalus, by his planting a colony gave name to Peloponnesus. His sister Niobe, stupified with grief for the loss of her children, gave rise to the fable of the poets. Dardanus, the son of Jupiter, and son-in-law to Teucer, gave name to the country of Dardania, which was afterwards called Troas, from Tros his son and successor.

6. In Latium, Janus was succeeded by Saturn: under whose reign, they tell you, all things were common, and all men free. Hence it was called the golden age. The same Saturn taught men to till the ground, to build houses, to plant vines, and gather in the fruits. Meanwhile the Pelasgi, seizing upon the sea coast of Italy, which is next to Sicily, introduced learning into Italy. From them the

do; Apollo Delphicus ædes et oraculum excito.

Interim Amphion, Linus æqualis, Cadmus ejectus, Thebanusque arx extructus, magnus poeta mentior licentia facio. Liber, seu Bacchus, Nysa urbs, propter Indus flumen condo. India Baccha exercitus subigo. Perseus, Danæ et Jupiter natus, Gorgon meretrix eximius species caput demo. Pelops quoque, Tantalus filius, deductus colonia, Peloponnesus facio nomen. Hic soror Niobe, ob amissus liberi ex mæror stupefactus, poeta mendacium locus do. Dardanus, Jupiter genitus, Teucer gener, Dardania regio nomen facio; qui postea, ex is filius ac successor Tros, Troas appello.

Janus Saturnus succedo in Latium: qui rex omnis communis, omnis liber sum, perhibeo. Inde aureus seculum appellatus. Idem Saturnus ager colo, domus ædificio, vinea pono, et frux colligo, doceo. Pelasgus interea, maritimus Italia ora, qui Sicilia sum proximus, occupatus, literæ in Italia affero. Ab hic regio Magnus Græcia nominatus.

country was named great Grecce. Siculus, the son of Italus, being driven out of Italy by the Pelasgi, passed over into the next island, which the Cyclopes had anciently possessed, and the Sicani then inhabited; and the king Siculus. After Saturn Picus, after Picus Faunus, the fourth from Janus, held the kingdom. The wife of Faunus, who was also the mother of king Latinus, is said to have invented the Latin characters.

7. Gideon, the fourth judge of the Hebrews, about the year of the world 2759, and before Christ 1245, performed an exploit that deserves to be celebrated in the annals of all nations. By the direction of God, he selected 300 men out of all his army. These he arms with trumpets and lamps. Then he orders the pitchers, in which the lamps were concealed, to be dashed together, and all the trumpets to be blown at the same instant. This unusual way of fighting caused such confusion in the camp of the Midianites, that they slaughtered one another with mutual havock. Abimelech, Gideon's son, was unlike his father; he usurped the soverejgnty, after he had put to death his brothers, in number 70. But within three years. he was slain by a woman with a piece of a millstone, as he was setting fire to the tower of Thebes.

Siculus, Italus filius, Italia pulsus a Peslagus in proximus trajicio insula, qui olim Cyclopes teneo, ac tum Sicani incolo; et a Siculus rex insula Sicilia dictus sum. Ab Saturnus Picus, a Picus Faunus, quartus a Janus, regnum accipio. Faunus uxor, idemque Latinus rex mater, Latinus Litera reperio memoro.

Gideon, judex Hebræus quartus, annus mundus circiter 2759, et ante Christus 1245, facinus edo omnis gens literæ celebrandus. Deus monitus, vi rex omnis exercitus trecenti deligo. Hic tuba ac lampas armo. Tum lagena, qui inclusus lampas sum, complodo, infloque tuba omnis impero unus tempus. Insolitus pugna species usque eo Midianita castra turbo, ut mutuus sui cædes conficio. Gideon filius, dissimilis pater, Abimelechus sum: is frater cæsus, numerus ad 70, tyrannis occupo. At intra triennium, dum turris Thebes ignis subdo, molaris lapis fragmen prostratus sum a fœmina.

8. Toward the latter end of Gideon's age appeared the Grecian heroes, furnishing ample subject for fabulous stories. Hercules, Orpheus, Castor, Pollux, and the other Argonauts, having built the ship Argo, sailed from Thessaly to Troas, and thence to Colchis, under the conduct of Jason. Whilst they were at Troy, Hercules delivered Hesione, the daughter of Laomedon, the son of Ilus, and king of Troy, from a sea-monster, to which she had been exposed. Her father promised him the young lady, with some fleet horses, as the reward of his hazardous enterprise. Being arrived at Colchis, they soothed the fierce and savage guards by means of Medea, the king's daughter; brought off the treasures which had been carried thither by Phryxus out of Thessaly, called the golden fleece. In their return they killed Laomedon, for refusing the stipulated reward, and gave the kingdom to his son Priam. This expedition happened about 1280 years before Christ.

Extremus Gideon ætas Græcus heros attingo, haud exiguus materia fabula. Hercules, Orpheus, Castor, Pollux, cæterque Argonauta, Argo navis ædificatus, Jason dux, e Thessalia ad Troas, exinde Colchis, navigo. Dum apud Troja sum, Hercules, Hesione, Laomedon, Ilus filius, rex Trojanus, filia, monstrum marinus, qui expositus sum, libero. Pater virgo ille cum pernix equus, labor, suus præmium, pollicitus sum. Cum ad Colchis venio, Medea rex filia opera, custos ferus ac barbarus delineo; thesaurus eo a Phryxus e Thessalia deportatus aureus vellus dictus, aufero. In reditus Laomedon ob pactus merces negatus, obtrunco; regnum Priamus, is filius, trado. Hic expeditio incido in annus circiter 1280 *ante Christus natus.*

9. About the same time Ægeus, king of the Athenians, and the father of Theseus, had invidiously slain Androgeos, the son of Minos, king of Crete. For which reason the Athenians were ordered to send annually into Crete seven young men, and as many girls to be devoured by the Minotaur. In

Sub idem tempus Ægeus, Atheniensis rex, et pater Theseus, Androgeos, Minos rex Creta filius, per invidia occido. Ob qui causa Atheniensis jubeo quotaninis septeni juvenis et puella totidem in Creta mitto, a Minotaurus devorandus. Hic in

the number of these went Theseus, who by the assistance of Dædalus and Ariadne, Minos's daughter, slew the Minotaur, and delivered his country. Minos with a fleet pursuing Dædalus in his flight, was killed in the bath by king Cocalus in Sicily. After this Theseus encountered the Centaurs, or Thessalian horsemen, with good success, and associated himself with Hercules.

numerus Theseus profectus sum, qui opis Dædalus, et Ariadne, Minos filia, Minotaurus occido, et patria libero. Minos Dædalus, fugiens classis insecutus, in Sicilia a Coca'us rex neco in balneum. Theseus inde cum Centaurus, Thessalus eques bene pugno suique Hercules comes adjungo.

10. The Amazons too, who were women, natives of Scythia, having lost their husbands in war, took up arms, assuming at the same time a masculine intrepidity, possessed themselves of the lesser Asia, and built Ephesus. Hercules and Theseus made war upon them, and conquered them, more to the glory of the vanquished than their own; for though women, they had valiantly coped with such heroes, and when taken prisoners, made their escape, by killing the guards. Hercules is further reported to have instituted the Olympic, and Theseus the Isthmian games.

Amazones mulier quoque, e Scythia oriundus, amissus in bellum vir, cum arma animus virilis assumo; Asia minor occupo, Ephesus condo. Hic Hercules ac Theseus infero bellum, isque vinco, major victus gloria quam suus: quippe et mulier cum talis vir fortiter depugno, et captivus, cæsus custos, aufugio. Hercules porro Olympicus, ludus, Theseus Isthmius fero instituo.

11. Much about this time, Greece exhibited scenes of an horrible and tragical nature. Atreus and Thyestes the sons of Pelops, vented their mutual resentment in a more hostile way than became brothers. For Thyestes committed a rape on his brother's wife: Atreus, on his part, caused Thyestes's

Idem fere tempus, fœdus ac dirus spectaculum edo Græcia. Atreus et Thyestes, Pelops natus, plusquam fraternus inter sui odium exerceo. Thyestes enim frater uxor stuprum infero: Atreus Thyestes vicissim filius epulandus oppono. Oedipus a

sons to be served up to him at a banquet. Oedipus having been exposed by his father Laius, slew him afterwards in a squabble, without knowing him to be his father; and restored the country about Thebes to a perfect tranquillity, by killing the Sphinx, an artful mischievous woman. Having thus procured himself his father's kingdom, he unwittingly married his mother Jocasta. However, being informed of the whole matter by Tyresius, the seer, he plucked out his own eyes, and left the kingdom to his sons Polynices and Eteocles. But Polynices being quickly expelled the kingdom by his brother, fled to Adrastus king of the Argives. Supported by him, he made war upon his brother, attended by the prophetic Amphiarus, who having been betrayed by his wife Eriphyla, gave orders to his son Alcmeon to assassinate his mother: in this more wicked than his wife, that he made a son the murderer of his parent. During that war, Amphiaraus was swallowed up by an earthquake. Polynices and his brother fell by mutual wounds.

12. Jeptha, the seventh judge of the Hebrews, was somewhat later than Hercules. As he was about to join battle with the enemy, he vowed, that if he overcame, he would consecrate to God whatever he

Laius pater expositus, is deinde in rixa ignarus occido; agerque Thebanus, Sphinx insidiosus mulier occisus, pacatus reddo. Ita paternus regnum adeptus, Jocasta mater ipse inscius duco uxor. Cæterum res omnis ex Tyresius vates cognitus, sui ipse eruo oculus, et regnum Eteocles ac Polynices filius relinquo. Polynices autem cito regnum a frater pulsus, ad Adrastus Argives rex confugio. Is opis subnixus, frater bellum infero, comes Amphiaraus vates, qui ab Eriphyla conjux proditus, Alcmeon filius, mater ut ulcisco, impero; hic sceleratus uxor, quod filius facio parricida. Is bellum Amphiaraus hiatus terra absorptus sum. Polinyces et frater mutuus vulnus pereo.

Jepthes, septimus Hebræus Judex, Hercules paulo minor natu sum. Is signum cum hostis collaturus voveo, si vinco, sui Deus consecro, quisquis revertens primus occurro.

should meet first at his return. He engaged the enemy, and gained the victory; his daughter, the only child he had, met him first of all in his return home, and converted the glory of the victory into mourning, about the year before Christ 1188.

Confligo cum hostis, victoria refero: domus rediens, filia, qui unicus habeo, primus omnis obviam venio, et gloria victoria in mœror verto, annus ante Christus natus fere 1188.

13. About the same time a much greater disaster befel Priam king of Troy, who refusing to restore Helen, the wife of Menelaus, king of Sparta, that had been carried off by his son Paris, called also Alexander, was stripped of his kingdom, children, and life, by the Greeks, after a siege of ten years. Troy was destroyed 2820 years after the creation of the world, 436 before the building of Rome, and before the birth of Christ 1184.

Multum gravis sub idem tempus Priamus Trojanus rex casus evenio, qui cum Helena, Menelaus rex Spartanus uxor, a Paris filius suus, Alexander etiam dictus, raptus, reddo nolo; post decennium obsidio, liberi, regnum et vita, orbo a Græcus. Troja eversus sum annus a mundus conditus 2820, *ante Roma conditus* 436, *et ante Christus natus* 1184.

CHAP. V.

From the destruction of Troy, to the finishing and dedication of the Temple at Jerusalem by Solomon, including 163 *years.*

ÆNEAS, flying from Troy, came into Italy. There he contracted an alliance and affinity with Latinus, king of the Latins; from his wife's name, he called the town built by him Lavinium. He routed

ÆNEAS, Troja profugus, in Italia venio. Ibi cum Latinus, Latinus rex fœdus affinitasque jungo; oppidum a sui conditus, ob uxor nomen, Lavinium appello.

in battle and put to flight Turnus, king of the Rutuli. After that, he greatly weakened the power of the Hetrusci; and Latinus dying in battle, he himself reaped all the benefit of the victory. In order to strengthen his interest, the name and laws of the Latins were, by him, imposed on the Trojans: he himself was called king of the Latins. After this, Æneas fell in battle fighting against Mezentius, king of the Hetrusci, four years after the death of his father-in-law Latinus.

2. Samson was cotemporary with Æneas. He killed a lion without any weapon; checked the pride of the Philistines, and made a dreadful havoc of his enemies with the jaw-bone of an ass. Having lost his strength together with his hair, he fell into the hands of his enemies, by the treachery of a woman, whom he passionately loved. To them, after they had put out his eyes, he served long for an object of derision. At length having recovered his strength with his hair, he endeavoured to put an honourable period to his ignominious servitude. The pillars of the house wherein the Philistines beheld him making sport, he overset; the Philistines who were present, and Samson himself, were crushed to death by the fall of the building, in the year before Christ 1117.

Turnus Rutuli rex prælium fundo fugoque. Hetruscus inde opes frango; Latinusque in acies mortuus, ipse omnis fero victoria fructus. Ad firmandus opes, Trojanus Latinus lex ab is ac nomen impositus: Latinus ipse rex dictus. Æneas postea, adversus Mezentius, Hetruscus rex pugnans, prælium cado, annus quartus post mors socer Latinus.

Samson Æneas tempus suppar sum. Leo inermis neco: Philistæus superbia coerceo; a inus maxilla hostis trucido. Mulier, qui depereo, prodens, amissus cum coma vires, in hostis potestas pervenio. Qui orbatus lumen, diu ludibrium sum. Demum receptus cum capillus vires, turpis servitus honestus quæro exitus. Domus is, unde Philistæus ludens ipse specto, columna conculio; ædes ruina Philesteus, qui præsto sum, atque Samson ipse, opprimo, annus ante Christus natus 1117.

3. Ascanius, Æneas's son, resigning Lavinium to his mother-in-law, founded Alba Longa. After this the sovereignty was conferred by the people on Sylvius, a son of Æneas, born after his death. The priesthood was given to Julus, the son of Ascanius, which the Julian family, originally sprung from, Julus, enjoyed hereditary ever after. After Sylvius, thirteen kings reigned in Alba Longa, for near 400 years; of whom Æneas Sylvius swayed the sceptre 31 years, Latinus 51, Alba 39, Sylvius Atys or Capetus I. 26, Capys 28, Capetus II. 13, Tiberinus 8, Agrippa 24, Romulus Sylvius or Alladius 19, Aventinus 37, Procas 23, Amulus 42; whose brother Numitor was the last king of Alba.

Ascanius, Æneas filius, Lavinium noverca relictus, Alba Longa condo. Sylvius inde Æneas filius posthumus, regnum a populus delatus sum. Julus, Ascanius filius, sacerdotium datus, qui gens Julius, ab Julus ortus, postea hæreditarius habeo. Post Sylvius a tredecim rex in Alba Longa, 400 *fere annus, regnatur; qui Æneas Sylvius imperium teneo annus* 31, *Latinus* 51, *Alba* 39, *Sylvius Atys seu Capetus I.* 26, *Capys* 28, *Capetus II.* 13, *Tiberinus* 8, *Agrippa* 24, *Romulus Sylvius seu Aladius* 19, *Aventinus* 37, *Procas* 23, *Amulius* 42; *qui frater Numitor ultimus Alba rex existo.*

4 Samuel, the last Judge of the Hebrews, by God's direction, anoints Saul king, as he was in quest of his father's asses, seven years before Æneas Sylvius began his reign in Latium. The Hebrew state was managed by judges about 400 years.

Samuel, judex Hebræus postremus, Saul, paternus asina quæritans, Deus admonitus, consecro rex, septennium antequam Æneas Sylvius regno occipio in Latium. Administratus res Hebræus sum a judex annus circiter 400.

5. The Heraclidæ, *viz.* the posterity of Hercules, who long harassed by Euristheus, king of Mycenæ, had lived in exile with Ceyx in Thrace, and afterwards with Theseus king of Athens; at length, about 80 years after the destruction of Troy, return-

Heraclidæ, viz. *Hercules posteri, qui, ab Eurisheus Mycenæ rex diu exagitatus, in exilium apud Ceyx, in Thracia, deinde apud Theseus Athenæ rex, ætas ago: tandem* 80 *fere annus a clades Tro-*

ed to Peloponnesus, and settled in it.

6. Saul, the first king of the Israelites, came to the throne about the year of the world 2909, and before Christ 1095. At first he behaved well, but afterwards offended heinously. Hereupon he was rejected by God, and David chosen in his room. He having slain Goliah, a gigantic Philistine, was advanced to be the king's son-in-law. Saul fell in battle fighting against the Philistines, in the twentieth year of his reign. David, after lamenting the death of his father-in-law, mounted the throne, in the reign of Latinus Sylvius, the son of Æneas Sylvius, king of the Latins.

7. King David, a man of singular piety towards God, was ever victorious over his foes. He was dethroned by his son Absalom; but having defeated Absalom in battle, he recovered his kingdom. David reigned 40 years.

8. Almost at the same time that Absalom suffered the punishment of his unnatural behaviour to his father, Codrus, the son of Melanthus, and the last king of Athens, gained the character of a most extraordinary affection for his country. In the Dorian or Peloponnesian war, being informed by the oracle, that the enemy would prove victorious, unless the

janus, ad Peloponnesus redeo, ibique sedes suus pono.

Saul, Israelita rex primus, regnum accipio annus post mundus conditus prope 2909, et ante Christus 1095. Initium bene sui gero, deinde graviter offendo. Quocirca rejicio a Deus, et in is locus David sufficio. Hic, Golias, Philistæus gigas, interfectus, regius evado gener. Saul, vigesimus regnum annus, adversus Philistæus pugnans, prælium cado. David, socer mors deploratus, regnum potior, rex Latinus, Latinus Sylvius, Æneas Sylvius filius.

David rex, homo eximius erga Deus pietas, hostis perpetuo victor existo. Regnum ab Absalon filius pulsus sum; at Absalon acies superatus, regnum recipio David 40 annus imperito.

Idem ferme tempus Absalon impietas in pater pœna luo, et Codrus Melanthus filius, Atheniensis rex postremus, laus egregius in patria pietas fero. Bellum Peloponnesiacus seu Doriensis, cum ex oraculum cognosco superior forem hostis; nisi Atheniensis rex cado, caput suus pro patria salus devoveo.—

king of the Athenians was killed, he devoted his life for the safety of his country. Having disguised himself in the habit of a peasant, he wounded a common soldier of the Dorians in a quarrel, and being slain by him as he wished, saved his country from the blockade of the enemy; in fact, rather than in name, the father of his country. Upon his death the government of Athens devolved on magistrates, who were called Archons. The first of them was Medon, the son of Codrus.

Rusticus vestitus indutus, gregarius miles Doriensis ex jurgium saucio, ab is, ut opto, interemptus, hostis obsidio patria eximo; pater patria, res magis quam nomen. Is mors Athenæ administratio, ad magistratus devenio, qui Archon sum appellatus. Is primus Medon sum, filius Codrus.

9. Solomon, the third king of the Hebrews, reigned also 40 years. He built and dedicated the temple designed by his father David, in the most magnificent manner, about the year of the world 2983, and before the birth of Christ 1021, in the reign of Alba Sylvius, king of the Latins. Solomon, the wisest of all men, in his old age was seduced by his wives into the worship of Heathen deities. Homer was something older than Solomon, if he lived, as Herodotus says, 168 years after the Trojan war.

Solomon, rex Hebræus tertius, 40 quoque annus regno. Templum, a David pater destinatus, magnificenter exæd fico dicoque, annus mundus prope 2983, *et ante Christus natus* 1021 *Alba Sylvius rex Latinus. Solomon, omnis mortalis sapiens, ab uxor senex perductus sum ad cultus Deus Ethnicus. Solomon senior aliquantum Homerus sum, si quidem existo, ut Herodotus perhibeo, annus* 168 *post bellum Trojanus.*

CHAP. VI.

From the dedication of the temple to the building of Rome, comprehending 273 years.

REHOBOAM, Solomon's son, by his folly completed the ruin of the empire, already tottering by his father's misconduct. Thus out of one were two kingdoms formed; the one was called the kingdom of Judah or Jerusalem; the other that of Israel or Samaria. The tribe of Judah and Benjamin were subject to Rehoboam, and the other successive descendants of David; the other ten tribes, being seduced and corrupted by Jeroboam, their first king, had princes of very different families. The kings of Samaria were all impious to a man, and worshippers of idols: the kings of Jerusalem otherwise. And these two kingdoms contended with one another in almost continual wars In the fifth year of Rehoboam's reign, Jerusalem was besieged by Shishak, king of Egypt. He carried away all the sacred furniture of the temple. Rehoboam dying in the 17th year of his reign, leaves his kingdom to his son Abijah, Sylvius Atys being then king of the Latins.

2. In the third year of Abijah's reign, Asa his son succeeded him, a king of eminent pie-

ROBOAS, Solomon filius, nutans paternus culpa imperium, suus stultitia everto. Sic duo ex unus regnum factus: alter Juda, seu Hierosolyma; alter Israel, sive Samaria, dictus sum. Judæus tribus ac Benjaminus Roboas, ac stirps deinceps pareo Dovidicus; cæter decem tribus a Jeroboas primus rex, traductus depravatusque, diversus stirps rex habeo. Samaria rex omnis ad unus impius sum, cultorque idolum: Hierosolyma rex non item Et hic duo regnum perpetuus inter sui bellum fere contendo. Annus imperium Roboas quintus, a Sesacus Ægyptus rex, Hierosolyma obsideo. Hic omnis sacer templum suppellex deporto. Roboas 17 regnum annus excedens e vita, Abias filius regnum lego, Sylvius Atys rex Latinus.

Abias tertius regnum annus, Asa filius, summus rex pietas, succedo; qui

ty; who swayed the sceptre 41 years. In his reign, Capys ruled in Latium; and Omar king of Israel built the royal city of Samaria.

imperium annus 41 *teneo. Hic regnans, Capys in Latium imperô; et Omrius Israelita rex Samaria urbs regius condo.*

3. Jehoshaphat, the son of Asa, proved a second David for piety. He held the government 25 years. In his reign lived Ahab king of Samaria, and the holy prophet Elijah the Tishbite. Much about the same time Tiberinus too, the son of Capetus, the ninth king of the Albans after Ascanius, being drowned in his passage over the Albula, gave name to the river.

Josaphatus, Asa filius, pietas alter David sum. Annus 25 *imperium teneo. Is regnans, existo Achabus rex Samaria, et sacer vates Helias Thesbites. Idem fere quoque tempus Tiberinus, Capetus filius, rex Albanus ab Ascanius nonus, in trajectus Albula amnis, submersus, flumen nomen do.*

4. Jehoram, the son of Jehoshaphat, and son-in-law of king Ahab, followed the impious example of his father-in-law. He possessed the throne eight years. His son Ahaziah reigned only one year; Agrippa being then king of the Latins.

Joras, Josaphatus filius, Achabus rex gener, impietas socer secutus sum Octo annus imperium teneo. Filius is, Achozias, annus regno omnino unus: Agrippa rex Latinus.

5. Joash, the son of Ahaziah, the tenth king of the Jews after David, reigned 40 years. In his reign Romulus Sylvius, king of the Albans, was burnt up by lightning After him Aventinus got the kingdom, who gave name to the hill on which he was buried.

Joas, Achozias filius, decimus a David rex Judæus annus 40 *impero. Is regnans, Romulus Sylvius, Albanus rex, fulmen ictus deflagro. Aventinus deinde obtineo regnum, qui collis, ubi sepultus sum, nomen do.*

6. Amaziah, the son of Joash, governed 29 years. In his reign, as Eusebius relates, flourished Lycurgus, the famous lawgiver of Sparta, who spontaneously resigned the crown of

Amazias, Joas filius, annus 29 *imperito. Is regnans, ut Eusebius perhibeo, existo Lycurgus, celeber Sparta legislator, qui Lacedæmonius regnum, a*

Lacedemon, left him by his brother to Charilius his brother's son, born after his father's death. He divided the land of Laconia to each man equally; abolished the use of gold and silver; and enjoined all people to eat in public. Then he bound his countrymen by an oath, that they should not make any alteration of his laws, till he should return from consulting the oracle at Delphos. He died in Crete, a voluntary exile, about the time of the death of Amaziah king of the Jews. Uzziah, who is also called Azaria, was the son and successor of Amaziah. He reigned 52 years.

7. Elisa, who is also called Dido, abhorring her brother Pygmalion, the murderer of her husband Sichæus, privately put on board all her husband's wealth, and sailed from Tyre. Landing on the coast of Libya, she built a city, which was first called Byrsa, and afterwards Carthage. Carthage was founded about 142 years before the building of Rome, and before the birth of Christ 890. About the same time Bocchorus, or Bocchoris, king of Egypt, settled the laws and institutions of the Egyptians.

8. About the same time, that is, 409 years after the destruction of Troy, and 27 before the building of Rome, the Olympic games were revived by Iphitus;

frater relictus, frater filius posthumus Charilaus, suus sponte trado. Ager Laconicus viritim æqualiter divido: aurum argentumque usus tollo; et omnis epulor publice jubeo. Civis inde sacramentum adigo, ut nihil de lex immuto, quoad ipse a consulendus Delphicus reverto oraculum. Exul voluntarius, in Creta obeo sub nex Judæus rex Amazias. Ozias, qui etiam Azarias dictus sum Amazias filius ac successor sum. Annus 52 *regno.*

Elisa, qui etiam Dido appello, Pygmalion frater Sichæus vir suus interfector, exosus, omnis vir gaza clam impono in navis, et Tyrus solvo. Ad Libyæ appulsus, urbs condo, qui Byrsa primum, inde Carthago dictus sum. Conditus Carthago sum annus ante Roma conditus circiter 142, *et ante Christus natus* 890. *Sub idem tempus Bocchorus seu Bocchorides, rex Ægyptus et jus constituo.*

Sub idem tempus, annus scilicet 409 *post Troja deletus, et ante Roma conditus* 27, *ludus Olympicus ab Iphitus renovatus sum;*

for they had been instituted before by Hercules, as was related above. The Olympic games were so called from Olympia, a city of Elis in Peloponnesus, near which they were celebrated every 4th year, by a great concourse of people from all Greece and other nations.—From this period the Greeks began to use the Olympiads for the distinction of times. Before that epoch fiction prevailed. From it the true history of the Greeks takes its rise In the beginning of the first Olympiad, if we believe Herodotus, died Hesiod, about 140 years later than Homer.

nam antea, ut supra dico, ab Hercules institutus sum. Ludus Olympicus sic dictus sum ab Olympia, urbs Elis in Peloponnesus prope qui celebratus sum quartus quisque annus, magnus homo concursus ex omnis Græcia gensque peregrinus. Ex is tempus, Græcus, ad tempus distinguo; Olympias adhibeo cæpi. Ante is tempus fabula vigeo. Ex is Græcus initium duco hictoria. In auspicium primus Olympias si Herodotus credo, Hesiodus obeo, Homerus junior annus circiter 140.

9. Jotham, Uzziah's son, and father of Ahaz, a pious man, and beloved of God, governed 16 years. In his reign Theopompus, king of the Lacedemonians, in order to render the sovereign authority more staple, by sharing the power with the people, created five Ephori, 130 years after Lycurgus. These magistrates very much resembled the tribunes of the people among the Romans.

Joathas. Ozias filius, et Achas pater, vir pius et Deus carus, annus 16 *impero. Is regnans Theopompus, Lacedæmonius rex qui regnum, communicatus cum populus potestas, efficio diuturnus, Ephorus quinque, annus post Lycurgus* 130, *creo Hic tribunus plebs apud Romanus persimilis sum.*

10. In Latium, Amulius having deposed his elder brother Numitor, usurped the crown. Romulus and Remus, the sons of Rhea Sylvia, or Ilia, Numitor's daughter, having been exposed by Amulius, were educated by Faustulus, the king's shepherd. When they came

In Latium Amulius, Numitor majo frater pulsus, regnum occupo. Romulus et Remus Rhea Sylvia, seu Ilia, Numitor filia natus, ab Amulius exposius, a Faustulus, pastor regius educatus sum. Cum adolesco, Nu-

to age, they knew their grandfather Numitor, and having slain Amulius, replaced him on his throne. They themselves having got together a body of shepherds, founded on mount Palatine the city of Rome, for which was destined the empire of the world. Rome was built in the third year of the seventh Olympiad, 436 years after the destruction of Troy, in the year of the world 3256, of the flood 1600, and before the birth of Christ 748.

mitor avus agnosco, isque, Amulius obtruncatus, restituo in regnum. Ipse, coactus pastor manus, in Palatinus mons condo urbs Roma, qui destino imperium orbs terra. Roma conditus sum annus tertius septimus Olympias, post Troja eversus 436, *annus mundus* 3256, *diluvium* 1600. *et ante Christus natus* 748.

CHAP. VII.

From the building of Rome to the liberation of the Jews from the Babylonish captivity of Cyrus, in the first year of the Persian empire, containing 214 *years.*

ROMULUS is commonly reported to have killed his brother Remus, for having contemptuously leaped over his new walls. Thus he became sole monarch. He took numbers of his neighbours into his city. He chose an hundred senators, who, from their age, were called Fathers, and their children Patrii. Then, as he and his people had no wives, he invited the neighbouring nations to the sight of games, and seized their young women. Whereupon

ROMULUS vulgo fero Remus frater trucido, quod per contumelia murus novus transilio. Ita solus imperium potitus sum. Multitudo finitimus in civitas recipio. Centum senator eligo, qui ob ætas Pater, Patriciique is progenies, appellatus. Tunc, cum uxor ipse et populus non habeo, invito ad spectaculum ludus vicinus natio, atque is virgo rapio. Itaque finitimus populus

the adjacent nations made war upon the Romans. Romulus, having routed the Cænienses, and slain their king Acron with his own hand, presented the *spolia opima* to Jupiter Feretrius, to whom he then dedicated a temple. He triumphed over the Antemnates, the Crustuminians, the Fidenates, and Veientes. Upon seeing his army like to be worsted by Tatius, king of the Sabines, he vowed a temple in the Forum to Jupiter Stator. The action being renewed, the Sabine women, throwing themselves into the battle, put an end to the war by their entreaties. An alliance is struck up between the generals, and the Sabines remove to Rome. At last Romulus, a sudden tempest arising as he reviewed his army at the lake of Caprea, entirely disappeared. He was supposed to have gone to the gods. He reigned 37 years.

Romanus bellum infero. Romulus, Cænienses fugatus, isque rex Acron suus manus interemptus, Jupiter Feretrius, qui tum ædes dico, opimus spolium fero. De Antemnates, Crustuminii, Fidenates, et Veientes, triumpho. A Tatius Sabinus rex, acies suus fugo videns, Jupiter Stator templum voveo in Forum. Demum redintegratus prælium, Sabinus acies irrumpens, bellum precis dirimo. Percutio inter dux fœdus, et Sabinus Roma commigro. Romulus, cum exercitus ad Caprea palus recenseo, subitus coortus tempestas nusquam appareo. Ad deus transeo creditus sum. Regno annus 37.

2. Nineveh, as formely observed, was founded by Ashur, some time after Babylon had been built by Nimrod; but continued for many ages a private royalty. For Pul, one of the kings of Nineveh, and probably also king of Babylon, seems to have founded the Assyrian empire. He makes his first appearance in scripture, in the beginning of the reign of Menahem, king of Israel, and 771 years before the birth of Christ.

Nineve, ut supra dictus sum, ab Ashur conditus sum, sero aliquantum quam Babylon a Nimbrothus extractus sum; sed privatus tantummodo regnum per multus secutum existo. Namque Pul, unus e rex Nineve, et ut versimilis sum, rex etiam Babylon, Assyrius constituo imperium videor. Hic mentio fio primo in scriptura sub initium regnum

This empire lasted about 170 years. The chief of its monarchs were, 1. Pul, supposed to be the same with Belus. He reigned upwards of 24 years. 2. Tiglathpileser, who is supposed to be the same with Ninus, and who subdued Damascus, and put an end to the ancient kingdom of Syria, reigned about 19 years. 3. Shalmaneser, who besieged and sacked Samaria, reigned twelve years, 4. Sennacherib, whose army, whilst he attempted to besiege Jerusalem, was smitten by an angel, reigned 6 years. 5. Esarhaddon, who carried Manasseh king of Judah, captive to Babylon, and conquered Egypt and Ethiopia, reigned 42 years. 6. Saosduchinus, in scripture called Nebuchadonosor, who conquered Phraortes king of the Medes, levelled Ecbatan with the ground, and, returning to Nineveh, feasted 120 days, reigned 29 years. 7. Chynalydan, supposed to be the same with Sardanapalus, reigned 22 years. This prince, the Medes having made war upon him, and the Babylonians having revolted from him, set fire to his palace, and was consumed with all his wealth in the flames. The Assyrian empire subsisted several years after his death; but was in the end overturned by the Medes and Babylonians, in the year before Christ 601. Thus two empires arose out of that of

Manahem rex Israeliticus, et 771 annus ante natus Christus. Hic imperium annus circiter 170 duro. Præcipuus ex is princeps sum, 1. Pul, qui et Belus sum credo. Is annus 24 et amplius imperito. 2. Tiglathpileser, qui et Ninus sum credo, et qui, Damascus subactus antiquus Syria regnum finis impono annus circiter 19 regno. 3. Shalmaneser, qui Samaria obsideo captus deleo annus 12 regno. 4. Sennacherib, qui exercitus cum Hierosolyma obsideo conor, ab angelus cædo, annus 6 regno. 5. Esarhaddon, qui Manasses Juda rex Babylon captivus abduco et Ægyptus atque Æthiopia in suus ditio redigo, annus 42 regno. 6. Saosduchinus, in scriptura Nebuchadonosor appellatus, qui Phraortes Medus rex devictus, Ecbatana solum æquo, et Nineve reversus dies 120 epulor, annus 20 regno. 7. Chynalydan, qui et Sardanapalus fortasse dico, annus 22 regno. Hic Medus bellum infero, Babyloniusque defero, regia suus incendo, et cum divitiæ concremo, Imperium Assyrius aliquot annus post is interitus duro, demum vero a Medus et Babylo-

the Assyrians, namely, the Babylonian and Median.

3. From the name of Nimrod to that of Pul, a great many petty princes reigned in Babylon. Nineveh too and Babylon seem to have been often governed by the same king. But, in the 24th year of the reign of Pul, and 747 years before Christ, these became two distinct kingdoms. Nobonasser, who gives name to the famous æra, and who seems to have been a younger son of Pul, gets the kingdom of Babylon, whilst his elder brother Tiglathpileser obtains the sceptre at Nineveh. During the flourishing state of the Assyrian monarchy, the kings of Babylon seem to have been only viceroys or lord lieutenants to those of Nineveh; but afterwards Babylon rose upon its ruins, and became a great empire, which, computing from Nabonasser, lasted 209 years; *viz.* Nabonasser, called also Belesis and Nanybrus, reigned 14 years. Nadius 2. Chinzirus and Porus jointly 5. Jugæus 5. Mardoc Empadus, in scripture called Merodachbaladan, who sent an embassy to Hezekiah, king of Judah, to enquire about the sun's retrogression, reigned 12 years. Arkianus 5. An inter-reign of two years followed. Balibus 3. Apronius everto, annus ante Christus 691. *Ita ex imperium Assyrius duo orior, Babylonius, sciz et Medus.*

A tempus Nimbrothus ad Pul, multus princeps exiguus Babylon imperito. Ninive quoque et Babylon idem rex sæpe pareo videor. Sed 24 annus regnum Pul, et 747 annus ante Christus natus, ex unus duo diversus regnum factus sum. Nabonassar, qui inclytus æra nomen facio, et qui filius Pul natu minor sum video, regnum Babylonicus adipiscor, cum interim Tiglathpileser, frater natu major apud Nineve res potior. Imperium Asyricus vigens, rex Babylonicus, quasi prorex seu præfectus rex Assyria subjectus sum video; postea autem Babylon Ninive excidium auctus sum et magnus imperium evado: qui, si supputatio a Nabonassar, instituo, per annus 209 duro; sciz. Nabonassar, qui Belesis et Nanybrus etiam dictus sum, annus 14 regno Nadius 2. Chinzirus et Porus simul 5. Jugæus 5. Mardoc Empadus sacer literæ Merodachbaladan dictus, qui legatus ad Ezechias, rex Juda ut de sol retrogressus certior fio, mitto

nadius 6. Mesessimordacus 4. Then an inter-reign of eight years. Assaradinus, or Esarhaddon, who, with his two successors, were also kings of Assyria, reigned 13 years. Saosduchinus 20. Chynalydan, called also Sarac, 22. Nabopallasar, who revolted from Chynalydan, and transferred the seat of the empire from Nineveh to Babylon, reigned 21 years. He, joining his force with those of Cyaxares, king of the Medes, reduced Nineveh to a low condition, but did not live to see its final destruction, having been diverted from this was by an irruption of the Scythians, who at that time overran a great part of Asia. Nabocolassar, or Nebuchadnezzar who in a most magnificent manner adorned the city Babylon, and raised the empire to its highest pitch of glory, and was himself afterwards, by the decree of heaven, driven from the society of men to dwell with the beasts of the field, reigned 43 years. Evilmerodach reigned 2 years. Neriglissar 4. Nabonadius, Labynitus, or Belshazzar, 17; in whose time the city of Babylon was taken by Cyrus, and the empire overturned, in the year before Christ 538.

annus 12 *impero. Arkianus* 5. *Duo annus interregnum secutus sum. Belibus* 3. *Apronadius* 6. *Mesessimordacus* 4. *Deinde interregnum octo annus. Assaradinus, seu Esarhaddon, qui cum duo successor, rex etiam Assyria sum, annus* 13 *regno. Saosduchinus* 20. *Chynaledan, Sarac etiam appellatus,* 22. *Nabopallasar, qui a Chynalydan decisco, et sedes imperium a Nineve ad Babylon transfero, annus* 21 *regno. Is, suus cum copiæ Cyaxares Medus rex junctus, Nineve ad conditio afflictus redigo; ut mors præreptus internecio non video, ab hic et enim bellum abstractus sum incursus Scythia, qui tunc tempus magnus pars Asia vasto Nabocolassar, seu Nebuchadnessar, qui urbs Babylon magnificenter extruo, et imperium ad summus fastigium eveho, et qui postea cælestis decretum e homo cœtus ad habitandum cum bestia ager expulsus sum, annus* 43 *impero. Evilmerodach annus* 2 *regno. Neriglissar* 4. *Nabonadius, Labynitus, seu Belshazzar* 17; *qui regnans urbs Babylona a Cyrus captus sum, et imperium eversus, annus ante Christus* 538.

4. The Medes, having thrown off the Assyrian yoke in the reign of Sennacherib, lived some time without a king; but intestine disorders arising, Dejoces, one of their own number called Arphaxad in the book of Judith, was chosen king in the year before Christ 710. In his latter days he made war upon Saosduchinus, king of the Assyrians; but his army was defeated in a battle fought in the great plain of Ragau, himself slain, and his capital Ecbatan destroyed, after a reign of 53 years. His son Phaortes subdued a great part of the Upper Asia, invaded Assyria, and laid siege to Nineveh; where he perished, with the greater part of his army, after having reigned 22 years. His son, Cyaxares I. by a stratagem relieved his country from the Scythians. He engaged in war with the Lydians; but a total eclipse of the sun, said to have been foretold by Thales the Milesian, happening in the time of battle, both armies retreated, and peace was concluded. He afterwards, in conjunction with Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, invested Nineveh, and razed it to the ground, in the year before Christ 601. This confederate army soon after over-ran and conquered Egypt, Judea, Syria, Armenia, Pontus, Cappa-

Medus, jugum Assyrius excussus, rex Sennacherib, aliquandiu sine rex ago; sed discordia civilis subortus, Dejoces, ex gens Medus oriundus, qui in liber Juditha Arphaxad appello rex creo annus ante Christus 710. *Postremus tempus bellum Saosduchinus, Assyrius rex, infero; sed exercitus is fugatus sum prælium in magnus planities Ragau commissus ipse interfectus, et caput regnum Ecbatana excidium datus, postquam annus* 53 *impero. Phaortes filius magnus pars Superior Asia domo, Assyria invado. Nineveque obsideo; ubi ipse cum magnus pars copiæ pereo, post regnum* 22 *annus Filius is, Cyaxares I. civis dolus Scytha libero. Bellum contra Lydius ineo; sed cum sol, inter pugnandum, defectus totalis laboro, qui deliquium Thales Milesius prædico fama sum, ambo exercitus prælium recedo, et pax factus sum. Hic postea, Nebuchadnezzar rex Babylon adjuvans, Nineve obsideo, et solum æquo, annus ante Christus* 601. *Adunatus hic exercitus mox Ægyptus, Judea, Syria, Armenia, Pontus, Cappadocia, et Persia, peragro domoque. Annus* 40 *regno Cyaxares.*

docia, and Persia. Cyaxares reigned 40 years. His son Astyages, called Ahasuerus in the book of Daniel, repulsed the Babylonians, who, under the conduct of Evilmerodach, had made an irruption into Media. He reigned 34 years. His son, Cyaxares II. called in scripture Darius the Mede, reigned 22 years. He had a bloody war with the king of Babylon, and their ally Crœsus, king of Lydia, for the space of 21 years. In this war he was assisted by Cyrus his nephew, who at last took Babylon and placed his uncle on the throne; where he reigned two years. Upon his death Cyrus transferred the seat of empire from the Babylonians and Medes to the Persians, in the year before Christ 536.

5. Twenty-five years after the building of Rome, So or Sabacus, the Ethiopian, began to reign in Egypt; whose successors, for about 200 years, were Anysis, Sethon, 12 kings jointly, Psammitichus, Necho, Psammis, Apres, Amasis, and Psamminitus.

6. Twenty-seven years after the building of Rome, and 821 before Christ, Samaria was taken and destroyed by Salmaneser, king of the Assyrians. The ten tribes, with their king Hoshea, were carried away into Assyria. Tobias was one of the captives, whose piety preserved him his liberty in the midst of

Astyages filius, Daniel liber Ahasuerus dictus, Babylonius, qui, Evilmerodach dux, in Media irrumpo, repello. Annus 35 impero. Filius is. Cyaxares II. sacer literæ Darius Medus appellatus, annus 22 regno. Bellum cruentus cum rex Babylon, isque socius Crœsus Lydiæ rex, per spatium 21 annus gero. In hic bellum Cyrus nepos is auxilium venio; qui tandem Babylon potitus, avunculus summus potestas permitto; qui ibi duo annus regno. Cyrus, avunculus mortuus, sedes imperium a Babylonius et Medus ad Persa transfero, annus ante Christus 536.

In Ægyptus, So seu Sabacus Æthiops regno cœpi, annus post Roma conditus 25; qui successor, per ducenti fere annus, sum Anysis, Sethon, 12 rex simul, Psammitichus, Nechus, Psammis, Apres, Amasis, et Psamminitus.

Annus post Roma conditus 27, et ante Christus 821, Samaria a Salmaneser, Assyrius rex, captus et eversus sum. Tribus decem cum Oseas rex, in Assyria abductus. Unus e captivus Tobias sum, qui libertas in ipse servitus pietas conservo. Rex tum

servitude. Hezekiah, the son of king Ahaz, a man of eminent piety, was then king of Jerusalem. At this time too lived the prophet Isaiah.

7. Numa Pompilius, the second king of the Romans, was called to the throne from Cures, a town of the Sabines, on account of his renowned wisdom. He softened the martial fierceness of Rome by religion. He instituted priests and sacred rites, pretending intercourse with the goddess Egéria in the night. Then he built the temple of Janus, and shut its gates, which were the signs of peace and war. He completed the year by the addition of two months; and, instead of March, appointed January to be the beginning of the year. He reigned 43 years.

8. Manasseh, the son of Hezekiah, reigned then in Judea. At the same time lived Judith, by whom Holofernes, general of Saosduchinus, king of the Assyrians, was slain; Gyges too, who is said to have been the intimate favourite of Candaules, king of the Lydians, and was forced by him to view the beauty of his queen when naked. After which Gyges, at the queen's desire, murdered Candaules, and seized upon the kingdom.

9. After Numa, Tullus Hostilius being created king of Rome, made war upon the Albans. The dispute being re-

Hierosolyma Ezechias, Achas rex natus, homo singularis pietas. Hic tempus etiam existo vates Isaiah.

Numa Pompilius, Romanus rex II propter sapientia fama, ad regnum e Cures, Sabinus oppidum, vocatus sum. Roma arma ferox religio mansuefacio. Sacra sacerdosque instituo, simulatus cum dea Ægeria nocturnus congressus. Janus dein templum extruo, isque valvæ, pax bellumque index, claudo, Annus duo mensis additus expleo. Annus initium Januarius pro Martius sum volvo. Regno annus quadroginta tres.

Manasses, Ezechias filius, in Judæa tum regno. Idem tempus existo Juditha, a qui Holofernes, dux Saosduchinus rex Assyrius, sum obtruncatus; Gyges quoque, qui initimus Candaulus Lydus rex sum assecla dico, ab isque coactus, ut nudus regina species contemplor. Postea Gyges, regina jussu, Candaules obtrunco, et regnum invado.

Tullus Hostilius post Numa, Roma rex creatus bellum Albanus infero. Certamen tres Hora-

ferred to three Horatii on the side of the Romans, and as many Curiatii on that of the Albans, victory declared for the Romans. The Albans afterwards rebelling, Tullus, after demolishing Alba, ordered them to remove to Rome. Rome being increased by the ruins of Alba, mount Cælius was added to the city. Tullus was thunderstruck, and burnt up with all his house, after he had reigned 31 years. In the mean time Amnion, Manasseh's son, and king of Jerusalem, was assassinated by his servants.

10. After Tullus Hostilius, Ancus Martius, the grandson of Numa by a daughter, took upon him the govern ent. He proclaimed war by his heralds against the Latins, and vanquished them. He took a great many of them afterwards into the city. He united the Aventine mount to the city, and likewise the Janiculum, by throwing a wooden bridge over the river. He extended the Roman dominion quite to the sea, and built the city Ostia, at the mouth of the Tiber. He died of a distemper in the 24th year of his reign. A few years after, Josiah, Hezekiah's grandson, fell in battle, fighting against Necho, king of Egypt. The prophet Jeremiah and all the people lamented him.

11. The fifth king of Rome

tius Romanus, et totidem Curiatus Albanus, commissus, victoria penes Romanus sum. Albanus postea rebellans, Alba eversus, Roma demigro Tullus jubeo. Roma Alba ruina auctus, Cælius mons urbs additus sum. Cum Tullus 31 *annus regno, fulmen ictus, cum domus suus ardeo. Ammon, interea, Manasses filius, et Hierosolyma rex, a famulus suus interfectus sum.*

Post Tullus Hostilius, Ancus Martius, Numa ex filia nepos, suscipio imperium. Latinus bellum per feciales indico, ac vinco. Is plurimus postea in civitas adscisco. Adventinus mons, nec non sublicius pons in flumen factus Janiculum, urbs adjicio. Romanus imperium usque ad mare propago, et Ostia urbs in os Tiberis condo. Annus imperium 24 *morbus pereo. Pauci exinde annus, Josias, Ezechias nepos, contra Necus Ægyptus rex pugnans, prælium cado. Is Jeremias vates et cunctus populus lamentatio prosequor.*

Quintus Roma rex sum

was Tarquinius Priscus, the son of Demaratus of Corinth. He doubled the number of the senators, built the Circus, and instituted the Circensian games. He subdued the twelve nations of Tuscany, and borrowed from them the ensigns of supreme power, the Fasces, the Trabeæ, the Curule chairs, the Pretexta, and other things of that kind. He was slain by the sons of Ancus, in the 37th year of his reign

Tarquinius Priscus, filius Demaratus Corinthius. Hic numerus senator duplico, Circus ædifico, et ludus Circenses instituo. Thuscia populus duodecim subigo, ab isque summus potestas insigne accipio, Fasces, Trabeæ, Curules, Pretexta et is genus alius. Annus imperium 37, per Ancus filius occisus sum.

12. Draco, who was Archon at Athens, in the year before Christ 623, laid the Athenians under the most cruel laws, by which the smallest offences and the greatest crimes were equally punished with death. For which he himself, assigned this reason: Small faults seem to me worthy of death, and for flagrant and great offences I can find no higher punishment. But these laws did not long please the Athenians. Demades was wont to say, that Draco's laws were not written with ink, but blood.

Draco, qui Archon Athenæ sum, annus ante Christus 623, atrox Athenienses lex impono, qui æque parvus peccatum ac magnus scelus capitalis sum. Qui ipse hic causa trado; Parvus peccatum ego mors dignus video, et manifestus ac magnus scelus, magnus supplicium excogito non possum. At hic lex Atheniensis non diu placeo. Demades dico soleo, Draco lex non atramentum, sed sanguis, scriptus sum

13. In Judea, after the death of Josiah, his son enjoyed the crown three months, and his brother a few years. Josiah's brother was succeeded by Zedekiah, the last king of the Jews, who was reduced to slavery by Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon; Jerusalem also and the temple, were burnt, and the citizens carried away into Ba-

In Judæa, post mors Josias, filius tres mensis, et frater pauci annus, regnum potitus sum Frater Josias succedo Zedechias, rex Judæus postremus. qui a Nebuchadnezzar Babylon rex in servitus redactus sum; templum quoque, ac Hierosolyma, incensus. civis Babylon traductus, an-

bylon, in the year before the birth of Christ 588.

14. Whilst Palestine and Syria were laid waste by the arms of barbarians, Greece was improved by the institutions of its wise men. The seven wise men of Greece flourished at the same time. Solon, one of their number, having abolished Draco's laws, enacted new ones more proper for the Athenians.

15. Servius Tullius, the sixth king of the Romans, having conquered the Hetrusci and Veientes, instituted the Census. He divided the people into classes and centuries; added to the city the Quirinal, Viminal, and Esquiline hills. He was murdered in the 44th year of his reign, by the villainy of his son-in-law Tarquin the Proud.

16. About this period lived a set of the most savage tyrants in different parts of the world; Periander at Corinth, Pisistratus at Athens, Thrasybulus at Miletus, Polycrates in the island Samos, and Phalaris in Sicily. The same age was very productive of wise men; then flourished Æsop the famous writer of fables, and Pythagoras in Italy, who first called himself a philosopher. In Greece the poets Alcæus, Stesichorus, Sappho, Simonides, Anacreon, Pindar, were greatly renowned.

17. Towards the latter end of Servius Tullius's time flourished Cyrus the Persian. He

nus ante Christus natus 588.

Dum Palestina et Syria barbarus arma evasto, Græcia sapiens institutum excolo. Septem ille Græcia sapiens unus tempus existo. Ex qui numerus Solon, abrogatus Draco lex, commodus Athenienses lex fero.

Servius Tullius, sextus Romanus rex, Hetruscus ac Veientes debellatu Census instituo. Populus in classis ac centuria describo; urbs, Quirinalis, Viminalis, Exquilinus mons adjungo. Occisus sum 44 imperium annus, scelus gener suus Tarquinius Superbus.

Hic tempus immanis tyrannus passim existo: Periander Corinthus, Pisistratus Athenæ, Thrasybulus Miletus, Polycrates in Samos insula, et Phalaris in Sicilia. Idem ætas sapiens ferax sum; Æsopus fabula architectus tum vigeo, necnom Pythagoras in Italia, qui sui primus philosophus appello. In Græcia, poeta Sappho, Alcæus, Stesichorus, Simonides, Anacreon, Pindarus, illustris sum.

Cyrus Persa extremus Servius Tullius tempus existo. Sum natus Cum-

was the son of Cambyses, either king of Persia, or a man of the first rank in that country, and of Mandane, the daughter of Astyages, king of the Medes. Herodotus indeed says that his father was a mean man; and that Cyrus, on account of a dream, had been exposed in his infancy by order of his grandfather. But greater credit is due to Xenophon. Cyrus in the fortieth year of his age, was called from Persia to assist his uncle Cyaxares, king of the Medes, in his war against the Babylonians, and their ally Crœsus, king of Lydia. This war lasted 21 years. Cyrus commanded the united army of Medes and Persians; and from this period historians compute the beginning of his reign. Cyrus's conduct in this war was glorious, and his success wonderful He vanquished Crœsus, and took the royal city of Sardis; after this he subdued all the continent from the Ægean sea to the Euphrates. He reduced the strong city of Babylon, and, delivering the government of that kingdom to his uncle Cyaxares, called also Darius the Mede, he returned into Persia. About two years after, Cyaxares dying, and also Cambyses king of Persia, Cyrus took upon him the government of the whole empire; which he held for the space of seven years. In the first

byses, aut rex Persia, aut vir primus ordo in is civitas, et Mandane, filia Astyages, rex Medus. Herodotus quidem pater Cyrus mediocris vir sum perhibeo, et Cyrus infans jussu avus propter somnium expositus sum. At fides Xenophon potius ad hibendus sum. Cyrus quadragesimus ætas annus agens, e Persia arcessitus sum, ut Cyaxares avunculus suus in bellum contra Babylonius, isque socius Crœsus, rex Lydia, auxilium sum. Hic bellum per annus 21 gestus sum. Adunatus copiæ Medus et Persa Cyrus præsum; et ab hic tempus imperium apud historicus initium duco. Ut Cyrus virtus in hic bellum sum insignis, ita mirus felicitas usus sum. Crœsus supero, et regius urbs Sardis expugno; post hic totus regio inter mare Ægeus et Euphrates, perdomo. Babylon urbs munitissimus subigo, regnumque is administratio avunculus suus Cyaxares, Darius Medus etiam dictus, traditus, ipse in Persia regressus sum. Post fere biennium Cyaxares, necnon Cambyses rex Persia, mortuus, Cyrus totus imperium administratio suscipio; qui per septem annus teneo. Annus hic septem primus

of these seven years, and before Christ 534, issued out his decree for restoring the Jews to their country. In the reign of Cyrus lived the prophet Daniel, whom that monarch esteemed with an affectionate regard.

18. A few years after, as Herodotus relates, Cyrus made war upon the Scythians, and cut off the son of their queen Tomyris with his army. But the advantages of the victory proved delusive and of short duration. Cyrus, flushed with his late victory, marches out into a place of disadvantage, where he was trepanned by the enemy, and cut to pieces with all his forces. But Xenophon says, Cyrus died at home a natural death, in the 70th year of his age, and was buried at Pasargada in Persia, leaving his son Cambyses heir to his empire; who, having conquered Psamminitus, annexed Egypt to his father's realm. The Persian empire lasted 228 years, Cyrus reigned 30 years, Cambyses 7, Darius Hystaspis 36, Xerxes 21, Artaxerxes Longimanus, called Ahasuerus in the scriptures, and who had Esther for his queen, 41, Darius Nothus 19, Artaxerxes Mnemon 46, Ochus 21, Arses 2, Darius Codomannus 6.

et ante Christus 534, *edictum suus promulgo, qui Judæus patria restituo. Regnans Cyrus vivo Daniel propheta qui imperator ille complexus sum.*

Pauci exinde annus, ut Herodotus narro, Cyrus Scytha bellum infero, et Tomyris regina filius cum exercitus cædo. At brevis et fallax sum fructus victoria. Cyrus recens victoria elatus in iniquus locus progredior, ubi insidiæ hostis ipse cum omnis copiæ concido. Xenophon autem aio, Cyrus domus fatum functus sum, annus ætas septuagessimus et Pasargada in Persia sepultus sum, Cambyses filius hæres imperium relictus; qui, Psamminitus victus, paternus regnum Ægyptus adjicio. Imperium Persicus annus 228 *duro. Cyrus regno annus* 30, *Cambyses* 7, *Darius Hystaspis* 36, *Xerxes* 21, *Artaxerxes Longimanus, Ahsuerus sacer litteræ dictus, et qui Esther regina habeo,* 41, *Darius Nothus* 19, *Artaxerxes Mnemon* 46, *Ochus* 21, *Arses* 2, *Darius Codomannus* 6.

CHAP. VIII.

From the liberation of the Jews by Cyrus, to the overthrow of the Persian empire by Alexander the Great, including 204 years.

TARQUINIUS Superbus, the seventh and last of the Roman kings, derived his surname from his behaviour. He slighted the authority of the senate in the management of the government. He finished the temple of Jupiter which had been begun by his father; He subdued the Volsci; and took Gabii by the artful conduct of his son Sextus. He is said to have purchased the Sibylline books from the Cumean Sibyl At last he was turned out of the city, and his kingdom too, for a rape committed by his son upon Lucretia, a woman of quality, in the 23d year of his reign, in the 68 Olympiad, and before Christ 506. The regal power obtained at Rome, under seven kings, almost 242 years.

2. After the expulsion of the kings, two consuls were created annually at Rome. Brutus and Collatinus were the first consuls. Brutus upon the discovery of a conspiracy against the public liberty, punished the conspirators, among whom were two of his own sons, with death.

TARQUINIUS Superbus, septimus atque ultimus Romanus rex, ex factum cognomen traho. Senatus auctoritas in administrandus respublica negligo. Jupiter templum a pater inchoatus extruo : Volscus arma domo ; Gabii Sextus filius dolus capio. A Sibylla Cumanus liber Sibyllinus emo dico. Tandem, ob stuprum Lucretia, nobilissimus fœmina, a filius illatus, et urbs, et regnum ejectus sum, annus regnum 23, Olympias 68, ante Christus natus 506 Regnatur Roma a septem rex annus prope 242.

Post rex expulsus, bini quotannis consul Roma creo. Brutus et Collatinus primus consul sum. Brutus, conjuratio contra libertas patefactus, conjuratus, in qui sum filius is duo mors multo.

3. About the same time a like incident delivered the Athenians from tyranny. Hipparches the son of Pisistratus, had debauched Harmodius's sister. Whereupon Harmodius slays the tyrant. Being forced with torture, by Hippias the tyrant's brother, to name those that were accessary to the murder, he named the tyrant's friends; who were all immediately put to death by the tyrant. The citizens, roused by his magnanimity, banished Hippias, restored themselves to liberty. They erected a statue to Harmodius.

Atheniensis per idem tempus par causa tyrannis libero. Hipparchus, Pisistratus natus, Harmodius soror violo. Itaque Harmodius tyrannus obtrunco. Ab Hippias, tyrannus frater, nomino cædes conscius, tormentum coactus, tyrannus amicus nomino; qui omnis statim a tyrannus interficio. Hic virtus excitatus civis, Hippias pulsus, sui in libertas assero. Harmodius statua pono.

4. Cambyses, king of the Persians caused his brother Smerdis to be assassinated because he had dreamed that he saw him on the throne. Cambyses died soon after of a wound by his own sword dropping accidentally out of the sheath. Patizithes, one of the Magi, concealing the death of Smerdis, put up his own brother Oropastes in his room, who, personating Smerdis, obtained the sovereignty. But the imposture being soon discovered, the pretended king, with his brother, was taken off by the grandees of Persia.

Cambyses, rex Persa, frater suus Smerdis interficiendus curo, quod per quies is regno video. Paulo post Cambyses, gladius e vagina delapsus, vulneratus intereo. Patizithes, unus e Magus, celatus mors Smerdis, frater suus Oropastes pro is suppono, qui sui Smerdis sum simulans, regnum potior. Sed fraus cito patefactus, pseudo rex, cum frater, a Persa princeps confodio.

5 The grandees who had dispatched Oropastes, agreed among themselves to come to the Palace before sun-rise, and that he whose horse neighed first, should be king. The horse of Darius, the son of Hy-

Princeps, qui Oropastes neco, inter sui paciscor, ut ad regia ante sol ortus venio, et ut is qui equus hinnitus primus edo, rex sum. Equus Darius, Hystaspis filius hinnitus pri-

staspis, neighed first, and procured his owner the kingdom.

6. Darius Hystaspis being thus created king of the Persians, granted leave to the Jews to finish the temple of Jerusalem; the prophet Haggai at the same time encouraging them thereto. Babylon, which had revolted from the Persians, he recovered by the artifice of his friend Zopyrus. For he having cut off his nose and ears, made the Babylonians believe he had fled over to them, on having been barbarously used by Darius. Accordingly he betrayed the city with which they intrusted him to Darius.

7. Tarquinius Superbus being banished from Rome, implored the assistance of Porsenna, king of the Hetrusci; who waging war with the Romans possessed himself of the Janiculum. Horatius Cocles alone sustained the assaults of the enemy on the Sublician bridge for a considerable time, till the bridge was cut down behind him. Then he plunged into the Tiber, and swam over safe to the Romans amidst the darts of the enemy. Clælia too, a Roman lady, one of the hostages, having eluded her keepers, swam over the Tiber, amidst the darts of the Hetrusci. Moreover, Mutius Scævola, in order to deliver his country from the enemy's blockade, conveys himself into their camp,

mus edo, et dominus regnum pario.

Darius Hystapis rex Persa sic creatus, Judæus potestas templum Hierosolyma absolvendus facio; adhortans simul Hoggai propheta. Babylon, qui a Persa descisco, Zopyrus amicus dolus recipio. Quippe is, nasus sui et auris desectus, fidus facio Babylonius, sui a Darius crudeliter tractatus, ad is confugio. Itaque urbs, suus fides ab ille creditus, Darius prodo.

Tarquinius Superbus Roma exactus, Porssena Hetruscus rex auxilium imploro; qui, bellum Romanus illatus, Janiculum occupo. Hostis impetus Horatius Cocles tamdiu sustineo in sublicius pons solus quod pons a tergum rescindo. Inde in Tiberis desilio, atque inter hostis telum incolumis ad Zomanus trano. Clælia quoque, virgo Romanus, unus ex obses, elusus custos, Tiberis inter Hetruscus telum trano. Mutius porro Scævola, ut patria obsidio hostis eximo, in is castra sui insinuo, per error scriba pro rex obtruncо. d tribunal rex retractus, dextra foculus

and instead of the king, by mistake kills his secretary. Being carried before the king to be examined, he thrusts his right hand into the fire, and burns it; and at the same time declares to the king, that 300 Romans had in like manner taken an oath to murder him. Whereupon Porsenna, making peace with the Romans, returned home.

8. After this the Latins made war upon the Romans, under the conduct of Tarquin's son-in-law; against whom Posthumius being made dictator, he vanquished them in a memorable battle at the lake Regillus. It is said the gods, particularly Castor and Pollux, were present in this battle, and were seen to fight on white horses, in the year of the city 255 Gelo at that time reigned in Syracuse.

9 Darius, also king of the Persians, endeavouring to reinstate Hippias in his kingdom, made war upon Athens. Miltiades, general of the Athenians, quickly meets him at Marathon, with a small body of men. Ten thousand Athenians encountered two hundred thousand Persians. Darius's army was routed and put to flight, in the year before the birth of Christ 490.

10. Rome, delivered from foreign enemies, was well nigh ruined by intestine divisions.

injicio, atque exuro; simulque rex, trecenti Romanus idem ratio in caput is conjuro, denuncio. Itaque Porsenna, pax cum Romanus factus, domus redeo.

Latinus deinde, dux Tarquinius gener, bellum Romanus infero; contra qui, Posthumius dictator factus, ad lacus Regillus insignis prælium vinco. Fero deus, nempe Castor et Pollux, hic prælium intersum, et ex albus equus pugno visus sum, annu urbs 255. Gelo tum Syracusæ regno.

Darius quoque, Persa rex, Hippias in pristinus regnum restituo conatus, Athenæ bellum infero. Miltiades, Atheniensis dux, ad Marothon cum parvus manus celeriter occurro. Cum ducenti Persa mille decem Atheniensis mille dimico. Darius exercitus fusus fugatusque, annus ante Christus 490.

Liberatus Roma externus hostis, intestinus discordia pene concido. Plebs

The commons, harassed by the senators and usurers, withdrew to the Sacred Mount on the other side of the Anio; but were appeased by the persuasions of Menenius Agrippa, and upon obtaining the protection of the tribunes of the people against the patricians, returned into the city.

a pater ac fœnerator vexatus, in Sacer Mons trans Anio secedo: sed Menenius Agrippa oratio delinio, et tribunus plebs præsidium adversus Pater acceptus, in urbs remigro.

11. Martius Coriolanus, having been forced from the city by the spite of the tribunes, went over to the Volsci, and made war upon his country. He so broke the power of the Romans, that they were obliged to sue for peace, by sending his mother Veturia to him. Coriolanus yielded to his mother's entreaties, and the Volsci were afterwards quite reduced by Spurius Cassius. But Cassius, after this, elated with his mighty success, and aiming at sovereignty, was thrown headlong from the Tarpeian rock, in the year of the city 268.

Martius Coriolanus, tribunus invidia ab urbs pulsus, ad Volscus sui recipio, et patria bellum infero. Romanus opis adeo frango ut Veturia mater ad is ablegatus, pax peto cogo. Coriolanus maternus precis cedo, et Volscus postea a Spurius Cassius penitus debellatus sum. At Cassius exinde magnus successus elatus, et regnum affectans, de rupes Tarpeius præcipitatus sum; annus urbs 268.

12. About the same time, Aristides, surnamed the Just, was banished Athens. But being soon restored, he assisted Themistocles in the Persian war, by whose interest he had been expelled, sacrificing private wrongs to the good of his country.

Sub idem tempus Aristides, cognomentum Justus, Athenæ exulo. Brevi autem restitutus, Themistocles, qui opera ejectus sum, Persicus bellum adjuvo, privatus injuria patria condonatus.

13. At Rome, the Fabian family, to ease their country of trouble, petitioned for the entire management of the Veientian war to themselves. They

Roma Fabius gens, ut patria molestia libero, bellum sui Veientinus ipse posco. Veintes sæpe vinco. Jam victrix ab hostis

defeated the Veientes several times. Being now victorious, they were almost utterly destroyed by a stratagem of the enemy, about 300 of the Fabii were cut off in one day.

14. Xerxes, the son of Darius Hystaspis, heir to his father's crown and inveterate enmity to the Greeks, having built a bridge of boats over the Hellespont, and digged through Mount Athos, invaded Greece with an army of two millions of men. At the straits of Thermopylæ, Leonidas king of the Spartans, with a handful of men made a dreadful slaughter of his troops, till, spent with killing, he fell victorious above heaps of slain enemies. The Athenians, in the mean time, quitting their city, equipped a fleet of 200 ships. Accordingly, Xerxes having found Athens deserted, burnt it. But his fleet consisting of 2000 sail and upwards, being defeated near Salamis, and put to flight by the contrivance and valour of Themistocles the Athenian admiral, he marched off in great dismay towards Thrace, in order to cross the Hellespont: but finding his bridge broken down by the violence of the storms, he passed over in a fishing-boat, and continued in his flight to Sardis, in the year of Rome 268, and before Christ 480.

15. The year following, Mardonius, who had been left by

per insidiæ pene deletus sum, amplius 390 *Fabii unus dies cado.*

Xerxes, Darius Hystaspis filius, paternus regnum atque odium in Græcus hæres, junctus navis Hellespontus Athosque mons perfossus, Græcia cum 2000 *armatus mille invado. Is Leonidas rex Spartiates, parvus manus, ad Thermopylæ angustiæ, maximus infero clades, donec, cædendum defatigatio, super strages hostis corruo victor. Atheniensis interim, relictus urbs, classis* 200 *navis adorno. Xerxes igitur Athenæ vacuus nacius incendo. Sed classis duo mille navis et amplius, Themistocles dux Atheniensis virtus et consilium prope Salamis fusus ac fugatus, trepidus Thracia versus discedo, ut Hellespontus trajicio: cum vero pons tempestas vis solutus video, scapha piscatorius transmitto, fugioque continuo Sardis, annus Roma* 268, *et ante Christus* 480.

Sequens annus, Mardonius qui cum 300 *ar-*

Xerxes with 300 thousand men to prosecute the war, met with a mighty overthrow at Platea from the Greeks, under the conduct of Aristides and Pausanias. In the reign of Xerxes, flourished Herodotus the father of historians, about 600 years later than Homer.

16. Quinctius Cincinnatus, called from the plough by the Romans to the dictatorship, delivered the consul Minutius, who had been blocked up by the Æqui at Algidum, and caused the enemy to pass under the yoke. Cimon also, the son of Miltiades, having with the like good conduct vanquished the forces of Xerxes near Cyprus, restored the Greek cities of Asia to liberty. Nor was Greece then illustrious for its generals only, but philosophers also; for the same age produced Heraclitus, Democritus, Anaxagoras and several others.

17. At Rome about 300 years after the building of the city, instead of two consuls, decemviri were created. They compiled a body of laws brought over from Greece, and particularly from Athens. These, being inscribed on 12 tables, were called the laws of the XII. tables. Within a few years, by the lust of Appius Claudius, and the outrages of his colleagues, the government reverted to the consuls.

18. Artaxerxes Longimanus

matus mille a Xerxes ad persequendus bellum relictus sum, magnus ad Platea calamitas accipio a Græcus, Aristides et Pausanias dux. Xerxes rex floreo historia pater Herodotus, annus prope 600 junior Homerus.

Quinctius Cincinnatus, ab aratrum ad dictatura a Romanus, vocatus, Minutius Consul ad Algidum, obsessus ab Æquus, libero, hostisque sub jugum mitto. Cimon quoque, Miltiades filius, Xerxes copiæ ad Cyprus par virtus devictus, Græcus Asia urbs in libertas assero. Nec vero imperator tum, sed etiam philosophus, Græcia floreo; idem enim ætas Heraclitus Democritus, Anaxagoras, aliusque complures, effundo.

Roma, annus post urbs conditus circiter 300, *pro duo consul, decemviri creatus. Hic lex e Græcia, ac potissimum Athenæ, petitus, conscribo. Hic quoniam tabula duodecim mandatus sum, lex XII. tabula appellatus. Pauci annus, propter Appius Claudius libido, collegaque impotentia, res ad consul redeo.*

Artaxerxes Longima-

granted leave to Nehemiah, his cup-bearer, to rebuild the walls of Jerusalem. in the year before the birth of Christ 455. In the reign of Artaxerxes, lived the famous naturalists Empedocles and Parmenides, Hippocrates the physician, Policletus and Phidias, statuaries, Xeuxis. Parrhasius, and Timantes, painters.

19. About six years after the decemviral power was abolished, military tribunes with consular authority began to be created at Rome. The censors too were then first made for holding the census. Cornelius Cossus, a military tribune, having slain Toluminius king of the Veientes with his own hand, next after Romulus, presented the *spolia opima* to Jupiter Feretrius.

20. The same years the military tribunes were created at Rome, the Peloponnesian war broke out in Greece, which spreading itself over all Greece, continued 27 years. Thucydides, having been forced into banishment by Pericles, the incendiary of the war, wrote the history of it.

21. A few years after the seat of the war was transferred into Sicily. The Athenians, importuned for aid by the Catanenses, engaged in a war against the Syracusans, in the reign of Darius Nothus, king of the Persians. The first at-

nus, Nehemias, pincerna suus, potestas murus Hierosolyma reficiendum facio, annus ante Christus natus 455. *Artaxerxes regnans, Empedocles et Parmenides physicus, Hippocrates medicus, Polycletus et Phidias statuarius, Xeuxis, Parrhasius, et Timantes, pictor, clarus sum.*

Sex fere annus post sublatus decemviri potestas, tribunus miles consularis potestas Roma creo cœpi. Censor quoque tum primum ad census agendus creatus. Cornelius. Cossus, tribunus miles, Tolumnius Veientes rex suus manus necatus, spolia opimus Jupiter Feretrius, alter ab Romulus fero.

Idem annus qui tribunus miles Roma creatus sum, bellum Poleponnesiacus exardeo in Græcia, qui totus per vagatus Græcia, annus duro 27. *Is bellum Thucydides, a Pericles, bellum excitator, in exilium ejectus, historia mando.*

Pauci interjectus annus, bellum in Sicilia transeo. Atheniensis, Catanensis opis implorans, bellum adversus Syracusanus suscipio, Darius Nothus rex Persa. Hic bellum præclarus initium, exitus A-

tempts of the Athenians in this war were very successful, but the issue proved fatal to them. The generals of The Athenians were Alcibiades, Nicias, and Lamachus.

22. But at Athens the study of the liberal arts was in high repute. Then flourished Aristophanes, Cratinus, and Eupolis, comic poets; Sophocles and Euripides, tragic poets; Praxiteles the famous statuary; Gorgias and other sophists in great numbers: and Socrates, the father of philosophers. But Diagoras denying the existence of the gods, was banished from Athens, a reward being offered by the government if any one would kill him.

23. The Galli Senones, during the reign of Tarquinius Priscus, having driven out the Tuscans, had seized upon that part of Italy which was afterwards called Cisalpine Gaul. This people, incensed by Q. Fabius the ambassador of the Roman people, at the siege of Clusium, a town of the Hetrusci, turned their arms against the Romans, and having cut off their forces at the river Allia, fell upon the city, under their leader Brennus, took and destroyed it with fire and sword. Rome was burnt in the year 365 after it was built.

24. About those times a calamity of much the like nature befel Athens. Lysander, gene-

theniensis calamitosus sum. Dux Atheniensis sum Alcibiades, Nicias, et Lamachus.

Athenæ autem bonus ars studium vigeo. Aristophanes, Cratinus, et Eupolis, comicus poeta; Sophocles et Euripides, tragicus; Praxiteles statuarius insignis; Gorgius aliusque sophista quam plurimus; et Socrates, philosophus parens, tum floreo. Diagoras autem, deus sum negans, Athenæ exulo, præmium publice propositus, si quis is occido.

Gallus Seno, Tarquinius Priscus regnans, Italia pars qui Gallia Cisalpinus postea, dictus sum, Thuscus expulsus occupo. Hic, in oppugnatio Clusium, Hetruscus oppidum a Q. Fabius legatus populus Romanus irritatus, in Romanus arma verto, is copiæ ad Allia flumen cæsus urbs, Brennus dux invado, coptus ferrum flammaque populor. Roma incensus annus postquam conditus sum 365.

Consimilis per is tempus Athenæ casus excipio. Lysander, Lacedæmonius

ral of the Lacedemonians, assisted by the power of Persia, having vanquished Conon, and brought the Athenians very low, took Athens itself, demolished its walls, and appointed thirty commissioners to govern the state; who tyrannizing cruelly over the citizens, were turned out by Thrasybulus, four years after the taking of the city, and Athens restored to its liberty.

25. About this same time flourished Ctesias of Cnidus, who having been taken prisoner in the wars of Cyrus against Artaxerxes Mnemon, king of the Persians, was very honourably treated by the king on account of his skill in physic, and wrote the history of the Persians. At the same time lived Archytas of Tarentum, and likewise Antisthenes, Aristippus, Xenophon, Plato, Isocrates, disciples of Socrates.

26. In those times flourished several famous generals; at Athens, Iphicrates, Chabrias, Thrasybulus, and Timotheus; amongst the Thebans, Pelopidas, and Epaminondas, a man of an illustrious character, not only for military glory, but likewise for his skill in philosophy and integrity of life.

27. At Rome, Camillus, created dictator in his absence, having raised an army, advanced to the city, expelled the Gauls,

dux, opis Persicus adjustus, cum Conon victus, Atheniensis frango, ipse Athenæ capio murus diruo, et triginta vir respublica præpono; qui in civis crudeliter grassans, a Thrasybulus, quartus post urbs captus annus, ejectus sum et libertas Athenæ restitutus.

Sub idem tempus floreo Ctesias Cnidus, qui bellum Cyrus contra Artaxerxes Mnemon Persa rex captus, propter medendum scientia, magnus in honor ab rex sum habitus, et Persa scribo historia. Idem tempestas Archytas Tarentinus, itemque Antisthenes, Aristippus, Xenophon, Plato, Isocrates, Socrates discipulus, existo.

Clarus quoque per idem tempus imperator existo; Athenæ quidem Iphicrates, Chabrias, Thrasybulus, et Timotheus; apud Thebanus Pelopidas, et Epaminondas, vir, non solum res militaris gloria, sed etiam philosophia laus, et vita integritas, illustris.

Camillus, Roma dictator absens factus, collectus copiæ, urbs advenio, Gallusque inde abjicio, et univer-

and utterly destroyed their whole army. Rome within a year, by the generous activity of Camillus, was reared up a new. Lucius Sextus, who, after a long dispute, was the first consul made from among the plebians, put an end to the creation of military tribunes. A city Prætor, and two Curule Ædiles, were created.

28. Epaminondas, having cut off Cleombrotus king of the Lacedemonians, together with his army, at Leuctra, fell in battle fighting with great bravery against Agesilaus, at Mantinea. With him fell the glory of the Thebans. The martial character of the Lacedemonians likewise died, upon the introducing of gold, and along with it avarice, by their general Lysander.

29. From the Greeks the martial spirit passed to the Carthaginians, who subdued Sardinia with their arms: and, having vanquished Dionysius, tyrant of Syracuse, took several towns from the Syracusans. Not long after, Dionysius being killed by his subjects, left the sovereignty to his son Dionysius; who being at last driven from Syracuse for his unparalleled extravagance, by Dion the disciple of Plato, set up a school at Corinth; whilst Isocrates, Demosthenes's master, as yet taught rhetoric at Athens.

30. The arts of war in the

sus is exercitus penitus deleo. Roma intra annus Camillus beneficium novus urbs sto. Lucius Sextus, post longus certamen, primus e plebs consul factus, finis tribunus miles creandus affero. Prætor urbanus, et Ædilis Curulis duo creo.

Epaminondas, Lacedæmonius rex Cleombrotus cum Exercitus ad Leuctra cæsus, ad Mantinea cum Agesilaus fortiter pugnans cado. Cum is Thebanus virtus occido. Lacedæmonius quoque laus bellicus concido, invectus a Lysander dux, cum aurum avaritia.

A Græcus ad Carthaginiensis bellicus virtus transeo, qui Sardinia arma domo; et, Dionysius Syracusæ tyrannus superatus, multus Siculus oppidum adimo. Haud ita multo post, Dionysius interfectus a suus, tyrannus Dionysius filius relinquo; is, ob singularis nequitia demum a Dion Plato auditor ejectus Syracusæ, ludus aperio Corinthus; docens etiam tum Athenæ rhetorica Isocrates, magister Demosthenes.

Roma interea ars bel-

mean time were in great lustre at Rome. T. Manlius upon a challenge in the Gallic war, slew a Gaul of prodigious stature in the face of both armies, and was called Torquatus, from the chain which he took from the Gaul's neck. Valerius too killed a Gaul of like size, by the assistance of a raven, which perching on his helmet, had annoyed his antagonist with his wings and beak, and got the surname of Corvinus.

31. Alexander the Great was born at Pella, a town of Macedonia, in the year after the building of Rome 392, in the 106th Olympiad, and before the birth of Christ 356; his father Philip, king of the Macedonians, subdued the Illyrians, took several cities from the Athenians and other Greeks, and would have made himself master of all Greece, had he not been opposed by Demosthenes the orator. Finally, being created general of Greece for managing the Persian war, he was slain by Pausanias, whose ill usage he had neglected to revenge, in the reign of Ochus, king of the Persians.

32. In the mean time, the war with the Samnites proved very grievous and lasting. War was declared against the Samnites in favour of the Campani, who had put themselves under the protection of the Roman

licus eniteo. T. Manlius, bellum Gallicus Gallus eximius proceritas in oculus uterque exercitus, ex provocatio, occido, et, ex torquis qui Gallus cervix detraho, Torquatus dictus sum. Valerius item Galtus par magnitudo obtrunco, corvus præsidium qui in is galea insidens, hostis ala rostrumque terreo, et cognomen Corvinus adipiscor.

Annus post Roma conditus 392, Olympias, 106, et ante Christus natus 356, in oppidum Macedonia Pella, Alexander Magnus natus sum; qui Pater Philippus, rex Macedo, Illyrius subigo, multus de Atheniensis aliusque Græcus urbs capio, totusque Græcia potitus sum, nisi Demosthenes orator adversarius habeo. Denique, ad bellum Persicus administrandus Græcia dux creatus, a Pausanias, qui injuria vindico negligo, interficio, Ochus rex Persa.

Samniticus, interim, bellum existo sane gravis ac diuturnus. Pro Campanus, qui sui in fides populus Romanus trado, bellum Samnis indictus, ac varie gestus sum. Latinus bellum

people and was carried on with various success. To it was added the war with the Latins; in which war T. Manlius Torquatus the consul beheaded his own son, for engaging the enemy contrary to orders. In the same war Decius Mus, upon the Roman troops giving ground, devoted himself for the army. The ships of the Antiates taken during the war, were brought to Rome, and with their beaks the gallery in the Forum was adorned: whilst Diogenes the Cynic, and scholar of Antisthenes, also Aristotle, Xenocrates, Speusippus, disciples of Plato, taught in Greece.

accedo; qui bellum T. Manlius Torquatus consul filius, quod contra edictum cum hostis pugno, securis percutio. Idem bellum Decius Mus, inclinatus acies Romanus, sui pro exercitus devoveo. Navis Antiates bellum captus, Roma subductus sum atque is rostrum suggestum in Forum extractus adorno; Diogenes Cynicus, Antisthenes. Aristoteles, Xenocrates, Speusippus, Plato auditor, docens in Græcia.

33. Alexander the Great in his youth studied under Aristotle, whilst yet very young he conquered the Thracians and Illyrians, destroyed Thebes, and received Athens upon surrender. After this supported by the confederate arms of the Greeks and Thessalians, he passes over into Asia to the Persian war. He defeats Darius Codomannus king of the Persians, first at Granicus, and a second time at Issus.

Alexander Magnus puer Aristoteles opera do; adolescentulus Illyrius Thraxque perdomo, Thebæ everto Athenæ in deditio accipio, Inde, junctus Thessalus Græcusque arma adjutus, ad Persicus bellum in Asia trajicio. Darius Codomannus Persa rex, primo ad Granicus, iterum ad Issus supero.

34. Moreover, Alexander having taking Tyre, invaded Judea. But being received in a friendly manner at Jerusalem by Jaddus the high priest, he offered sacrifices in the temple. Having made himself master of Egypt, he builds the city of Alexandria, calling it by his own

Alexander, porro, captus Tyrus, Judæa invado. Sed Hierosolyma ab Jaddus summus sacerdos amice acceptus, in templum victima immolo. Ægyptus potitus, Alexandria urbs a sui conditus, ex suus nomen appello. Denique,

name. In fine, he passes the Euphrates, conquers Darius a third time at Arbela, and having taking Babylon, transfers the empire from the Persians to the Macedonians, in the fourth year of his reign, in the 112th Olympiad, in the year of Rome 418, and before Christ 330.

Euphrates transeo, Darius tertio ad Arbela vinco, et, Babylon captus, imperium a Persa ad Macedo traduco, annus regnum quartus, Olympias 112, *annus Roma* 418, *et ante Christus* 330.

CHAP. IX.

From the overthrow of the Persian empire to the defeat of Perseus, the last successor of Alexander the Great in Greece, by Æmilius Paulus, when Rome became the mistress of the world: comprehending 163 *years.*

THE Macedonian empire being thus erected, Alexander marches into India, and, after conquering many nations returns to Babylon, where he died, in the 12th year of his reign, being 33 years old, in the year before the birth of Christ 323. In his reign flourished the historians Theopompus, Magesthenes, and Hecatæus.

Upon the demise of Alexander many princes started up in the room of one. Ptolemy, the son of Lagus, called also Ptolemy Soter, reigned in Egypt, Eumenes in Cappadocia, Antigonus in Asia, Lysimachus in Thrace, Seleucus at Baby-

MACEDONICUS imperium ita constitutus, Alexander in India pergo, et multus natio devictus, Babylon revertor: ubi, annus 33 *natus, excedo e vita, annus regnum* 12, *et ante Christus natus* 323. *Is regnans, Theopompus, Magesthenes, et Hecatæus, historicus, floreo.*

Alexander mortuus, multus pro unus rex existo. Ptolemæus, Lagus filius, Ptolemæus Soter etiam dictus, in Ægyptus, Eumenes in Cappadocia, Antigonus in Asia, Lysimachus in Thracia, Seleucus Ba-

lon. Cassander having put to death Alexander's son, and his mother Olympias, seized upon the kingdom of Macedonia. At the same time Meander, the comic poet, Crantor, the disciple of Xenocrates, and Crates of Diogenes, Epicurus, and Zeno, the father of the Stoics, as also Theophrastus, were in great reputation.

bylon, regno. Cassander, Alexander filius ac mater Olympias interfectus, regnum Macedonia occupo. Idem tempestas, Meander, comicus poeta, Crantor Xenocrates, et Crates Diogenes, discipulus, Epicurus, et Zeno, Stoicus parens, idemque Theophrastus, nomen habeo.

3. About the time of Alexander's death, Appius Claudius the censor, paved the Appian way at Rome. About the same time the Tarentine war was kindled up, occasioned by their insulting the Roman ambassadors. In which war the integrity and courage of Curius and Fabricius, with respect to Pyrrhus king of Epire, who had come to the assistance of the Tarentines, were remarkably eminent. Curius Dentatus having defeated him in battle, drove him at last out of Italy, and forced the Tarentines to surrender, about 483 years after the building of the city.

Roma, sub Alexander mors Appius Claudius censor Appius via sterno. Sub idem tempus bellum Tarentinus, ob legatus populus Romanus violatus, excitatus sum. Qui bellum, adversus Pyrrhus Epirus rex qui Tarencinus auxilium venio, Curius et Fabricius integritas ac virtus eniteo. Curius Dentatus denique, Pyrrhus devictus, Italia expello, et Tarentinus ad deditio compello annus ab urbs conditus circiter 483.

4. After the death of Alexander the Great, the regal government continued in Egypt for the space of near 275 years. Ptolemy Soter, the beginning of whose reign is to be computed from the year before Christ 304, for the successor of Alexander long disclaimed the title of king, ruled 20 years, Ptolemy Philadelphus 38, Ptolemy Euergetes 25, Ptolemy Philo-

Post mors Alexander Magnus, per spatium fere 275 annus in Ægyptus regnatur. Ptolemæus Soter, qui regnum initium ab annus ante Christus 304 supputandus sum, Alexander enim successor a nomen rex diu abstineo, annus 20 impero, Ptolemæus Philadelphus 38, Ptolemæus Euregetes 25, Ptolemæus

pater 17, Ptolemy Epiphanes 24, Ptolemy Philometor 35, Ptolemy Physcon 29, Ptolemy Lathurnus or Soter 36, Alexander 15, Ptolemy Auletes 14, Queen Cleopatra 22.

5. Agathocles, the tyrant of Syracuse, being besieged by the Carthaginians, passes over privately with his fleet into Africa; by which means he drew off the enemy to the defence of their own country. Having made peace with the Carthaginians, he makes himself absolute master of Sicily. He was succeeded by Hiero, who, for his great moderation, was honoured with the title of king, by the Syracusans. He gave occasion to the first Punic war with the Romans.

6. About 495 years after the building of the city, the Roman people having subdued almost all Italy, passed over into Sicily, to succour the Mamertini their allies, against Hiero and the Carthaginians. Accordingly the Romans under their general Appius Claudius, vanquished Hiero; and, having worsted the Carthaginians, received several towns of Sicily upon surrender. After this C. Duilius first gained a naval victory over the Carthaginians. The seat of the war was immediately carried into Africa, under the command of Attilius Re-

Philopater 17, *Ptolemæus Epiphanes* 24, *Ptolemæus Philometor* 35, *Ptolemæus Physcon* 39, *Ptolemæus Lathurnus sive Soter* 36, *Alexander* 15, *Ptolemæus Auletes* 14, *Cleopatra regina* 22.

Agathocles, Syracusæ tyrannus, a Pœnis obsessus, occulte cum classis trajicio in Africa: ita hostis ad defendendus patria avoco Pax cum Carthaginiensis factus, Sicilia imperium potior. Hic Hiero succedo, qui, propter summus moderatio, rex a Syracusanus, appellatus sum. Hic primus bellum Punicus occasio Romanus do.

Populus Romanus, annus post urbs conditus circiter 495, *domitus totus pene Italia, ut Mamertinus socius contra Hiero et Carthaginiensis auxilium fero, transmitto in Sicilia. Romanus igitur, Appius Claudius dux, Hiero vinco; et, Pœnus profligatus, oppidum Sicilia complures in deditio accipio. C. Duilius inde victoria navalis de Pœnus primus reporto. Mox, Attilius Regulus imperator, bellum in Africa transeo. Is Tunetum aliusque Pœnus op-*

gulus. He having taken Tunis, and other towns of the Carthaginians, laid siege to Carthage. But being worsted by Xantippus, general of the Lacedemonians, who came to the assistance of the Carthaginians, he fell into the hands of his enemies. Regulus being afterwards sent to Rome, to negociate a piece, advised the Romans to make no peace with the Carthaginians. He himself returning to Carthage in consequence of the engagements he had came under to the enemy, was put to death in the most cruel manner imaginable. Finally, the consul Luctatius humbled the power of the Carthaginians in a sea-fight, and granted them a peace. The first Punic war being ended in the 24th year, the temple of Janus was shut a second time. About the same time the consul Marcellus, having killed Veridomarus king of the Insubres, with his own hand, was the third that presented the *opima spolia* to Jupiter. C. Flaminius the censor paved the Flaminian way.

pidum captus, Carthago obsideo. Verum a Xantippus Lacedæmonius dux, qui Pœnus subsidium venio, victus, in potestas hostis venio. Roma postea Regulus missus de pax petendus, Romanus suadeo, ne pax cum Pœnus fio. Ipse, ne datus hostis fides fallo, Carthago reversus, omnis cruciatus neco. Luctatius denique consul navalis prælium Carthaginiensis opis frango, paxque do. Bellum primus Punicus vigesimus quartus annus confectus, Janus templum iterum clausus sum. Per idem tempus Marcellus consul, Viridomarus Insubres rex suus manus interfectus, tertius spolium opimus Jupiter fero. C. Flaminius censor via Flaminius munio.

7. In Greece, Aratus, Cleanthes, and Chrysippus, disciples of Zeno, Arcesilas too, and Demetrius Phalereus, the scholar of Theophrastus, left illustrious monuments of their parts and learning, during the reign of Ptolemy Philadelphus in Egypt, who furnished the famous library at Alexandria; and in or-

In Græcia, Aratus, Cleanthes, et Chrysippus, Zeno auditor, Arcesilas quoque, et Demetrius Phalereus, Theophrastus discipulus, præclarus ingenium ac doctrina monumentum relinquo, regnans in Ægyptus Ptolemæus Philadelphus, qui celeberrimus

der to render it the more complete, procured the sacred books from Eleazer the high priest of Jerusalem, and caused them to be translated into Greek, in the year before Christ 277. In the mean time the Parthians revolted from the dominion of the Macedonians. Arsaces was the first king of Parthia; from him the other kings of the Parthians were called Arsacidæ.

8. The tranquillity of Rome, after the first Punic war, lasted scarce 24 years. Saguntum, a city in Spain, in alliance with the Roman people, having been destroyed by Annibal the Carthaginian general, gave rise to the second Punic war. Annibal, leaving his brother Asdrubal in Spain, marches over the Alps into Italy. Cornelius Scipio meets him at Ticinum; but narrowly escaped himself with the loss of his army. Flaminius, with a more terrible stroke, is cut off with his army by Annibal at the lake Thrasymene. Q. Fabius Maximus checked the enemy's career a little, by waving battle; hence he was called Cunctator. But a signal overthrow was received at Cannæ, a village of Apulia, by the rashness of Terentius Varro. So great was the number of the slain, that a bushel of gold rings, which had been taken from the hands of the Roman knights, was sent to Carthage. But the following year M.

Alexandria bibliotheca instruo; et, ut sum cumulatus, ab Eleazarus summus pontifex Hierosolyma sacer liber impetro, et Græce vertendus curo, annus ante Christus 277. Interea Parthus a Macedo imperium deficio. Primus in Parthia regno Arsaces; unde cæterus Parthus rex Arsacidæ dictus.

Roma, post primus bellum Punicus, vix 24 annus requies. Saguntum. urbs in Hispania, amicus populus Romanus, ab Annibal Pœnus dux deletus, secundus bellum Punicus principium sum. Annibal, Asdrubal frater in Hispania relictus, per Alpes in Italia descendo. Is Cornelius Scipio ad Ticinum occurro; sed amissus exercitus ipse ægre evado. Flaminius deterior excitus ab Annibal ad lacus Thrasymenus cum exercitus cædo. Q. Fabius Maximus hostis cunctandum non nihil reprimo; unde ipse Cunctator dictus sum. Sed Terentius Varro temeritas insignis ad Cannæ, Apulia vicus, clades acceptus. Cæsus multitudo tantus sum, ut aureus annulus, qui Romanus eques manus detractus sum modius Carthago mitto. At annus sequens, M. Claudius Mar-

Claudius Marcellus, fighting a successful battle at Nola, made it appear that Annibal could be conquered.

9. Hieronymus, the son of Hiero, king of Syracuse, had revolted to Annibal. Whereupon the consul Marcellus made war upon the Syracusans, and takes the city of Syracuse by surprise in the night, which had been long defended, no less by the inventions of Archimedes, than the arms of the citizens. The moderation of the conqueror heightened the glory of the conquest. He spared the city and the inhabitants. In fine, Lævinus made Sicily the first province of the Roman people.

21. Cornelius Scipio, yet very young, is sent into Spain by the Romans. He takes New Carthage, and drives Asdrubal out of Spain. There too he struck up a league with Masinissa. But Claudius Nero cut off Asdrubal at the river Metaurus, as he was going into Italy to join forces with his brother Annibal. And Scipio passed over into Africa, on design to draw off the enemy, who still kept fast by Italy. He cuts off Hanno the general of the Carthaginians with his army, and having conquered Syphax their ally in battle, took him prisoner.

11. In the 16th year of the war, Annibal was recalled into Africa by the Carthaginians.

cellus, ad Nola, secundus prælium factus, doceo Annibal possum supero.

Hieronymus, Hiero filius, Syracusæ rex, ad Annibal descisco. Quare Marcellus consul Syracusanus bellum infero, urbs Syracusæ, non minus Archimedes ingenium, quam civis arma, diu defensus, noctu de improviso capio. Victoria gloria augeo moderatio victor. Urbs et civis parco. Lævinus deniqueSiciliæ primus populus Romanus provincia facio.

Cornelius Scipio, adhuc adolescentulus, aRomanus in Hispania mitto. Is Carthago Novus capio, et Asdrubal ex Hispania fugo. Fœdus quoque ibi cumMasinissa ferio. At Claudius Nero Asdrubal, in Italia ad conjungendus cum fraterAnnibal copiæ veniens, ad Metaurus flumen, opprimo. Scipio autem, ut hærensItalia hostis abstraho, transmitto in Africa. Hanno Pœnus dux cum exercitus cædo, Syphax is socius acies victus, capio.

Annibal a Carthaginiensis, annus bellum 16, *in Africa revoco. Signum*

He encounters Scipio; being defeated, makes his escape from the battle, and giving up all for lost, flies into Asia. Carthage was entirely subdued in the year of Rome 560, just 188 years before the birth of Christ.

12. From Africa, Scipio got the surname of Africanus, being the first that was dignified with the name of a vanquished nation. He greatly honoured Ennius the Epic poet, with whom the comedians Nævius, Cæcilius, Plautus, are reckoned nearly cotemporary.

13. The peace with Carthage was succeeded by the Macedonian war, which was undertaken for the Athenians their allies, and carried on with various success for ten years. At last this war was ended by Quinctius Flaminius, by the entire conquest of Philip king of Macedonia, and liberty restored to all Greece, in the year of the city 552.

14. After this Antiochus, king of Syria and Asia, made war upon the Romans, at the instigation of Annibal. But Antiochus being defeated both by sea and land, by L. Scipio, sued for peace: which was granted him on these terms: That he should quit Asia, and surrender up Annibal: who, to prevent his falling into the hands of his enemies, swallowed poison, and died in the year of the city 581. From Asia, L.

cum Scipio confero; victus e prœlium fugio, res desperatus, in Asia profugio. Carthago penitus subactus annus post Roma conditus 560, *ante Christus natus annus* 188.

Scipio ex Africa Africanus cognomen deporto, primus nomen devictus a sui gens nobilitatis I dem. Ennius poeta Epicus in honor habeo, qui Nævius, Cæcilius, Plautus, comicus, fere æqualis numero.

Pax Punicus bellum Macedonicus excipio, qui pro Atheniensis amicus susceptus, per decem annus varie gero Denique a Quinctius Flaminius, Philippus Macedonia rex debellatus, hic bellum confectus sum, et Græcia universus libertas restitutus, annus ab urbs conditus 552.

Antiochus deinde, rex Asia ac Syria, Annibal impulsus, bellum Romanus infero. Verum a Lucius Scipio terra mareque Antiochus superatus, pax peto; qui hic conditio datus; Ut Asia excedo, et Annibal dedo; qui, ne in hostis potestas venio, haustus venenum intereo, annus urbs 581. *L. Scipio ex Asia cognomen Asiaticus refero. Hic tempus Livi-*

Scipio received the surname of Asiaticus. In those times Livy the writer of Tragedies was accounted famous.

15. About the same time, M. Fulvius, having taken Ambracia, the residence of Pyrrhus king of the Epirotes, conquered the Ætolians; L. Posthumious Albinus subdued the Lusitani, Appius Pulcher the Istri; Æmilius Paulus reduced Perseus king of Macedon, the last successor of Alexander the Great in Greece, and led him in triumph to Rome, in the year of the city 581, and before Christ 167. Rome now began to be accounted the mistress of the world.

16. Much about the same time, bloody wars were carried on in Judea by the Maccabees, against Antiochus and Demetrius, with various success.

us tragœdia scriptor clarus habeo.

Sub idem tempus, M. Fulvius, captus Ambracia Pyrrhus rexEpirota sedes, Ætolus domo; L. Posthumius Albinus Lusitanus, Appius Pulcher Ister subigo; Æmilius Paulus, Perseus Macedonia rex, ultimus in Græcia Alexander Magnus successor, debello, atque in triumphus Roma duco, annus urbs 581, *et ante Christus* 167. *Roma jam terra orbis domina habeo cœpi.*

Idem fere tempus, atrox bellum in Judæa, a Maccabæus contra Antiochus et Demetrius, varie gestus sum.

CHAP. X.

From the defeat of Perseus to the birth of Christ, or the beginning of the Christian æra; including 167 *years.*

THE Carthaginians, disregarding treaties, and making war upon Masinissa, gave occasion to the third Punic war. Wherefore, by the persuasion

CARTHAGINIENSIS, neglectus fœdus, bellumque Masinissa illatus, tertius bellum Punicus occasio do. Itaque

of M. Cato, a war is commenced against them. At last, being quite vanquished in the fourth year of it, by P. Scipio, they surrendered themselves at discretion. Carthage was levelled with the ground, after it had stood above 700 years, in the year from the building of Rome 602. The same Scipio made Fanætius the philosopher, Polybius the historian, Terence the comic poet, his intimate friends. These gentlemen in their old age were succeeded by Pacuvius and Accius, tragic poets, and Aristarchus the grammarian.

is, suasor M. Cato, bellum infero. Quartus demum annus a P. Scipio debellatus, deditio facio. Carthago solum æquo, cum jam sto annus amplius septingenti, annus a Roma conditus 602. *Idem Scipio Panætius philosophus, Polybius historicus, Terentius comicus poeta, familiaris habeo. Hic senex succedo Pacuvius et Accius tragicus poeta, et Aristarchus grammaticus.*

2. About these times the Corinthians had beaten the ambassadors of the Roman people, and engaged the Acheans to join them as confederates in the war. Whereupon L. Mummius the consul. having received Achaia upon surrender, destroyed Corinth, after it had stood 952 years, in the year of Rome 602. About the same time Q. Fabius in a great measure recovered Lusitania, which had been seized upon by Viriatus the robber. P. Scipio too, 14 years after the destruction of Carthage, razed Numanatia in Spain, with the same army which had before been often routed by the Numantians. Of such importance was a general and discipline.

Corinthus sub is tempus legatus populus Romanus pulso, et Achæus sui bellum socius adjungo. Itaque L. Mummius consul, Achaia in deditio acceptus, Corinthus, cum jam annus 952 *sto, deleo, annus Roma* 602. *Per idem tempus Q. Fabius Lusitania. a Viriatus latro occupatus, magnus ex pars recipio. P. Scipio quoque, decimus quartus annus post Carthago eversus, Numantia in Hispania everto, idem exercitus qui a Numantinus sæpius fugatus antea sum. Tantum valeo dux et disciplina.*

3. A bloody sedition, in the mean time, broke out at Rome. Tib. Sempronius Gracchus em-

Roma, interea, atrox seditio ortus sum. Tib. Sempronius Gracchus, A-

broiled the state, by preferring the Agrarian law, forbidding any person to possess above 500 acres of land. Whereupon he was killed in the capitol by Scipio Nasica. And not long after, his brother C. Gracchus attempting the same, was slain by L. Opimius the consul, and together with him Fluvius Flaccus, a gentleman of consular dignity. About the same time, Attalus king of Phrygia dying, made the Roman people his heir, in the year of the city 615.

4 One Eunus, a Syrian, having broken prison in Sicily, and drawn together a vast multitude of slaves from the country, gave the Roman commanders several great overthrows. At last, he was routed by P. Rupilius the consul, in the year of the city 617. Then flourished Lucius the satirist.

5. After this the Jugurthine war broke out. Jugurtha, king of Numidia, and grandson of Masinissa, had dispossessed his brothers, the sons of Micipsa, of their kingdom. The latter implored the protection of the Roman people. Accordingly war is waged with Jugurtha; who being at last driven from his dominions by C. Marius, fled to Bocchus, king of Mauritania; by him he was delivered up bound to L. Sylla Marius's questor, much about the same time that Cicero was born, in the year after the building of

grarius lex latus, ne quis amplius quingenti ager jugerrum possideo, respublica turbo. Itaque a Scipio Nasica in capitolium cædo. Nec multo post, C. Gracchus frater, idem conatus, a L Opimius consul obtrunco, et una cum is Fulvius Flaccus consularis. Per idem tempus Attalus rex Phrygia moriens, populus Romanus instituo hæres, annus urbs 615.

Eunus quidam, Syrus, effractus in Sicilia ergastulum, contractusque agrestis servitium ingens manus, clades imperator Romanus magnus et multus infero. Ad ultimum, a P. Rupilius consul profligatus sum, annus urbs 617. *Vigens satiricus poeta Lucillus.*

Jugurthinus bellum inde exortus sum. Jugurtha, Numidia rex, Masinissa nepos, frater Micipsa filius, regnum ejicio. Hic populus Romanus fides imploro. Itaque Jugurtha bellum infero; qui denique regnum pulsus a C. Marius, ad Bocchus Mauritania rex confugio; ab is L. Sylla, quæstor Marius, vinctus trado. Idem fere tempus qui natus sum Cicero, annus post urbs conditus 643. *Marius continuatus per complures*

the city 643. Marius, continuing several years in the consulship, cut off the Cimbri, Teutones, and other barbarous nations, who were breaking in upon Italy.

6. In the mean time, fresh disturbances broke out at Rome. Saturnius, a tribune of the people, a turbulent fellow, exasperated the senate against him, by forcibly passing the Agrarian law. Whereupon he was murdered in a concourse of the Patricians rushing upon him. Soon after Livius Drusus, attempting the same thing with a greater power, was assassinated at his own house.

7. After this the social war was lighted up in Italy. The Marsi, Picentes, Peligni, Samnites, Lucani, and other nations of Italy, finding they could not obtain the freedom of the city by gentle methods, endeavoured to compass it by force of arms. At last being conquered by Cn. Pompey, and other commanders, they sued for peace. Together with the peace, the freedom of the city was spontaneously conferred on them. About the same time, Aristobulus the high priest received the ensigns of royalty in Judea, almost 482 years after Zedekiah the last king of Judea.

8. Mithridates, king of Pontus, had dispossessed Ariobarzanes king of Cappadocia, and Nicomedes, king of Bithynia

annus consulatus, Cimbri, Teutones, aliusque barbarus natio, in Italia irrumpens, deleo.

Novus interim turba Roma exortus sum. Saturnius tribunus plebs, homo turbulentus, Agrarius lex per vis latus, senatus in sui concito. Itaque concursus in is Optimates factus, neco. Idem paulo post Livius Drusus magnus opis conatus, domus suus occisus sum.

Socialis deinde bellum ardeo cœpi Italia. Marsi, Picentes, Peligni, Samnites, Lucani, aliusque populus Italia cum civitas impetro non possum, arma extorqueo tento. Denique a Cn. Pompeius aliusque imperator domitus, pax peto. Civitas ultro cum pax datus. In Judœa per idem tempus Aristobulus pontifex maximus regius insigne accipio, annus post Zedechias ultimus Judœa rex prope 482.

Mithridates rex Pontus Ariobarzanes Cappadocia, et Nicomedes Bithynia, rex, amicus populus Ro-

allies of the Roman people, of their respective kingdoms. War was declared against him under the conduct of L. Sylla. Upon this a civil war was kindled up in Italy: C. Marius envying Sylla, his old lieutenant, so large a field of glory, brought it about by means of Sulpitius, a tribune of the people, that the management of the war was committed to himself. Upon this head, Marius being forced from the city by Sylla, withdrew into Africa. Sylla, marching into Asia, fought with great success against Mithridates. He recovered Bithynia, Cappadocia, and Asia, in the year of the city 663.

manus regnum suus exturbo. Is bellum indictus, dux L. Sylla. Ex is civilis bellum in Italia excitatus sum: C. Marius, tantus gloria seges Sylla, legatus olim suus invidens ago per Sulpitius, tribunus plebs, ut is bellum sui mando. Is ob res Marius urbs pulsus a Sylla, secedo in Africa. Sylla in Asia profectus, adversus Mithridates bene pugno. Bithynia, Cappadocia, Asia, recipio, annus urbs 663.

9. Marius in the mean time, by the assistance of L. Cinna the consul, breaks into Rome with an army. Sylla brings over his victorious forces out of Asia, and having vanquished Marius's party, fills the city and Italy with slaughter and bloodshed, the proscription of citizens being then first set on foot. Sylla, about four years after, consumed of the lousy disease, died in the year of the city 671.

Interea Marius, L. Cinna consul adjuvans, Roma cum copiæ irrumpo. Sylla victor exercitus, ex Aeia transporto, et profligatus Marianus pars, urbs et Italia strages compleo, proscriptio civis tum primum inductus. Sylla, quatuor exinde circiter annus pedicularis morbus confectus, intereo, annus 671.

10. Sertorius, a general of the Marian faction, had seized upon Spain, and concluded an alliance with Mithridates. Q. Metellus and Cn. Pompey waged war against him with various success. At last Sertorius being murdered by his own

Sertorius, Marianus pars dux, Hispania occupo, societasque cum Mithridates coeo. Contra hic Q. Metellus et Cn. Pompeius varius eventus pugno. Sertorius demum a suus oc-

men, Spain was recovered, in the year of the city 675.

11. At the same time slaves and pirates raised disturbances. One Spartacus, with above 70 gladiators, having made his escape from a fencing school at Capua, and drawn together an numerous body of forces, routed the Roman armies several times. At last he was cut off by M. Crassus. And Cn. Pompey, afterwards called Pompey the Great, subdued the pirates, who, at the instigation of Mithridates, infested the seas, in the year of the city 682.

12. Mithridates having been reinforced with fresh succours, renewed the war in Asia. Lucullus, after he had brought him very low by several battles, hemmed him in within Pontus. At the same time Metellus, having reduced the island of Crete under the dominion of the Roman people, was named Creticus. After this Cn. Pompey stripped Mithridates of his kingdom; and admitted Tigranes, his confederate in the war, to a surrender; taking from him Syria and Phœnicia. He reduced Pontus into the form of a province, in the year of the city 684.

13. Aristobulus and Hyrcanus, the sons of Alexander king of the Jews, disputing about the succession to the crown, Pompey came into Judea in the character of an umpire, to decide

cisus, Hispania recipio, annus urbs 675.

Servus ac pirata idem tempestas turba commoveo Spartacus cum amplius 70 *gladiator, Capua ludus elapsus, magnus copiæ contractus, Romanus exercitus non semel fundo. Ad extremum a M. Crassus opprimo. Pirata quoque, qui a Mithridates solicitatus mare infesto, Cn. Pompeius postea Pompeius Magnus dictus perdomo annus urbs* 682.

Mithridates novus copiæ instructus, bellum in Asia renovo. Is Lucullus multus prælium fractus in Pontus compello. Idem tempus Metellus, Creta insula in ditio populus Romanus redactus, Creticus appellatus sum. Cn. inde Pompeius Mithridates regnum spolio: Tigranes, bellum socius, in deditio accipio: isque Syria ac Phœnice adimo. Pontus in Provincia forma redigo, annus urbs 684.

Pompeius, Aristobulus et Hyrcanus, Alexander rex Judæus filius, de regnum dissidens, in Judæa ad is controversia tollendus arbiter venio; sed ab

their difference; but being provoked by Aristobulus, he takes Jerusalem by storm, demolishes the walls, entered the holy recesses of the temple, but meddled with nothing sacred. He made Judea tributary to the Roman people, and carried Aristobulus with him to Rome, in the year before Christ 63.

14. Whilst the Roman empire was extending itself over all Asia, Rome itself was well nigh ruined by an intestine war. L. Catiline having raised an army in Etruria, had entered into a conspiracy with Lentulus the prætor, Cethegus, and other senators, to massacre the consuls and the senate, and set fire to the city. This conspiracy was discovered and crushed by M. Tullius Cicero the consul, and Catiline cut off with his army by C. Antonius, in the year of the city 686. Cicero three years after was forced into banishment by P. Clodius, for having put to death the conspirators. But within 16 months he was recalled with great glory. The same man was highly illustrious for his eloquence; whilst M. Varro the philologist, Sallust the historian, Lucretius and Catullus poets, were much esteemed at Rome. Cæsar Augustus was likewise born this year.

15. About the same time C. Julius Cæsar attached Cn. Pom-

Aristobulus irritatus, Hierosolyma vis capio, murus diruo, in templum adytum ingressus, sacer nihil attingo. Judæa stipendiarius populus Romanus facio, Aristobulus sui cum Roma duco, annus ante Christus 63.

Dum imperium Romanus totus Asia propago, Roma ipse intestinus bellum pene deletus sum. L. Catilina, exercitus in Etruria comparatus, cum Lentulus prætor, Cethegus, aliusque senator, de cædes consul ac senatus, deque inflammandus urbs, conjuro. Is conjuratio a M. Tullius Cicero consul palefactus et oppressus sum, Catilina a C. Antonius cum exercitus cæsus, annus urbs 686. *Cicero triennium post a P. Clodius, ob supplicium conjuratus, ejicio in exilium. Sed mensis* 16 *summus cum gloria reduco. Idem eloquentia gloria floreo; cum M. Varro philologus, Sallustius historicus, Lucretius et Catullus poeta, Roma in honor sum. Hic quoque annus Cæsar Augustus natus sum.*

Sub idem tempus C. Julius Cæsar, Cn. Pom-

pey to his interest by marriage, having taken to wife his daughter Julia. He won over M. Crassus to himself and to Pompey. A combination of three leading men being thus formed, the province of Gaul is decreed to Cæsar, Spain to Pompey, and the management of the Parthian war committed to Crassus.

16. Crassus marching into Asia, plundered the temple of Jerusalem of its sacred treasure, fought the Parthians to great disadvantage, and lost his army together with his son. At last he himself being trepanned under pretence of an interview, is slain by the enemy.

17. But Cæsar constrained the Helvetii to return to their country; overthrew Ariovistus king of the Germans, the disturber of Gaul; subdued the Aquitani, Gauls, and Belgæ; and conquered Germany and Britain. Meanwhile his wife Julia dying, Cæsar's power appeared to Pompey and the senate exorbitant, and dangerous to the state; wherefore he is ordered to disband his army. From those beginnings broke out the civil war, about 699 years after the building of the city.

18. Cæsar marches with an hostile army to Rome, enters the city that had been abandoned by the nobility, causes himself to be declared dictator, and

peius Julia filia in matrimonium acceptus, affinitas sui divincio. M. Crassus et Pompeius, et sui concilio. Tres princeps conspiratio sic factus, Cæsar Gallia, Pompeius Hispania, decerno, et Crassus bellum Parthicus mando.

Crassus in Asia profectus templum Hierosolymianus sacer pecunia spolio, adversus Parthus male pugno, exercitus cum filius amitto. Demum ipse per species colloquium ab hostis circumventus occido.

Cæsor autem Helvetius in patria suus compello; Ariovistus Germanus rex, vexator Gallia, profligo; Aquitanus, Gallus, et Belga subigo; Germania quoque et Britannia domo. Uxor Julia interim mortuus, Cæsar potentia nimius et periculosus respublica, Pompeius et senatus visus sum; itaque exercitus demitto jubeo. Ex hic initium coortus sum bellum civilis, annus post urbs conditus circuer 699.

Cæsar infestus Roma agmen conendo, in urbs nobilitas vacuus ingressus, sum dictator dicendus curo, ærarium compilo. Inde

pillages the treasury. After this having forced Pompey out of Italy, he drove his lieutenants Afranius and Petreius out of Spain, and returns again to Rome. He passed over immediately into Greece, still prosecuting the war against Pompey. The seat of the war being carried to Pharsalia, Pompey resolves to reduce Cæsar rather by famine, intercepting his provisions, than by fitting him.—But constrained by the pressing instances of the nobility, he engaged the enemy, and being defeated, makes his escape with the loss of his army. Pompey going into Egypt is slain by the order of king Ptolemy, to whom he fled for protection, in the 58th year of his age.

Pompeius Italia pulsus, Afranius et Petreius is legatus expello Hispania, ac Roma denuo revertor. Mox Pompeius bellum persequens, transmitto in Græcia. Bellum ad Pharsalia delatus, Pompeius, interclusus commeatus Cæsar, fames potius quam ferrum, vinco statuo. Sed nobilitas vox coactus, cum hostis confligo, amissusque exercitus victus aufugio. Pompeius in Ægyptus profectus, Ptolemæus rex, ad qui confugio, jussu neco, annus ætas quinquagesimus octavus.

19. Cæsar arrived at Alexandria in pursuit of Pompey; and as he was endeavouring to settle the differences betwixt Ptolemy and his sister Cleopatra, had like to have been cut off by that king; but he set fire to his fleet to prevent its falling into the hands of his enemies. By which flames that famous library of Alexandria, collected by Ptolemy Philadelphus, was burnt down. But at length after the conquest and death of Ptolemy, he delivers up the kingdom to Cleopatra.

Cæsar Pompeius secutus Alexandria appello; et cum Ptolemæus atque Cleopatra is soror controversia compono conor, ab idem rex pene oppressus sum; sed classis suus, ne venio in hostis potestas, incendo. Qui incendium, nobilissimus ille Alexandria bibliotheca, a Ptolemæus Philadelphus instructus, conflagro. At victus tandem extinctusque Ptolemæus, regnum Cleopatra trado.

20. After this he vanquished Pharnaces the son of Mithridates, who had broke in upon the territories of the Roman

Pharnaces inde Mithridates filius, qui in populus Romanus finis irrumpo, primus impetus debello;

people at one push; so that he seemed to have conquered the enemy almost before he saw them. Then he subdued Juba, king of Mauritania, who, at the persuasion of Scipio and Cato, was renewing the civil war in Africa. Cato, that he might not fall into the hands of Cæsar dispatches himself at Utica, whence he has been called Uticensis.

prope ut ante vinco hostis, quam video, videor, Juba deinde Mauritania rex, Scipio et Cato auctor, civilis bellum in Africa instaurans, devinco. Cato, ne in potestes Cæsar venio Utica mors sui ipse conscisco, ex qui Uticensis sum appellatus.

21. In the mean time war was levied in Spain, by Cneius and Sextus, the sons of Pompey the Great. Cæsar goes thither with his army, comes to a general action, overthrows the Pompeys at Munda, a city of Spain. Cneius was slain in a tower to which he had fled.

Interea in Hispania, a Cnieus et Sextus, Pompieus Magnus filius, bellum apparo. Eo Cæsar cum exertus contendo, acies decerno; Pompeius ad Munda, Hispania urbs, vinco. Cnieus in turris, quo confugio, occido.

22. The republican government being thus subverted, Cæsar was declared perpetual dictator by the senate. He reformed the year by intercalary days according to the judgment of astronomers and called the month Quintilis, from his own name, July. After this, being elated with pride, he began to slight the senate, and aspire to sovereign power. Wherefore, in the fifth year of his dictatorship, he was slain in the senate-house by Brutus, Cassius, and the other conspirators, being dispatched by three and twenty wounds, in the year of the city 706, and before Christ 42.

Respublica sic oppressus, Cæsar dictator perpetuus a senatus decretus sum. Annus de mathematicus sententia, intercalatus dies, corrigo et Quintilis mensis suus nomen Julius appello. Proinde insolentia elatus senatus contemno, ac regnum affecto, cæpi. Ergo quintus dictatura annus, a Brutus, Cassius, cæterque conjuratus in curia 23 vulnus confectus, intereo, annus urbs 706, et anteckristus 42.

23. M. Anthony the consul stirring up the people at Cæsar's

M. Antonius consul, in funus Cæsar plebs in pa-

funeral against the deliverers of their country, threw all into confusion; he over awed the senate by an armed force, and seized upon Cisalpine Gaul. Whereupon war is resolved on against him by the senate, at the persuasion of Cicero. The consuls Hirtius and Pansa, as likewise Octavius, Julius Cæsar's heir, and his sister's grandson, advanced to Mutina, at the head of three armies, and coming to an engagement with Anthony, obtained the victory.

24. That victory cost the Roman people dear. The consuls being slain, the three armies subjected themselves to the command of Octavius alone; who marching his forces to Rome procured himself the consulate from the senate by main force, being a youth about 20 years of age. Anthony mean time had fled into Transalpine Gaul, to M. Lepidus, master of the horse, and clapped up a treaty with him. Octavius, created commander in chief by the senate in the war against Anthony, and Lepidus betrays his trust, and enters into an association with both.

25. Accordingly the triumvirate being formed 130 senators were proscribed by the triumviri; in the number of whom was Cicero. By these three men too the globe of the earth was divided, as if it had been their patrimonial es-

tria liberator concitatus, turbo omnis: arma senatus opprimo, Gallia Cisalpinus invado. Itaque bellum contra is a senatus, Cicero auctor, decerno. Hirtius et Pansa consul, itemque Octavius, Julius Cæsar soror nepos, ac hæres, cum tres exercitus ad Mutina proficiscor et signum cum Antonius collatus, victoria refero.

Magnum is victoria populus Romanus sto. Consul occisus, exercitus tres unus Octavius pareo; qui, copiæ Roma adductus, consulâtus a senatus, adolescens annus 20 natus, extorqueo. Antonius interim in Gallia Transalpinus, ad M. Lepidus magister eques, confugio, et cum is societas ineo. Octavius, bellum contra Antonius et Lepidus a senatus præpositus fides prodo, amicitiaque cum uterque jungo.

Triumviratus igitur institutus, 130 senator a triumviri proscriptus; ex qui numerus Cicero sum. Orbis terra quasi patrimonium a triumviri quoque divisus. Oriens et Græcia Antonius, Africa

tate. The East and Greece fell to Anthony, Africa to Lepidus, Italy and the West to Octavius, Sicily was allotted to Sextus Pompey, who was master of a very powerful fleet; then flourished Diodorus Siculus the historian.

26. Octavius having been adopted into the family of Cæsar, was called Cæsar Octavianus. Octavianus and Anthony now publicly declaring themselves the avengers of Cæsar the dictator, began to levy war against M. Brutus and C. Cassius. A battle was fought at Philippi, a city of Thessaly. Brutus and Cassius being defeated laid violent hands on themselves. Sextus Pompey, warring against Octavianus, was vanquished in a sea-fight by his admiral M. Agrippa, and fled into Asia, where he died soon after in the reign of Herod, king of Judea.

27. Anthony having divorced Octavia, the sister of Cæsar Octavianus, had married Cleopatra, queen of Egypt; and, in order to make her mistress of the world, made war upon Octavianus: a naval engagement ensuing at Actium, Octavianus gained the victory, and pursuing the enemy, laid siege to Alexandria. Anthony thinking his affairs desperate, dispatches himself; Cleopatra imitating him, died by the poison of an asp in the year of the city 719.

Lepidus, Italia et Occidens Octavius, obvenio. Sextus Pompeius, qui classis plurimum valeo, Sicilia assignatus sum; Diodorus Siculus historicus tum vigens.

Octavius in familia Cæsar adoptatus, Cæsar Octavianus dictus sum. Octavianus et Antonius sui Cæsar dictator ultor nunc profitens, M. Brutus et C. Cassius bellum persequor cœpi. Ad Philippi, Thessalia urbs pugnatur. Brutus et Cassius victus, manus sui affero. Sextus Pompeius cum Octavianus contendens, a M. Agrippa is dux, navalis prælium superatus, in Asia profugio, ubi paulo post mors obeo, Herodes rex Judæa.

Antonius, Octavia Cæsar Octavianus soror repudiatus, Cleopatra Ægyptus regina in matrimonium duco; qui ut orbis terra domina constituo, Octavianus: bellum infero: commissus apud Actium prælium navalis, Octavianus victoria pario, et, hostis insecutus, Alexandria obsideo. Antonius, res desperatus, sui manus affero; is imitatus Cleopatra, aspis venenum intereo, annus urbs 719.

28. Cæsar Octavianus, in the 12th year after the triumvirate was set on foot, being now lord of the world, had the title of Augustus bestowed on him by the senate. He gave his name to the month of August, which before was called Sextilis. Having procured peace by sea and land, he shut the temple of Janus for the third time. He had an affectionate regard for the poets Virgil and Horace; showed great esteem for the historians T. Livy and Strabo. He banished Ovid into Pontus. Their cotemporaries were Quintus Curtius the historian, Tibullus and Propertius poets. Cæsar Augustus reigned 12 years in conjunction with the triumviri, and 44 alone. He died at Nola, in the 76th year of his age, and of the city 762; leaving Rome, as he himself boasted, reared of marble instead of bricks.

Cæsar Octavianus, annus post triumviratus institus 12, *res potitus, Augustus a senatus appellatus sum. Augustus mensis qui antea Sextilis dico, nomen do. Pax terra mareque partus, Janus tertio clauda. Virgilius et Horatius poeta complexus sum; T. Livius et Strabo historicus, in honor habeo. Ovidius in Pontus relego. Hic æqualis Q. Curtius historicus Tibullus ac Propertius poeta, sum. Cæsar Augustus annus regno cum triumviri* 12, *solus*, 44, *Mors obeo Nola, annus ætas* 76, *et urbs* 762; *Roma, ut ipse glorior e lateritius marmoreus relinquens.*

29. In the year of the world 4004, in the year of Rome 748, in the 194 Olympiad, and 14 years before the death of Augustus, JESUS CHRIST, the eternal Son of God, was born of the Virgin Mary, sent from heaven to expiate the divine wrath; who, at 33 years of age, being crucified by the Jews, made an atonement for the sins of men with his own blood in the 19th year of the reign of Tiberius Cæsar.

Annus mundus 4004, *annus Roma*, 748, *Olympias* 194, *et annus ante excessus Augustus* 14, *IESUS CHRISTUS, æturnus Deus Filius, e Maria Virgo editus sum, e cælum missus piaculum cælestis ira; qui*, 33 *annus natus, a Judæus in crux actus, suus sanguis scelus humanus luo annus imperium Tiberius Cæsar* 19.

HISTORICAL

AND

CHRONOLOGICAL

QUESTIONS,

ADAPTED TO THE ANCIENT HISTORY.

1. HOW many years from the creation to the deluge? In how many days did God create the world? Who was the first man and first woman? Who were their sons? What their occupations? Which of them slew his brother? What was the character, and what the inventions of their posterity? When was the world created? 1. Who was Enoch? When did he flourish? What became of him? Who was his son? How long did his son live? What was the usual length of human life at that time? Whence sprung the race of the giants? 3. Why did God destroy the old world by a deluge? When happened the deluge? How high did the waters rise? Who were saved from the deluge, and by what means? By whom was the earth peopled after the flood?

II. How many years from the deluge to the calling of Abraham? By whom was the tower of Babel founded? On what design, and when? Why was the building laid aside? Who was the first king of Babylon? 2. What was the state of Egypt in the time of Nimrod? What the names of the dynasties? For what were the Egyptians at this time renowned? Who, according to the Egyptians, first taught music, letters, religion, &c.? Who invented physic and anatomy? Who reigned first in Egypt? Who was the most famous among their princes? What were his achievements? Who were the kings that assumed the name of Pharaoh? 3. Whose son was Ninus? Why is he said to be the author of idolatry? What were his chief actions? Where and how long is he said to have reigned? Who founded Nineveh

4. Whose queen was Semiramis? What were her exploits, and the length of her reign? 5. Whose son was Ninyas? What was his character? What the character of his successors? Who was the last of them, and what was his end? How long is the Assyrian monarchy said to have lasted; and is this account of it thought to be genuine? 6. Who was Abraham? When was he called by God? What the history of his life? 7. When flourished the Titans? Who was the eldest of them? Why was Jupiter esteemed a god? Why was Neptune called god of the sea, and Pluto the god of hell.

III. How many years from the vocation of Abraham to the departure of the Israelites from Egypt? Whose son was Isaac? When was he born? Who was his wife? Who were his sons? Who were Jacob's wives? Who his sons? What other name did Jacob obtain? What is the story of Joseph? When, and upon what invitation did Jacob and his family go down to Egypt? 2. Who was Inachus? When did he flourish? Who was his son? And what is recorded of him? Who were the children of Jupiter? When did they flourish, and for what were they famous? Who was Ogyges? For what was his reign remarkable? By whom was Sparta built, and when? Who was Argus? What city did he found? Why said to have had 100 eyes? When lived Job, and for what famed? 3. Who were Prometheus and Atlas? Why is prometheus said to have made a man of clay? Why represented as chained to Caucasus? Why said to have stolen fire from heaven? Why is Atlas said to sustain heaven on his shoulders? 4. Who was Moses, and when was he born? How educated? By whose assistance, by what means, and when did he bring the Israelites out of Egypt? 5. What miracles attended the Israelites in their travels from Egypt, and through the deserts? Who was their high-priest? Where was the law given? What was the number of their army in the 40th year of their Journeying? How many of those who had come out of Egypt were then alive? What became of Moses! Who was his successor? 6. By whom was Athens founded, and when? Who was Mercury? When did he flourish? What was he the author of? Where reigned Deucalion? Who was his wife? For what were they renowned? 7. What is the story of phæ-

ton? Who was Oenotrus? What were his achievements? who were the Aborigines? Whence the name Italy.

IV. How many years from the Exod to the excision of Troy? What the history of Joshua and his wars? When came he and the Israelites to the possession of Canaan? 2. What the story of Danaus? What is recorded of Orcus and Proserpina? What the story of Jupiter and Europa, and who were her sons? What the Areopagites? Who was Busiris? 3. Who was Othniel, and when did he cut off the king of Mesopotamia? What the story of Ehud? For what was Deborah renowned? When was Sisera slain, and by whom? 4. What account give historians of Trismegistus, of Janus, of Cadmus, of Rhadamanthus, of Minos and of Acrisius? 5. What is said of Amphion, of Bacchus, of Perseus, of Pelops, of Niobe, and of Dardanus? Whence the name of Troas? 6 What the history of Saturn? What is said of the Pelasgi? What the story of Siculus? Who were Saturn's successors? For what is the wife of Faunus renowned? 7. Who was Gideon? How and when did he defeat the Midianites? Who was Abimelech, and what is said of him? 8. Who were the Argonauts, and what their history? What is meant by the Golden fleece? Whence, whither, and when was it carried off? 9. Who was Theseus, and what his adventures with respect to the Minotaur and Centaurs? 10. Who were the Amazons, and by whom conquered? What is further said of Hercules and Theseus? 11. Who were the sons of Pelops, and what their history? What the story of Oedipus? Who were his sons, and what is said of them? 12. When flourished Jephtha, and what his story? 13. What occasioned the Trojan war? When was Troy destroyed?

V. How many years from the destruction of Troy to the dedication of the temple at Jerusalem? What the adventures of Æneas? 2. What the history of Samson How, and when did he die? 3. Who founded, and who were the kings of Alba Longa? 4. When, and by whom was Saul anointed king of Israel? How long was Israel under judges? 5. What the story of the Heraclidæ? When happened their return? 6. When came Saul to

the throne? How, and how long did he reign? By what means, and when did David obtain the kingdom? 7. What the character of king David? How long did he reign? 8. Who was Codrus? What his story? Who was the first Archon at Athens? 9. How long reigned Solomon? When did he dedicate the temple? What was his character? When flourished Homer?

VI. How many years from the dedication of the temple to the building of Rome? What occasioned the dismembering of the Hebrew monarchy? How long did Rehoboam reign? Who was his successor? 2. How long reigned Abijah? How long Asa? What his character? In his reign who were kings of Latium and Israel? What Jehoshaphat's character? How long his reign? Who was then king of Samaria? Who the eminent prophet? What the story of Tiberinus? 4. What Jehoram's character? How long his reign? How long reigned Ahaziah? Who was then king of Latium? 5. How long reigned Joash? What the fate of Romulus Sylvius? What the story of Aventinus? 6. How long reigned Amaziah? Who was Lycurgus? What his history? How long reigned Uzziah? 7. What is related of Elisa or Dido? When was Carthage founded? What is said of Bocchorus? 8. What were the Olympic games? By whom instituted? By whom and when revived? When died Hesiod? 9. What Jotham's character? how long his reign? Who was Theopompus? What his history? 10. What are we told of Amulius? What the history of Romulus and Remus? When was Rome built?

VII. How long from the building of Rome to the liberation of the Jews by Cyrus? What the achievements of king Romulus? How long reigned he? 2. By whom, and when was the Assyrian empire founded? How long did it subsist? Who were the Assyrian monarchs, and what remarkable in their reigns? When and by whom was this empire overturned? 3. By whom, and when was the Babylonian empire founded? How long did it subsist? Who were the Babylonian monarchs, and what remarkable in their reigns? When and by whom was this empire overturned? 4. By whom, and when was the empire of the Medes founded? Who were their kings, and what memorable in their reigns? When, and by whom was

this empire overturned? When came So or Sabacus to the throne of Egypt? Who were his successors for the two following centuries? 6. When, and by whom were the ten tribes carried captive? What is recorded of Tobias? Who was then king of Judah? What eminent prophet then flourished? 7. What is the history of Numa Pompilius? How long did he reign? 8. Who was Mannasseh, and when did he reign? What is recorded of Judith; What do historians say of Gyges? 7. What the history of Tullus Hostilius? How long did he reign? What the fate of Ammon? 10. What the history of Ancus Martius? How long his reign? What the fate of Josiah? What prophet then flourished? 11. what the history of Tarquinius Priscus? How long reigned he? 12. when flourished Draco? what the nature of his laws? what was said of them? 13. who reigned in Judea after Josiah? when and by whom was Jerusalem burnt? what became of the people? 14. when flourished the wise men of Greece? what is recorded of Solon? 15. what were the principal transactions in the reign of Servius Tullius? how long his reign? 16. what tyrants flouished about this time? what wise men? what poets? 17. what the history of Cyrus? when were the Jews liberated? what is said of Daniel? 18. How, and when died Cyrus? where was he buried? How long subsisted the Persian empire? who were the Persian monarchs?

VIII. How many years from the liberation of the Jews to the overthrow of the Persian empire? what the history of Tarquinius Superbus? when and for what was he expelled? what was the number of the Roman kings, and how loug subsisted the regal authority? 2. what kind of government succeeded at Rome? who were the first consuls? How did Brutus show his zeal for liberty? 3. what the heroic conduct of Harmodius? 4. what the story of Cambyses? what the fate of Smerdis? 5. How was Darius Hystaspis chosen king of the Persians? 6. what favour showed Darius Hystaspis to the Jews? By what means did he recover Babylon? 7. what efforts did Tarquinius Superbus use in order to be restored? what the story of Cocles, of Clelia, and of Mutius? what course did Porsena at last take? 8. what the history of the battle

at the lake Regillus? When was it fought? Who then reigned at Syracuse? 9. What the history of the battle of Marathon? When was it fought? 10. What occasioned the secession of the commons at Rome? How were they appeased? 11. What the story of Coriolanus? What the victory of Cassius? Why, how, and when was he put to death? 12. What is most memorable in the life of Aristides? 13. What the story of the Fabii? 14. What the history of Xerxes's expedition against Greece? In what year did it happen? 15 who gained the victory in the battle of Platea? Who was Herodotus, and when did he flourish? 16. What the story of Q. Cincinnatus? By whom were the Greek cities of Asia restored to liberty? What philosophers at this time made a figure? 17. When were the Decemviri created? what remarkable thing did they do? Why were they deposed? What kind of government ensued? 18. What favour did Artaxerxes show to the Jews, and when? What men of genius were at this time illustrious? 19. When were the military tribunes with consular authority created at Rome? When the censors? What the achievements of Cornelius Cossus? 20. When broke out the Pelopponesian war? How long did it last? Who wrote the history of it? 21. Who were the Athenian generals in the war against the Syracusians? When did this war happen? How did it turn out? 22. What men of learning and genius flourished at this time? What is recorded of Diagoras? 23. What the history of the Galli Senones? What provoked them to burn Rome? When did this happen? 24. What happened to Athens about this time? By whom, and when were the tyrants turned out? 25. What is recorded of Ctesias of Cnidus? What other famous men were his cotemporaries? 26. What famous generals flourished at this time? What the character of Epaminondas? 27. What the achievements of Camillus? who was the first plebeian consul? 28. What the achievements of Epaminondas, and where was he slain? To what is the decay of the martial spirit among the Lacedemonians ascribed? 29. What conquests did the Carthagenians about this time make? What the fate of Dyonisius, father and son? How was

Issocrates now employed? 30. What the exploit of T. Manlius? what the story of Valerius? 31. Where, and when was Alexander the Great born? what the conquests of his father Philip at this time? who obstructed the progress of his arms? By whom was he slain? who was then king of the Persians? 32. what wars were the Romans at this time engaged in? what the story of Manlius Torquatus? what are we told of Decius Mus? what use did the Romans make of the ships of the Antiates? what men of letters flourished then? 33. Who was preceptor to Alexander the Great? what his conquests till the battle of Issus? 34. what his other wars and adventures till he overturned the Persian empire? when did this happen?

IX. How many years from the overthrow of the Persian empire to the defeat of Perseus? what conquests did Alexander make after erecting the Macedonian empire? where, and when did he die? what historians of note flourished in his reign? 2. how was Alexander's great empire divided? what men of letters now made a figure? 3. when, and by whom was the Appian way paved at Rome? what the history of the Tarentine war? when was it ended? 4. how long did the successors of Alexander reign in Egypt? who were these princes, and how long did each of them reign? 5. what the history of Agathocles? what the character of Hiero? 6. when broke out, and what occasioned the first Punic war? what the history of it, and how long did it last? what the notable exploit of Mercellus? what perpetuates the memory of C. Flaminius? 7. what men of learning flourished in the reign of Ptolemy Philadelpus? what pains did Ptolemy take to furnish his library at Alexandria who was the first king of the Parthians? 8. How long from the first to the second Punic war? who gave rise to the second Punic war? what the history of it in Italy? 9. what success had the Romans in Sicily? 10. what feats performed Cor. Scipio in Spain and Africa? what become of Asdrubal? 11. when was Annibal recalled from Italy? what measures did he then take? when was the war ended? 12. what honour was conferred on Cor. Scipio? what is recorded with respect to the poet Ennius? who were his

cotemporaries? 13. What the history of the Macedonian war? How long did it last? When was it ended? 14 What the history of the war with Antiochus? How, and when died Hannibal? What poet now flourished? 15. What other wars were the Romans engaged in at this time? Who was Perseus? When was he conquered? 16. What wars in Judea at this time?

X. How many years from the defeat of Perseus to the birth of Christ? What occasioned the third Punic war? How long did it last? When was Carthage destroyed? Who were the men of letters P. Scipio so much esteemed ed? Who succeeded them? 2. For what offence, by whom, and when was Corinth destroyed? What the case of Lusitania? By whom, and when was Numantia raised? 3 What the history of the Agrarian law? When died Attalus? What his testament? 4. What the insurrection of Eunus? By whom, and when quelled? What satirist then flourished? 5. What the history of Jugurthine war? How, and when was it ended? In what other wars did Marius command? 6. What attempts were now made to revive the Agrarian law? 7. What the history of the social war? When did Aristobulus receive the ensigns of royalty in Judea? 8. What gave occasion to the Mithridatic war? Whence arose the civil war at this time? By whom, and when was the Mithridatic war ended? 9. What the further progress of the civil war? When died Sylla? 10. What the history of the war with Sertorius? How and when was it ended? 11. What the story of Spartacus? Did not pirates likewise raise disturbances at the same time? 12. The Mithridatic war being renewed, who was the Roman general and what his success? On what occasion was Metellus named Creticus? By whom, in what manner, and when was the Mithridatic war ended? 13. What the history of Pompey's going to Judea? When did he return? 14. What the history of Cataline's conspiracy? By whom, and when was it crushed? What became of Cicero? For what was he illustrious? What men of learning now flourished? What person of distinction was born this year? 15. How was the first triumvirate formed? What provinces were assigned to the triumvirs? 16. What the history of Crassus's expedition into Asia?

17. What the conquests of Julius Cæsar in Gaul? How, and when broke out the civil wars? 18. What the history of Cæsar's civil wars till the death of Pompey? 19. What Cæsar's adventures in Egypt? 20. What the progress of Cæsar's arms in Asia and Africa? 21. What his victory in Spain? 22. What accounts have we of Cæsar after the civil wars? By whom, and when was he slain? 23. What the history of the disturbances raised by M. Anthony? 24. By what means was Octavius made consul? What became of M. Anthony after the battle of Mutina? How did Octavius execute the orders of the senate against him and M. Lepidus? 25. What the conduct of the new triumvirs? How did they divide the Roman empire? What historian now flourished? 26. Why was Octavius's name changed to Octavianus? What the history of the battle of Phillippi? What the story of Sextus Pompey? Who at this time was king of Judea? 27. Who gained the victory in the battle of Actium? How and when, died M. Anthony and Cleopatra? 28. When, and by whom was the title of Augustus conferred on Octavianus? What the history of Augustus's reign? What poets and historians then flourished and what is recorded of them? How long did Augustus reign? Where and when died he? What was his boast? 29. When was Jesus Christ born? What his mission? By whom, and when was he crucified?

INDEX.

AARON iii 4, 5
Abel i 1
Abijah vi 1
Abimelech iv 7
Aborigines iii 7
Abraham ii 6
Absalom v 7
Accius x 1
Achaia x 2
Acrisius iv 4
Acron vii 1
Actium x 27
Adam i 1
Adrastus iv 11
Ædiles viii 27
Ægeus iv 9
Æmilius Paulus, ix 15
Æneas v 1
———Sylvius v 3, 4
Æsculapius ii 2
Æsop vii 16
Ætolians ix 15
Agathocles ix 5
Agesilaus viii 28
Agrarian law x 3, 6
Agrippa (King) vi 4
Agrippa (Admiral) x 26
Ahab vi 3
Ahasuerus vii 18
Ahaz vi 9 vii 6
Ahaziah vi 4
Alba Sylvius v 3, 9
Alba built v 3
——destroyed vii 9
Albula vi 3
Alcæus vii 16
Alcibiades viii 21
Alcmeon iv 11
Alexander the Great viii 31, 33, 34
Alexandria viii 34
Amasis vii 5
Amaziah vi 6
Amazons iv 10
Ammon vii 9
Amphiaraus iv 11
Amphyctiones iv 4
Amphion iv 5
Amulius v 3 vi 10
Anacreon vii 16
Anaxagoras viii 16
Ancus Martius vii 10
Androgeos iv 9
Annibal ix 8, 11, 14
Anthony x 14, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27
Antigonus ix 2
Antiochus Magnusi x 14
Antisthenes viii 25
Apollo iii 2 iv 4
Appius Claudius viii 17 ix 3, 6
Apries vii 5
Arabia iii 5
Aratus ix 7
Arbaces ii v
Arbela viii 34
Arcesilas ix 7
Archimedes ix 9
Archons v 8
Archytas viii 25
Areopagites iv 2

Argives iii 2
Agonauts iv 8
Argos iii 2
Argus *ib.*
Ariadne iv 9
Ariobarzanes x 8
Ariovistus x 17
Aristarchus x 1
Aristides viii 12, 15
Aristippus viii 25
Aristobulus x 7, 13
Aristophanes viii 22
Aristotle viii 22
Ark (Noah's) i 3
Arsaces ix 7
Artaxerxes Longimanus vii 18 viii 13
Artaxerxes Mnemnon vii 18 viii 25
Asa vi 2
Ascanius v 3
Asdrubal ix 8
Ashur ii 3 vii 2
Assyrians ii 3 vii 2 3
Astyages vii 4, 17
Athens iii 6 viii 24
Athos viii 14
Athys vi 11
Atlas iii 3
Atreus iv 11
Attalus x 3
Attilius Regulus ix 6
Augustus x 14, 28, 29
Aventinus v 3 vi 5
Azariah vi 6

B

Babel ii 1
Babylon ii 1, 3, 4 vii 2, 3, 4, 17 viii 6, 34
Bacchus iv 5
Bactria ii 3
Barak iv 3
Belesis vii 3
Belus ii 3 vii 2
Bocchorus vi 7
Bocchus x v
Brennus viii 23
Brutus viii 2 x 22, 26
Busiris iv 2
Byrsa vi 7

C

Cadmus iv 4, 5
Cain i 1
Caleb iii 5
Cambyses vii 18 viii 4
Camillus viii 27
Candaules vii 8
Cannæ ix 8
Capetus v 3
Caprea, vii 1
Capys v 3 vi 2
Carthage built vi 7
——— destroyed x 1
Cassander ix 2
Cassius x 22, 26
Castor iv 8
Cataline x 14
Cato x 1, 20
Catullus x 14
Caucasus iii 3
Cecrops iii 6
Censors viii 19
Census vii 15
Centaurs iv 9
Ceres iv 2
Cethegus x 14
Ceyx v 5
Chabrias viii 26
Charilaus vi 6
Chrysippus ix 7

Chynalydan vii 2, 3
Cicero x 5 14, 25
Cimon viii 16
Cinna x 9
Circumcision ii 6
Circus vii 11
Clælia viii 7
Claud. Nero ix 10
Cleanthes ix 7
Cleopatra ix 4 x 19, 27
Clodius x 14
Clusium viii 23
Cocalus iv 9
Codrus v 8
Colchis iv 8
Collatinus viii 2
Conon viii 24
Consuls viii 2
Corinth x 2
Coriolanus viii 11
Cor. Cossus viii 19
Crantor ix 2
Crassus x 11, 15, 16
Crates ix 2
Cratinus viii 22
Crete ii 7 iv 9
Crœsus vii 17
Ctesias viii 25
Cures vii 7
Curiatii vii 9
Curius Denatus ix 3
Cyaxares vii 3, 4
Cyclops iv 6
Cyrus vii 3, 17, 18.

D

Dædalus iv 9
Damascus vii 2
Danae iv 5
Danaus iv 2
Daniel vii 17
Dardanus iv 5
Darius the Mede vii 4, 17
———Hystaspis viii 5, 6
———Nothus viii 21
———Codomanus viii 33, 34
David v 6 7
Deborah iv 3
Decemviri viii 17
Decius Mus viii 32
Dejoces vii 4
Delphos iv 4
Demetrius ix 16
Demetrius Phal. ix 7
Democritus viii 16
Demosthenes viii 31
Deucalion iii 6
Diagoras viii 22
Dictator viii 8 x 18
Dido vi 7
Diodorus x 25
Diogenes viii 32
Dion viii 29
Dionysius *ib.*
Dorian war v 8
Draco vii 12
Duilius ix 6
Dynasties ii 2

E

Ecbatan vii 2, 4
Egeriav ii 7
Egloni v 3
Egypt ii 2
Ehud *ib.*
Eleazar ix 7
Elijah vi 3
Elis vi 8
Empedocles viii 18
Ennius ix 12
Enoch i 2

Epaminondas viii 26
Ephesus iv 10
Ephori vi 9
Epicurus ix 2
Eriphyla iv 11
Esarhaddon vii 2, 3
Esau iii 1
Esther vii 18
Eteocles iv 11
Ethiopia vii 12
Eumenes ix 2
Eunus x 4
Euphrates vii 17, viii 34
Eupolis viii 22
Euripides *ib.*
Euristheus v 5
Europa iv 2
Eve i 1

F

Fabii viii 13
Fabius viii 23 ix 8
Fabricius i 3
Faunus iv 6
Faustulus vi 10
Flaminius ix 6, 8
Fulvius ix 15 x 3

G

Gabii viii 1
Galli Senones viii 23
Ganges ii 2
Gelo viii 8
Giants i 2
Gideon iv 7
Goliah v 6
Georgias viii 22
Gorgon iv 5
Gracchi x 3
Greece (Great) iv 6
Greece delivered ix 13
Gyges vii 8

H

Haggai viii 6
Ham i 3
Hanno ix 10
Harmodius viii 3
Heber ii 6
Hecatæus ix 1
Helen iv 13
Hellespont viii 14
Helvetii x 17
Heraclidæ v 5
Heraclitus viii 16
Hercules iv 8, 10
Hermes ii 2
Herod x 26
Herodotus viii 15
Hesiod vi 8
Hetrusci v 1 vii 15
Hezekiah vii 3 6
Hiero ix 5, 6, 9
Hieronymus ix 9
Hipparchus viii 3
Hippias viii 3, 9
Hippocrates viii 18
Hirtius x 23
Holofernes vii 8
Homer v 9
Horace x 28
Horatii vii 9
Horat. Cocles viii 7
Hoshea vii 6
Hyrcanus x 13

J

Jacob iii 1
Jaddus viii 34
Jael iv 3

Janiculum vii 10 viii 7
Janus iv 4 vii 7 ix 6 x 28
Japetus iii 3
Japhet i 3
Jason iv 8
Idols ii 3
Jehoram vi 4
Jehoshaphat vi 3
Jephtha iv 12
Jeremiah vii 10
Jericho iv 1
Jeroboam vi 1
Jerusalem vii 2 x 13
Jesus Christ x 29
Ilus iv 8
Inachus iii 2
Indus iv 5
Joash vi 5
Job iii 2
Jocasta iv 11
Jordan iii 5 iv 1
Joseph iii 1
Josiah vii 10
Joshua iii 5 iv 1
Jotham vi 9
Iphicrates viii 26
Iphitus vi 8
Isaac ii 6 iii 1
Isaiah vii 6
Isocrates viii 25
Israel iii 1
Isthmian games iv 10
Italy iii 7
Juba x 20
Judah vi 1
Judith vii 8
Jugurtha x 25
Julia x 15
Julius Cæsar x 15, 17, 18 19, 20, 21, 22
Julus v 3
Jupiter ii 7 iii 2, 6

L

Lævinus ix 9
Laius iv 11
Lamachus viii 21
Laomedon iv 8
Latinus iv 6 v 1, 3
Lavinium v 1
Laws vi 7 viii 17
Leah iii 1
Lentulus x 14
Leonidas viii 14
Lepidus x 24, 25
Leuctra viii 28
Libya iv 2 vi 7
Linus iv 2, 5
Livius Drusus x 6
Livy ix 14 x 28
Lot ii 6
Lucilius x 4
Lucius Sextus viii 27
Lucretia viii 1
Lucretius x 14
Luctatius ix 6
Lycaon iii 7
Lycurgus vi 6
Lydians vii 4
Lysander viii 24, 28
Lysimachus ix 2

M

Maccabees ix 16
Macedon ix 15
Magic ii 3
Maia iii 9
Manasseh vii 2, 8
Mandane vii 17
Manlius viii 30, 32
Manna iii 5
Mantinea viii 28
Marathon viii 9

Marcellus ix 6, 8, 9
Mardonuis viii 15
Marius x 5, 8, 9
Mars iii 2
Massinissa ix 10
Medea iv 8
Medes ii 5 vii 4
Medon v 8
Megasthenes ix 1
Melanthus v 8
Melchisedeck ii 6
Memphis ii 2
Menahem vii 2
Menander ix 2
Menelaus iv 13
Menenius viii 10
Menes ii 2
Mercury ii 2 iii 6
Mesopotamia iv 2, 3
Metellus x 10, 12
Methuselah i 2
Mezentius v 1
Micipsa x 5
Midianites iv 7
Miltiades viii 9
Minerva iii 2
Minos iv 2, 4
Minotaur iv 9
Minutius viii 16
Mithridates x 8, 10, 12
Moses iii 4, 5, 6
Mummius x 2
Munda x 21
Music i 1
Mutina x 23
Mutius viii 7
Mycenæ v 5

N

Nabonassar vii 3
Nabopallasar ib
Nebuchadnezzar vii 3, 4
Nebuchadonosor vii 2
Necho vii 5
Nehemiah viii 18
Neptune ii 7 iv 2
Nicias viii 21
Nicomedes x 8
Nimrod ii 1, 2 vii 2, 3
Nineveh ii 2 vii 2, 3, 4
Ninus ii 3 vii 2
Ninyas ii 4, 5
Niobe iv 5
Noah i 3
Numa vii 7
Numantia x 2
Numitor v 3 vi 10
Nysa iv 5

O

Occhus vii 18 viii 31
Octavia x 27
Octavianus x 26, 27, 28
Octavius x 23, 24, 25
Oedipus iv 11
Oenotrus iii 7
Ogyges iii 2
Olymyic games iv 10 vi 8
Omri vi 2
Orcus iv 2
Oropastes viii 4, 5
Orpheus iv 8
Ostia vii 10
Othinel iv 3
Ovid x 28
Oxyartes ii 3

P

Pacuvius x 1
Palestine ii 6
Panætius x 1

Pansa x 28
Paris iv 13
Parmenides viii 18
Parnassus iii 6
Parrhasius viii 18
Pasargada vii 18
Patizithes viii 4
Patriarchs iii 1
Patricians vii 1
Pausanias viii 15, 31
Pelasgi iv 6
Pella viii 31
Pelopidas viii 26
Peloponnesian war v 8 viii 20
Pelops iv 5
Periander vii 16
Pericles viii 20
Perseus iv 5 ix 15
Phaeton iii 7
Phalaris vii 16
Pharaoh ii 2 iii 4
Pharnaces x 20
Pharsalia x 18
Phidias viii 18
Philip viii 31
Phillippi x 26
Philistines v 2
Phoroneus iii 2
Phraortes vii 2, 4
Phryxus iv 8
Picus iv 6
Pindar vii 16
Pisgah iii 5
Pisistratus vii 16 viii 3
Platæa viii 15
Plato viii 25
Plautus ix 16
Pluto ii 7
Pollux iv 8 viii 8
Polybius x 1
Polycletus viii 18
Polycrates vii 16
Polynices iv 11
Pompey x 7, 10, 11, 12, 13 15, 18
Pompey's sons x 21, 25, 26
Porsenna viii 7
Posthumius viii 8
Prætor viii 27
Praxiteles viii 22
Priam iv 8 18
Procas v 3
Prometheus iii 3
Propertius x 28
Proscription x 9
Proserpine iv 2
Psamimnitus vii 5, 18
Psammitichus vii 5
Ptolemy ix 2, 4, 7 x 18, 19
Pub. Rutilius x 4
Pub. Scipio x 1, 2
Pul vii 2, 3
Pygmalion vi 7
Pyrrha iii 6
Pyrrhus ix 3
Pythagoras vii 16.

Q

Q. Cincinnatus viii 16
Quintus Curtius x 28.

R

Rachel iii 1
Rebecca ib.
Red Sea iii 15
Regillus (lake) viii 8
Regulus ix 6
Rehoboam vi 1
Remus vi 10 vii 1
Rhadamanthus iv 2
Rhe Sylvia vi 10

Rome vi 10 viii 23
Romulus vi 10 vii 1
Romulus Sylv. vi 5
Rutuli v 1

S

Sabacus vii 5
Sabines vii 1
Sacred Mount viii 10
Sacrifices iii 5
Saguntum ix 8
Salamis viii 14
Sallust x 14
Samaria vi 1 vii 2, 6
Samson v 2
Samuel v 4
Saosduchinus vii 2
Sappho vii 16
Sarah ii 6
Sardanapalus ii 3 vi 2
Sardis vii 17
Saturn ii 7 iv 6
Saturninus x 6
Saul v 4 6
Scipio Africanus ix 10 11 12
Scipio Asiaticus ix 14
Scipio Nasica x 3
Scythians vii 3, 4
Seleucus ix 2
Semiramis ii 4
Senators vii 1
Senacherib vii 2, 4
Septuagint ix 7
Sertorius x 10
Servius Tullius vii 15
Sesostris ii 2
Seth i 1
Shalmaneser vii 2, 6
Shem i 3
Shishak vi 1
Sibylline books viii 1
Sichæus vi 7
Sicily iv 6
Simonides vii 16
Sinai iii 5
Sisera iv 3
Smerdis viii 4
Social war x 7
Socrates viii 22
Sodom ii 6
Solomon v 9
Solon vii 14
Sophocles viii 22
Sparta iii 2
Sparticus x 11
Spartus iii 2
Speusippus viii 32
Sphynx iv 11
Spolia opima vii 1 viii 19
Spurius viii 11
Stesichorus vii 16
Strabo x 28
Sulpitius x 8
Sylla x 5, 8, 9
Sylvius v 3
Syphax ix 10
Syracruse ix 9
Syria vii 2, 4

T

Tanis ii 2
Tantalus iv 5
Tarquin Priscus vii 11
Tarquin Superb. viii 1, 7
Tatius vii 1
Temple (Solomon's) v 9
Terence x 1
Terent. Varro ix 8
Teucer iv 5
Thales vii 4
Thebes ii 2 iv 4

Thebes iv 7
Themistocles viii 12, 14
Theophrastus ix 2
Theopompus vi 9 ix 1
Thermopylæ viii 13
Theseus iv 9, 10 v 5
Thin ii 2
Thrasybulus vii 16 viii 24, 26
Thucydides viii 20
Thyestes iv 11
Tiberinus v 3
Tibullus x 28
Tiglathpileser vii 2, 3
Tigranes x 12
Timantes viii 18
Timotheus viii 26
Titans ii 7
Titus Quinctius ix 13
Tobias vii 6
Tolumnius viii 19
Tomyris vii 18
Torquatus viii 30, 32
Tosorthus ii 2
Tribunes viii 19
Trismegistus ii 2 iv 4
Tros iv 5
Troy iv 5, 8, 13
Tullus Host, vii 9
Turnus v 1
Tyre vi 7 viii 34
Tyresias iv 11

U.

Umbrians iii 7
Uzziah vi 6

V

Valerius viii 30
Varro x 14
Veientes vii 15 viii 13
Venus iii 2
Veturia viii 11
Virgil x 28
Viriatus x 2
Viridomarus ix 6
Volsci viii 1
Vulcan iii 2

X

Xantippus ix 6
Xenocrates viii 32
Xenophon viii 25
Xerxes vii 18 viii 14, 16

Z

Zedekiah vii 13
Zeno ix 2
Zeuxis viii 18
Zopyrus viii 6

FINIS.

The sayings of a wise man
are sometimes little esteemed
but the words of a fool are
always regarded

Alexander Ashton Jun
18

The sayings of a wise
man are sometimes di
regarded but the wor
of a fool are always
regarded less.

The sayings of a wise ma
are sometimes disregard
but those of a fool are
allways disregarded

Volume 2

Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process.
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide
Treatment Date: July 2006

PreservationTechnologies
A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION
111 Thomson Park Drive
Cranberry Township, PA 16066
(724) 779-2111

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
0 022 007 847 4